R



DISCOVERY

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

© Publication Part No. LRL 18 02 64 211

Introduction

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING

First Warning Statement:

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

⚠WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to read all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

Images used in this publication are for illustrative purposes only and may not reflect exactly what is fitted to your vehicle.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

The safety alert symbol precedes any safety message about a risk of personal injury. The symbol will also have one of the following signal words.

⚠ DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



The recycling symbol identifies items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/ authorized repairer or your local authority.



The personalization symbol identifies features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2020.

All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

R

Contents

Introduction....2
Vehicle stability....7
Reporting safety defects....8
Controls overview....9
Entering the vehicle....11
Exiting the vehicle....26
Front seats....32
Rear seats....38
Head restraints....47
Steering wheel....51
Seat belts....53
Child safety....58
Air bags....66
Instrument panel....74
Warning and information lamps....81
Exterior lights....90
Interior lights....95
Wipers and washers....97
Mirrors....102
Garage door opener....104
Windows....108
Storage compartments....111
Load carrying....118
Towing....127
Starting the engine....136
Auto stop/start....139
Transmission....142
Suspension....146
Brakes....153
Stability control....158
Driving programs....161
Hill Descent Control (HDC)....167
Speed limiter....170
Cruise control....175
Adaptive cruise control....178
Collision avoidance....186
All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)....199
Driving aids....204
4x4i....210
Low traction launch....215
Touchscreen home....216
Touchscreen extra features....223
Touchscreen settings....225
Media....229
AM/FM radio....237
HD radio™....240
Satellite radio....242
Portable media....246
Climate and comfort....253
Parking features....266
Cameras....274
Phone....280
Bluetooth®....291
Navigation....292
Voice control....305
InControl....308
Connectivity....314
Fuel and refueling....318
Maintenance....322
Vehicle cleaning....331
Fluid level checks....338
Vehicle battery....347
Fuses....354
Tires....364
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)....379
Wheel changing....384
Vehicle recovery....396
After a collision....400
Vehicle labels....402
Technical specifications....403
Passport to service....410

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Contents

Dispute resolution - USA.....444
Dispute resolution - Canada...481
Type approval.....482
Index.....486

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

VEHICLE STABILITY

⚠WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

⚠WARNING

Since this vehicle is designed to be operated off-road, it has a higher ground clearance and hence a higher center of gravity. Such a feature has been associated with an increased risk of vehicle rollover.

The vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

Another factor shown to significantly increase rollover risk is unauthorized vehicle modifications such as fitting incorrect specification tires, oversize tires, body lifting, incorrect springs/dampers, incorrect vehicle loading/trailer towing.

Many vehicle rollovers occur when a driver attempts to bring a vehicle back onto the road after some or all of the wheels drift onto the shoulder of the road, especially when the shoulder is unpaved. If you find yourself in such a situation, do not initiate any sharp or abrupt steering and/or braking maneuvers to re-enter the roadway. Instead, let the vehicle slow down as much as is safely possible before attempting to re-enter the roadway and keep your wheels as straight as possible while re-entering the roadway.

However, on-road crash data also indicates that driver behavior is a greater factor than a high center of gravity in determining a vehicle's overall rollover rate. The single most effective driver behavior that can reduce the risk of injury or death in all crashes including rollover is to ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT and to properly restrain all child passengers in the rear seat in an age and size appropriate child safety seat or belt positioning booster seat.

⚠WARNING

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (USA)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov .

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVER CONTROLS



1. Optimized Land Rover assistance (**312**).
2. Panoramic roof front blind (**108**).
3. Panoramic roof (**108**).
4. Panoramic roof rear blind (**108**).
5. SOS emergency call (**312**).
6. Front interior lights (**95**).
7. Garage door opener (**104**).
8. Hazard warning lights.
9. Touchscreen (**218**).
10. Climate controls, heated, and climate seats (**253**/**263**/**264**).
11. In-console storage (**111**).
12. Climate controls (**253**).
13. Climate controls, heated, and climate seats (**253**/**263**/**264**).
14. Wireless charger (**115**).
15. Gear selector (**142**).
16. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (**154**).
17. Terrain response (**162**).
18. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) and low range transmission (**158**/**144**).
19. Audio on or off and volume (**230**).
20. Engine START/STOP (**136**).
21. Steering column adjuster (**51**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Controls overview

22. Lane Keep Assist (LKA), cruise control, adaptive cruise control, speed limiter, adaptive speed limiter, and heated steering wheel (**204**/**175**/**179**/**170**/**172**/**52**).
23. Wash/wipe controls (**97**).
24. Gearshift paddle - Up (**142**).
25. Instrument panel (**74**).
26. Gearshift paddle - Down (**142**).
27. Exterior lights and trip computer controls (**90**/**78**).
28. Horn.
29. Audio controls, phone, instrument panel menu, and voice control (**231**/**286**/**76**/**305**).
30. Tailgate release (**19**).
31. Interior illumination control (**96**).
32. Hood release lever (**326**).
33. Driving position memory (**36**).
34. Doors lock and unlock (**28**).
35. Rear windows isolation and child door locks (**108**/**61**).
36. Window controls (**108**).
37. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors (**102**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SMART KEY OPERATION

Smart key



E225670

⚠WARNING

The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. Make sure that any susceptible medical device is kept at a safe distance of at least 9 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter. Maintaining this distance avoids any possibility of interference between the system and the medical device. The RF and field strengths used by the keyless entry system operate well within required medical standards for radiated emissions. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially resulting in serious injury or death. 17, SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS.

⚠WARNING

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle. Unauthorized operation may lead to serious injury or death.

Note: *The operational range of the smart key varies considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

Note: *If any door or the tailgate, is unlocked ten times within a short period, the locking latch disables for approximately one minute.*

Note: *A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorized repairer. The retailer/authorized repairer requires proof of identification and ownership. Notify a retailer/authorized repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.*

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. The smart keys allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide-off cover. See **15, KEYLESS ENTRY**, **26, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **136, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle single locks. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold in. See **26, SINGLE LOCKING**, and **102, DOOR MIRRORS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

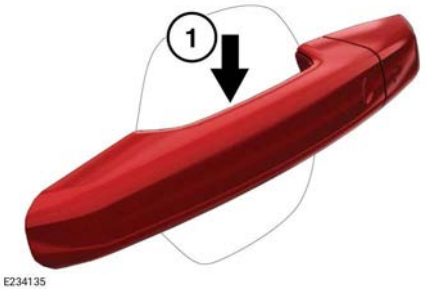
2. Headlights: When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the headlights for approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off. The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. The delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds via the VEHICLE menu. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
3. Panic alarm: Press and hold for three seconds, or press three times within three seconds, to activate the horn and the hazard warning lights. Once active for more than five seconds, the alarm can be canceled. Press the button and hold for three seconds, or press three times within three seconds. The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.
4. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors unfold.
5. Tailgate: Press briefly to release, open, or close the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, all of the other doors remain closed and the exterior alarm remains armed while the tailgate is open. Intrusion and inclination sensing systems disable until the tailgate is closed again. When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds. It is to confirm that the full alarm system has re-armed.

   Note: *Make sure the smart key does not remain inside the vehicle before closing the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if kept inside a metal container or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, or a games console. If the vehicle is in an area of localized RF interference, the smart key may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle can be locked. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle unlocks only with another valid smart key.*

Note: *Notify a retailer/authorized repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

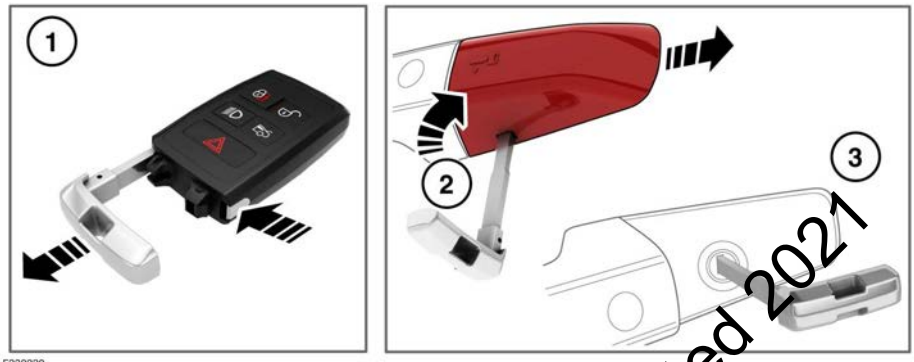
Door handles



1. Keyless entry: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle. The lock sensor is located on the outer surface of the door handle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Emergency opening



1. Emergency key blade access: Push the release button and pull the key blade to withdraw it.
2. Door lock cover: If the smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. Apply slight downward pressure to the top of the cover and gently lever the key blade upward. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upward, to lever the cover off the securing lugs.
3. Door lock: Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. If the door is locked, the alarm sounds. To cancel the alarm, position the smart key correctly to disarm the alarm or press the unlock button on the smart key.

   Note: *When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top securing lugs first. Press down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug clicks into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.*

2-STAGE UNLOCKING

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key's unlock button.

The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. 2-stage unlocking on: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the taildoor.
2. 2-stage unlocking off: Unlocks all of the doors and the taildoor on the first press.

To change the vehicle's 2-stage unlocking status, press the smart key's lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

2-stage unlocking can also be set via the **Vehicle** menu in the touchscreen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *If an audible warning sounds when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

KEYLESS ENTRY

⚠WARNING

The smart key system uses Radio Frequency (RF) transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. Make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance of at least 9 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. The RFs and field strengths used by the keyless entry system operate well within required medical standards for radiated emissions. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

For information concerning the location of the security system transmitters, see **408, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is shielded by metal and/or devices with LCD screens. For example, a smartphone, a laptop or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.*

Note: *The smart key only needs to be on the driver's person, or in a nearby non-metallic bag or briefcase. The smart key does not need to be exposed or handled.*

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the door handle or tailgate button.

The keyless entry system activates when the door handle is moved. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights will flash twice to confirm unlocking. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold out.

Note: *When 2-stage unlocking is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors will unlock.*

After entering the vehicle, and closing all of the doors, the vehicle scans the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the engine start backup procedure. See **137, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

ACTIVITY KEY

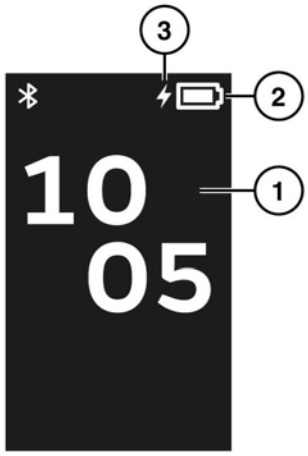
The activity key is a touchscreen wristwatch. The activity key is designed to support situations where the smart key might be obtrusive or difficult to keep secure. The activity key is waterproof to a depth of 131 ft (40 m) and is shockproof. Care should be taken during certain sporting activities, e.g., skiing, jet-skiing, or diving, to protect the activity key.

The activity key provides full keyless entry and keyless start functionality. See **15, KEYLESS ENTRY**, **26, KEYLESS LOCKING** and **136, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Make sure any smart keys left inside the vehicle are stored out of view.*



E257249

Activity key touch screen use

The home screen displays the current time (**1**). Press and hold the screen for approximately two seconds to wake the home screen. Swipe downwards to bring up the next menu item. Swipe right to select the current menu item.

The battery charge level (**2**) is shown in the top right of the screen. If the activity key battery charge level drops below 30%, the screen displays a prompt to charge the activity key. The screen disables if charge drops below 25% to preserve functionality.

Note: *When left idle for a period of time, the activity key's touchscreen switches off to preserve battery power.*

Recharging the activity key

The charge icon (**3**) is displayed when the activity key is being charged. A magnetic USB charge cable is supplied with the activity key to enable charging. Replacement charge cables are available from retailers or authorized repairers.

Locking with the activity key

The vehicle must be switched off. After exiting the vehicle and closing the last open door, swipe upwards to access the activity key's **Locking** menu. Press the **lock** icon to lock the vehicle. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they will fold in. Touch the **home** icon to return to the home screen.

Note: *If a locking attempt is unsuccessful, an audible alert sounds. Check that all of the doors and the tailgate are closed, and that the vehicle is switched off.*

Note: *If the tailgate of a locked vehicle is opened using the smart key, an audible alert may sound when re-closing the tailgate. Should this occur, fully unlock the vehicle before attempting to close the tailgate.*

Note: *When the vehicle is locked with the activity key, any valid smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled. Any valid smart key outside the vehicle remains enabled.*

Unlocking with the activity key

On returning to the vehicle, swipe upwards to access the activity key's **Locking** menu. Press the **unlock** icon to unlock and disarm the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *When the vehicle is unlocked with the activity key, any valid smart key inside the vehicle re-enables.*

Other activity key functions

The activity key can also be used as follows:

1. Select the **Settings** menu to change the activity key displayed time.
    - Select the **clock** icon, and adjust the time using the up/down arrows as desired.
2. To sound the panic alarm, briefly touch the screen three times in quick succession.

Note: *The panic alarm cannot be canceled during the first five seconds of operation. Once this five seconds has passed, the panic function on the smart key will de-activate the panic alarm.*

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Seat position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Instrument panel.
- Auxiliary power sockets.

SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

⚠WARNING

Keep any implanted medical device at least 8 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. Doing so helps avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially causing serious injury or death.

For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see **408, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

⚠WARNING

While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive with an open tailgate at any time. Driving with an open tailgate may result in persons, or luggage, falling from the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

NOTICE

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

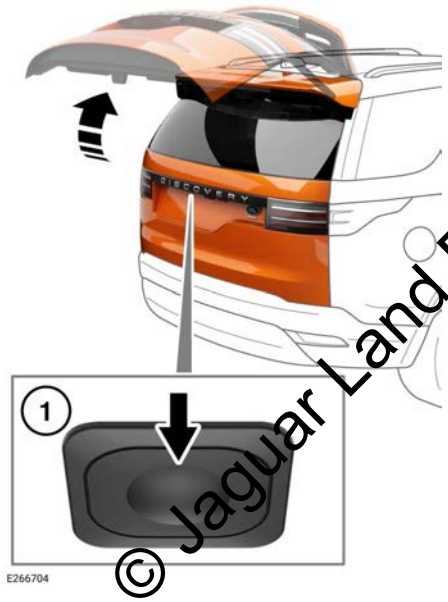
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles and/or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate and damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before the vehicle is driven, to prevent damage to the vehicle.



Press the exterior tailgate button (**1**) to release the latch and then lift the tailgate to open.

Note: *The exterior tailgate button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. In Neutral (**N**) gear, tailgate release begins only if all of the doors are unlocked and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. The exterior tailgate button does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position. See **17, CONVENIENCE MODE**.*

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate button. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The tailgate button on the smart key. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

Note: *The tailgate does not release if the vehicle is traveling at, or above, approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the loadspace when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, a warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key at the rear of the vehicle. If a valid smart key is not detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate re-opens and an audible mislock warning sounds.*

Note: *If any smart key remains inside the vehicle the tailgate re-opens and an audible mislock warning sounds.*

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

⚠WARNING

While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

⚠WARNING

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the soft-close action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive with an open tailgate at any time. Driving with an open tailgate may result in persons, or luggage, falling from the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

NOTICE

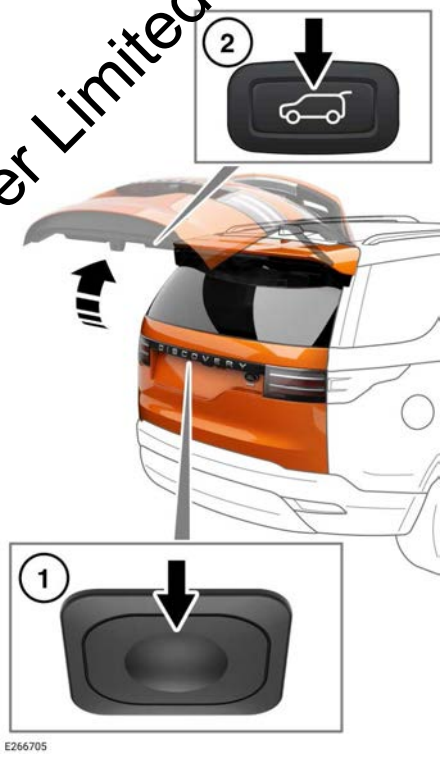
Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles and/or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate and damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before the vehicle is driven, to prevent damage to the vehicle.



To operate the powered tailgate:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Exterior tailgate button: Press to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the tailgate.

   Note: *The exterior tailgate button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. The exterior tailgate button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position. In this situation, operation begins only if all of the doors are unlocked and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. The exterior tailgate button does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position. See **17, CONVENIENCE MODE**.*

2. Tailgate close button: Press to close or stop the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be opened or closed using the following methods:

- The tailgate button, located in the lower switch panel at the driver's side of the fascia. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The tailgate button on the smart key. The powered inner tailgate also operates when the smart key is used. See **120, POWERED INNER TAILGATE** and **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.
- A kick gesture. See **21, GESTURE TAILGATE**.

Note: *Make sure that the powered inner tailgate is fully raised and does not interfere with the closure of the powered tailgate.*

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate button again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft-closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

Note: *If a tailgate button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a button is pressed during the soft-close stage, the request is ignored.*

Powered tailgate movement stops If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening. To continue to power open the tailgate:

1. Remove any obstructions.
2. Press a tailgate release button.

Powered tailgate movement stops if an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing. The tailgate then reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so, and an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. To continue to close the tailgate:

1. If the tailgate is not open, press a tailgate release button.
2. Remove any obstructions.
3. Press the tailgate close button.

Note: *The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is traveling at, or above, approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the loadspace when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, a warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key at the rear of the vehicle. If a valid smart key is not detected within 39 in (1 m) of the vehicle, the tailgate re-opens and an audible mislock warning sounds. If any smart key remains inside the vehicle, the tailgate re-opens and an audible mislock warning sounds.*

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone or a laptop.*

Note: *Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height for the tailgate can be set as required. Setting a maximum height is useful in parking areas with very low roofs, or just for ease of use.

To set the maximum height as required:

1. Open the powered tailgate to the position required as the maximum height. Press any tailgate release button to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close button for greater than 5 seconds, or until an audible confirmation is heard, to set the required opening height. Release the tailgate close button.
4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the set height. See **19, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.
5. The maximum opening height is now set.

Note: *If, after performing part 3 of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.*

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current set height, manually move it to the fully open position before pressing and holding the tailgate close button.

The tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections, or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may also be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press the tailgate release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to fully open or open to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the tailgate button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power-close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory is restored.

GESTURE TAILGATE

⚠CAUTION

Make sure that the standing area is stable and not slippery before performing the kick movement.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Entering the vehicle

⚠CAUTION

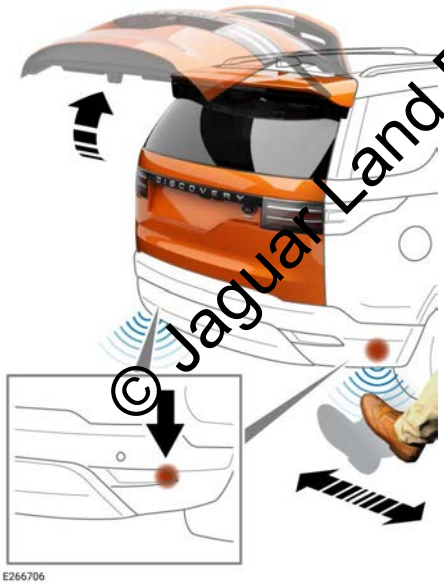
Do not make contact with the vehicle's exhaust. The vehicle's exhaust may be hot and can cause injury.

NOTICE

Make sure that there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

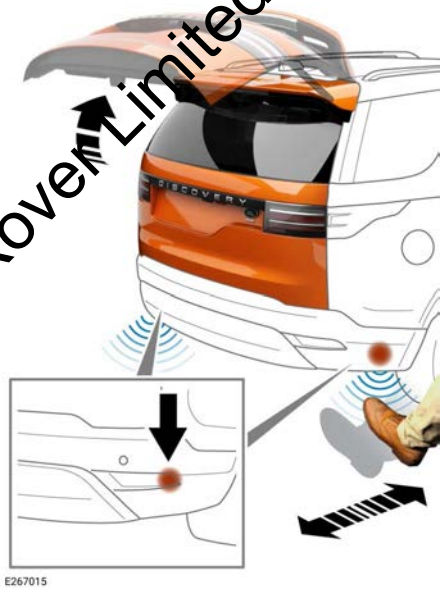
Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles and/or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate and damage to the vehicle.



E266706

Sensors are positioned both sides of the rear bumper, behind the rear wheels. The sensors recognize movement of a foot below the bumper level and allow automatic opening or closing of the powered tailgate.

To operate the gesture tailgate, approach the vehicle, and perform a smooth kick and return motion. This should last between 1 and 2 seconds and should take place within one of the vehicle's two sensor areas, as illustrated.



E267015

Alternatively, a sweep motion under the sensor will operate the gesture tailgate. The sweep motion should last between 1 and 2 seconds and should take place within one of the vehicle's two sensor areas, as illustrated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When a valid kick or sweep movement is recognized by the vehicle, the turn signals flash and the tailgate operates. The powered inner tailgate also operates. See **120, POWERED INNER TAILGATE** .

Note: *The gesture action is a smooth kick and return motion, not a swipe motion.*

Note: *If the ignition is on, the tailgate operates but the turn signals do not flash.*

Note: *A valid smart key must be within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting hands-free operation of the powered tailgate.*

Note: *Certain conditions may affect the performance of the sensors, and movement beneath the bumper may not be detected. If this should happen, use the interior tailgate button or the smart key's tailgate button. Check the operation of the gesture tailgate when the vehicle is in a new location.*

Unintentional opening: In exceptional circumstances, and if the smart key is within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate, the powered tailgate may open unintentionally due to the following:

- Car washing or high pressure cleaning.
- Moving objects beneath the rear bumper sensors.
- While changing a rear road wheel.
- While fitting snow chains to the rear wheels.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking set speed can be adjusted via **Vehicle** in the touchscreen menu. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *After drive-away locking has taken place, press the unlock or lock button to override the feature for the current journey. The unlock and lock buttons are located on the inside of the front doors. See **28, DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES**.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT



When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and the instrument panel displays **Smart Key Battery Low**.

1. To remove the emergency key blade, push the button on the smart key.
2. Pull the emergency key blade in the direction of the arrow.
3. Use the emergency key blade to separate the smart key's body.
4. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/ authorized repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

Note: *If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.*

Refit the parts in reverse order. Make sure that the parts click securely into place.

Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer and/ or the local authority.

SMART KEY CARE

⚠WARNING

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Do not expose the smart key to extremes of heat, dust or humidity. Do not allow the smart key to come into contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight, as it could result in damage to the smart key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices, e.g., medical equipment. Use of such devices may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.*

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and keep it safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

NOTICE

To avoid permanent damage to the smart keys, replace the batteries in all of the smart keys simultaneously when the ***Smart Key battery low*** *message is displayed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SINGLE LOCKING

WARNING

Before exiting the vehicle, always select Park (P), switch off the ignition, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), and remove any smart keys. Missing these steps may lead to serious injury or death.

NOTICE

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Before attempting to lock the vehicle, always make sure of the following:

- The ignition is switched off.
- All of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the taildoor are closed correctly.

Briefly press the lock button on the smart key to lock the vehicle and arm the perimetric alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Note: *The single locking setting should be used in circumstances when pets remain in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open.*

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The hood, taildoor, or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

Note: *Always secure the vehicle when left unattended.*

Note: *In some markets, the full alarm system, including the alarm sensors, is armed when the vehicle is single locked. The alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one alarm cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle*** *menu in the touchscreen. See* ***225, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

KEYLESS LOCKING

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.*

Note: *Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, can act as a shield and may affect its detection.*

Note: *Keyless locking activates only if the smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no smart key is present, locking does not occur.*

Note: *The vehicle does not lock automatically.*



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To operate keyless locking:

1. Lock sensor area: To lock the vehicle, only touch the lock sensor once, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm locking.

Note: *Do not grip the door handle while touching the sensor. Doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.*

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock when:

- Any door(s) is open.
- The hood is open.
- The tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.

No audible mislock error warning is given. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off and that all of the doors, the hood and the tailgate are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If uncertain about the vehicle's locked and armed status, press the lock button on the smart key. With keyless entry, touch a lock button on an exterior door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status. One short flash means that the vehicle is single locked and one long flash indicates that it is double locked.

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

- One or more of the doors, the hood, or the tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.
- A smart key is left inside the vehicle.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors (if enabled) do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the hood, and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is switched off and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

Note: *Operating the interior or exterior door handles, while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status of the vehicle including drive-away locking, may cause the security system to ignore any unlock, lock, or child lock requests.*

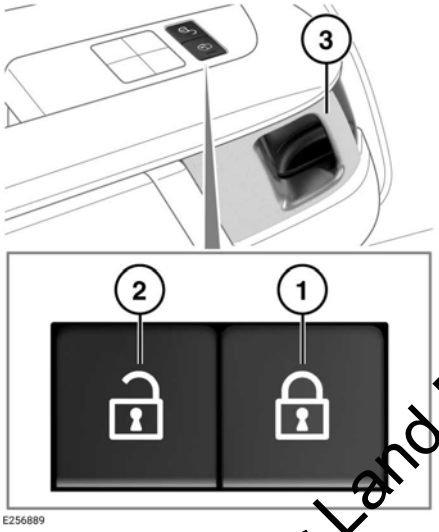
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Exiting the vehicle

DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES

⚠WARNING

While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. If the latch has the soft-close feature, do not attempt to manually close the latch. It may automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



1. Lock button: Press to lock. With all of the doors closed, press a lock button to lock all of the doors.
2. Unlock button: Press to unlock. Press an unlock button to unlock all of the doors and the tailgate. Alternatively, pull either front door handle (**3**) once to unlock all of the doors.
3. Door handle: Pull to unlock and open a front door. To unlock a rear door, pull the individual door handle.

Note: *If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door handle unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.*

Note: *The rear door child safety locks inhibit the rear door lock and unlock buttons and the interior door handles. See* ***61, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*

CLEAR EXIT MONITOR

⚠WARNING

Clear exit monitor is a user aid only. Open the door with due care and attention. Make sure the door is opened in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and other road users. Failure to open the door safely could result in injury or death.

NOTICE

Make sure that the clear exit warning icons and indicators are not obscured by stickers or other objects. Obscured warning icons can impair the user's ability to utilise the feature, which could cause damage to the vehicle.

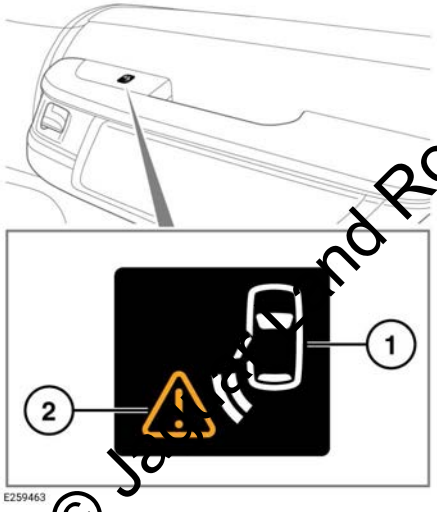
NOTICE

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the radar sensors. Blocked sensors could impair the operation of the clear exit monitor feature, which could cause damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Clear exit monitor warns of another vehicle, or moving object approaching from behind when the door has been unlatched. Sensors in the rear bumper monitor nearby traffic. If the system determines that opening the door could be unsafe, due to passing traffic, it gives a visible warning to the occupant. The system does not prevent the door from being opened. Clear exit monitor is fitted to rear doors only.

The clear exit monitor system activates only when the door has been unlatched. The icons illuminate as follows:



1. Illuminates white to indicate that the system is active.
2. Illuminates amber if the system determines that it could be unsafe to open the door, due to passing traffic.

The icons extinguish after the door has been closed.

The clear exit monitor system may not be able to detect all approaching traffic in all circumstances. Operation relies on the ability of the sensors to detect moving objects and this may be affected by road and weather conditions, and, also, if:

- Vehicles approach very quickly from behind.
- The sensors are blocked by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, damage, accessories or stickers.
- The sensor's line of sight is obscured by objects, such as other vehicles parked particularly wide or close to the vehicle.

Reduced warning times or loss of functionality may be experienced under the circumstances listed above.

Clear exit monitor is available when the vehicle is stationary or traveling at less than 3 mph (5 km/h). Clear exit monitor remains active for 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if a door is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally left unlocked.

BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the security system is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Press the unlock button on the smart key. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.
- Open a door using keyless entry. See **15, KEYLESS ENTRY**.
- Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key inside the vehicle. See **136, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the **Vehicle** menu in the touchscreen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

EMERGENCY LOCKING

Note: *Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.*

In the event of a fault with the alarm and/or locking system, manually secure the vehicle. Lock all of the doors via the driver's door key barrel.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

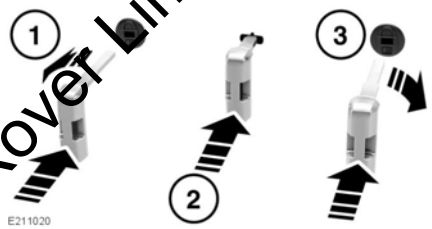
Using the emergency key:

1. Make sure all apertures are closed and insert the emergency key blade into the key barrel on the driver door.
2. Turn the emergency key blade 90° clockwise.
3. All of the doors single lock and access to the loadspace is inhibited.
4. Pull the exterior door handles to check that the doors are locked. When doing so, make sure any valid smart keys are at least 2 m away from the doors.

If the issue persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for rectification as soon as possible.

In the event of the battery discharging, each of the doors must be locked manually.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.



Using the emergency key:

1. Open a door and locate the emergency lock access cover on the edge of the door. The cover has an embossed lock icon. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot. Rotate the cover counter-clockwise to first release it. Pull the cover to remove it from the door. Keep the lock's access cover safe.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism. Remove the emergency key blade.
3. Refit the access cover. Rotate the cover clockwise to secure it firmly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. Close the door and check that it is locked.

Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Front seats

MANUAL FRONT SEATS

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

⚠WARNING

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Adjust the position of the manual front seats as follows:

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

The position of the head restraints can also be adjusted. See **47, HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW**.

ELECTRIC FRONT SEATS

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

⚠WARNING

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

⚠WARNING

Make sure to keep any part of the body away from moving components. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Front seats



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Adjust the position of the electric front seats as follows:

1. Bolster inflate and deflate.
2. Lumbar support.
3. Head restraint height.
4. Seatback angle.
5. Seat height.
6. Forward and rearward position.

7. Cushion tilt.

RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

⚠WARNING

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for, and remove, any obstructions. Obstructions could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control if not appropriately stored, potentially resulting in injury or death.

If front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, remove the obstruction and reset the seat adjustment mechanism, as follows:

1. Operate the seat switch again to continue the stalled adjustment.
2. When seat movement resumes, hold the seat switch until the end of travel in that direction has been reached.
3. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

Note: *If no obstructions can be found, and normal seat adjustment still cannot be carried out, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer.*

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

⚠WARNING

Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Reclining the seat greatly reduces the protection of the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and air bags. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance of an occupant's hips sliding under the lap section of the seat belt. The occupant's neck could also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.

⚠WARNING

Never adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Any sudden or unexpected movement of the seat could cause a loss of vehicle control, potentially resulting in an accident.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and air bags all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection. Therefore, always observe the following points:

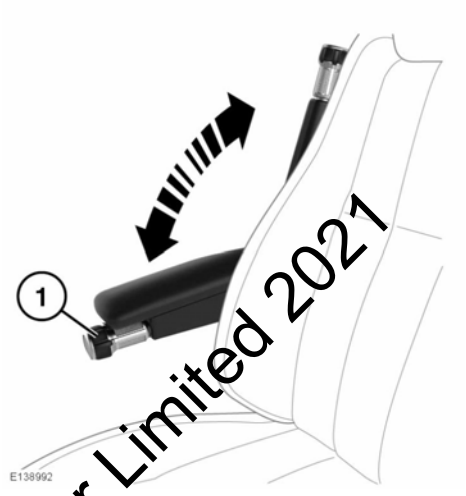
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 10 in (254 mm) is recommended between the breastbone and the air bag cover on the steering wheel. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centerline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

FOLDING ARMREST



Use the adjuster wheel (**1**) to set the required height for the armrest. The folding armrest can be stored by moving it to the vertical position.

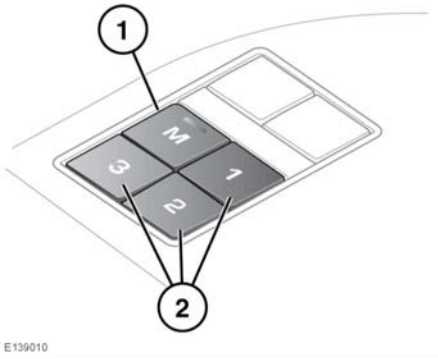
SEAT POSITION MEMORY

⚠WARNING

Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.

When a preferred driving, door mirror and steering wheel position has been reached, the settings can be stored for future use. See **51, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **102, DOOR MIRRORS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



1. Press the memory store (**M**) button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current settings. The message **MEMORY** (**1**, **2** or **3**) **SETTINGS SAVED** displays in the instrument panel, and a chime sounds to confirm that the settings have been stored.

   Note: *A driving position only stores during the 5 second active period.*

   Note: *Any existing settings are over-written when storing a new memory position.*
3. Press the relevant preset button to recall a stored position.

Note: *The memory function for all passenger seats does not trigger any messages in the instrument panel.*

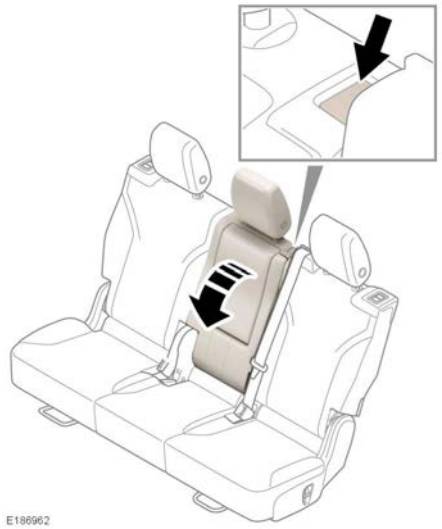
EASY ENTRY AND EXIT

When easy entry or exit is enabled, the driver's seat automatically lowers when the ignition is switched off and the door is opened. Upon returning to the vehicle, when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the seat returns to its previously set position.

The easy entry or exit feature can be enabled or disabled using the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. Select **Convenience Features**, then **On** or **Off** from the **Easy Entry/Exit** menu. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FOLDING THE CENTER SEATBACK



To fold the center seatback: Press the release button on the top of the seatback. Fold the center seatback forward into the lowered position.

To raise the center seatback: Lift the center seatback until it firmly locks into the upright position.

Note: *In an emergency, use the center seatback to exit the third row seats.*

MANUAL THIRD ROW SEATS

⚠WARNING

The head restraint must always be raised when using the third row seats. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow passengers to travel in the third row seats when the second row seats are in the folded or third row access position.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering a third row seat. Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering a third row seat. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



NOTICE

The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when raising the seat.

To raise a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace, pull the strap on the rear of the seat to be raised. Lift the seat into the raised position.
2. From inside the vehicle, lift the head restraint until it locks into the upright position.



NOTICE

The seat is heavy, so care should be taken when lowering the seat.

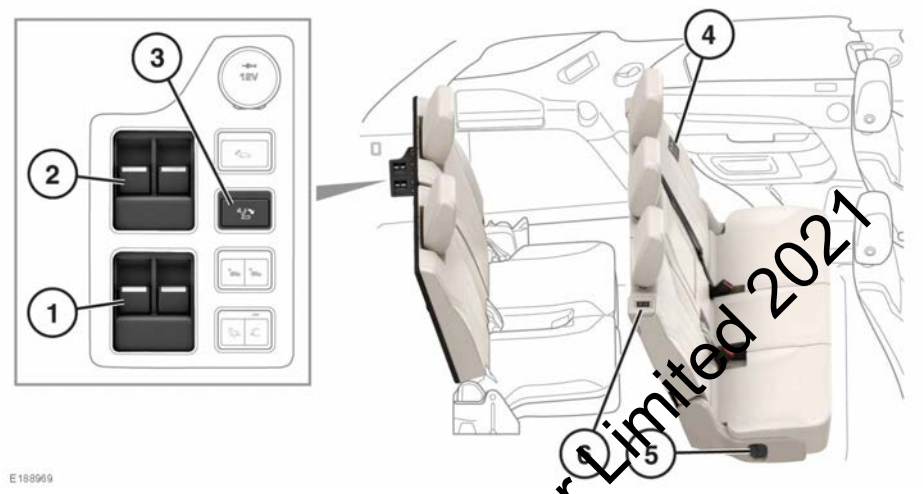
To fold a third row seat:

1. From inside the loadspace, press the button on the side of the head restraint on the seat to be folded. Fold the head restraint forward.
2. Pull the strap on the back of the seat to release the seat locking mechanism. Fold the seat forward into the stored position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear seats

ELECTRIC REAR SEATS OVERVIEW



⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when raising, lowering, and moving the rear seats and seatbacks. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. In a collision or sudden stop, unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle, striking and injuring occupants.

⚠WARNING

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

Note: *After removing a child restraint, always make sure the lower anchor bar flap is fully closed. Failure to fully close a flap could hinder a seat fold maneuver. See* ***63, FITTING LATCH CHILD RESTRAINTS****.*

Note: *If the rear window isolator button is pressed to inhibit operation of the rear windows, electric rear seat movement is also inhibited. See* ***108, ELECTRIC WINDOWS****.*

Switches to control movement of the second and third row seats are as follows:

1. Loadspace third row seatback switches. See **42, ELECTRIC THIRD ROW SEATS**.
2. Loadspace second row seatback switches. See **41, ELECTRIC SECOND ROW SEATS**.
3. Loadspace second and third row seatback switches: Press to fold all second and third row seatbacks.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. Third row seatback switches. See **42, ELECTRIC THIRD ROW SEATS**.
5. Second row seatback recline switches. See **41, ELECTRIC SECOND ROW SEATS**.
6. Third row seat access switches. See **41, ELECTRIC SECOND ROW SEATS**.

The rear seatbacks can also be folded and raised via the touchscreen.

Note: *The second row seats can be partially folded or raised, if required. The third row seats can only be fully folded or fully raised.*

ELECTRIC SECOND ROW SEATS

⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when raising, lowering, and moving the second row seats. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. In a collision or sudden stop, unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle, striking and injuring occupants.

⚠WARNING

Make sure to keep any part of the body away from moving components. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

NOTICE

Before folding the second row seats, make sure that all objects have been removed from the seat being folded. Failure to do so could potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

Note: *The second row center seat belt incorporates a locking feature. The locking feature prevents the seat belt from being pulled out too far when the seatback is folded flat. To reset the feature, when returning the seatback to the upright position, extract the seat belt webbing until it stops. Return the seat belt webbing a small amount. The seat belt then operates as normal.*

Note: *Before folding or raising a rear seat, make sure the rear seat belts are fully retracted and positioned against their respective D pillars.*

Second row seatback recline



Note: *Before reclining the second row seats, make sure they are positioned fully rearward. Moving the second row seats fully rearward reduces the potential of a clash with the front seats. In the event of a clash, the front seats move forward. Use the front seat controls to return the front seats to their original positions. See* ***32, ELECTRIC FRONT SEATS****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To recline the second row seats, move the switch on the side of the seat backward. Release the switch when the seatback is in the required position.

Move the switch forward to raise the seatback.

Third row seat access position



To access or exit the third row seats:

1. Press the switch on the top of the seatback to fold the second row seatback forward, while manually sliding the seat forward.
2. Manually slide the seat to return it to the previous position. If the seat is not moved to the fully rearward position, press the switch to return the seatback to the fully upright position. If the seat is moved fully rearward, the seatback automatically returns to the fully upright position.

ELECTRIC THIRD ROW SEATS

⚠WARNING

To avoid injury, the loadspace cover must not be left in the fitted position when the third row seats are occupied. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow passengers to travel in the third row seats when the second row seats are in the folded or third row access position.

⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering the third row seat. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

When raising the rear seats, make sure that the seat belts are correctly routed into the seat belt guides and not trapped behind the seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

⚠WARNING

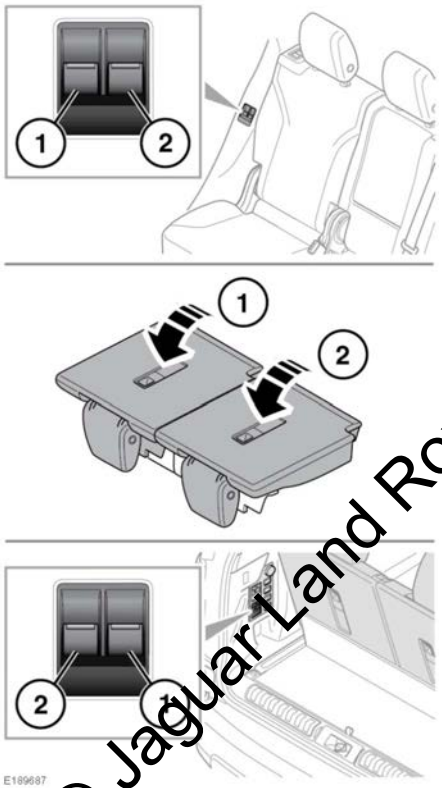
Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. In the event of an accident, unsecured objects could cause serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Make sure nothing is left on the third row seat or in the footwell when folding down the seat. Failure to do so could potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The third row seatbacks can be folded or raised individually. To fold or raise the seatbacks, use the switches located on the pillar adjacent to the second row seats, or the switches located in the loadspace.



From inside the vehicle, pull the switch (**1**) to lower the right-side head restraint. Continue to pull the switch (**1**) to lower the third row seatback. To raise the seatback, push and release the switch (**1**). When the seatback is in the fully raised position, manually raise the head restraint into position. Use switch (**2**) in the same way to move the left-side seat.

From inside the loadspace, push the switch (**1**) to lower the right-side head restraint. Continue to push the switch (**1**) to lower the third row seatback. To raise the seatback, pull and release the switch (**1**). When the seatback is in the fully raised position, manually raise the head restraint into position. Use switch (**2**) in the same way to move the left-side seat.

INTELLIGENT SEAT FOLD

⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when raising, lowering, and moving the rear seats. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped when raising the rear seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

⚠WARNING

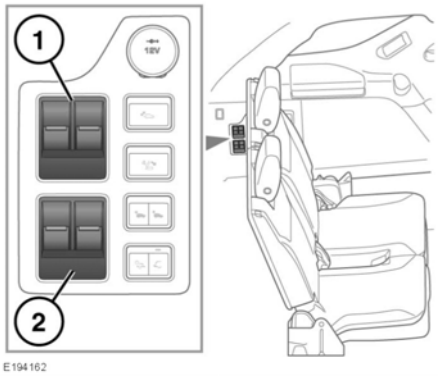
Make sure to keep any part of the body away from moving components. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

NOTICE

Before folding the seats, make sure that all objects have been removed from the second and third row seats, and from the footwells. Failure to do so could potentially result in damage to the item or seat.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear seats



1. Second row seatback switches.
2. Third row seatback switches.

The intelligent seat fold feature allows the rear seats to be easily and conveniently configured in a number of different ways. The feature automatically calculates if any seats will clash, and takes appropriate action to make sure any fold or raise sequence is successful.

Note: *If required, the* ***Front Seat Clash Avoidance*** *feature can be switched off via the* ***SEAT SETTINGS*** *screen.*

The rear seats can be configured as follows:

- The second and third row seatbacks can be folded or raised using switches located in the loadspace.
- The second and third row seatbacks can be folded or raised via the touchscreen.
- The third row seatbacks can be folded or raised using switches located on the door pillars, adjacent to the second row seats. See **42, ELECTRIC THIRD ROW SEATS**.

Note: *Before folding or raising the second row seats, make sure they are positioned fully rearward. Moving the second row seats fully rearward reduces the potential of a clash with the front seats. In the event of a clash, the front seats move forward. Use the front seat controls to return the front seats to their original positions. See* ***32, ELECTRIC FRONT SEATS****.*

A firm press of a second row seatback switch fully folds the relevant second row seatback. A light press on a second row seatback switch partially folds the relevant second row seatback. Releasing the switch after a light press stops seat movement.

A firm pull on a second row seatback switch fully raises the relevant second row seatback. A light pull on a second row seatback switch partially raises the relevant second row seatback. Releasing the switch after a light press stops seat movement.

Fully pressing a third row seatback switch folds the relevant third row seatback. Fully pulling a third row seatback switch raises the relevant third row seatback.

Note: *The third row seats can only be fully folded or fully raised.*

RESTRICTED REAR SEAT TRAVEL

NOTICE

If electric seat movement stops unexpectedly during folding or raising, check for and remove any obstructions.

Once any obstructions have been removed, continue the seat movement by pressing the appropriate button.

Note: *If no obstructions can be seen, and normal movement cannot be carried out, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REMOTE SEATS

⚠WARNING

Beware of trapping fingers when folding and raising the second and third row seats. Failure to do so creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Make sure to keep any part of the body away from moving components. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

NOTICE

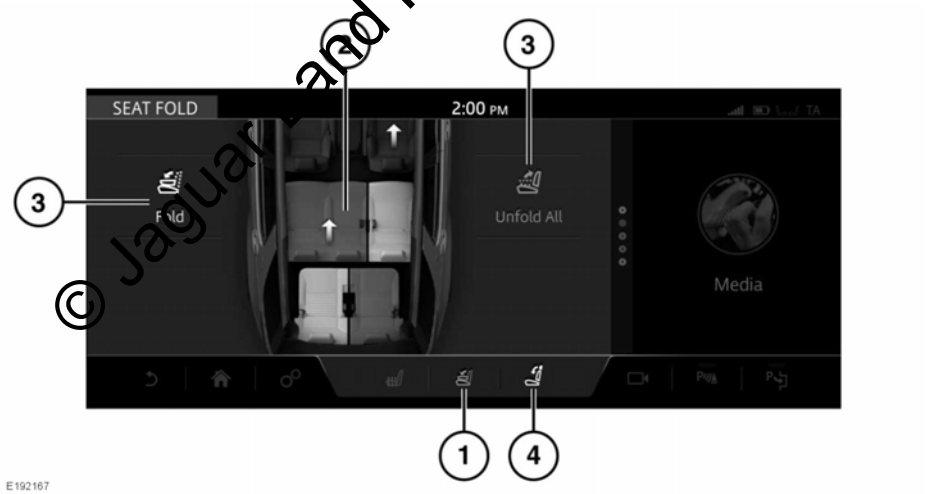
Before folding the seats, make sure that all objects have been removed from the second and third row seats, and from the footwells. Failure to do so could potentially result in damage to the item or seat.

Note: *Before folding or raising a rear seat, make sure the rear seat belts are fully retracted and positioned against their respective D pillars.*

The electric rear seats and head restraints can be folded via the touchscreen or a smartphone app. The electric rear seats can also be raised. See **310, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.

Note: *The smartphone app only allows electric rear seat and head restraint movement if the vehicle is locked.*

To fold the electric rear seats and head restraints using the touchscreen, press the **seats** icon on the **HOME** screen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.



To fold a rear seat:

1. Touch the **seat fold** icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Select the seat(s) to be folded by touching the appropriate image on the touchscreen.
3. Select the desired action.

Note: *It is not possible to fold an occupied seat. An occupied seat is grayed out on the touch screen.*

Note: *The front passenger seat automatically moves forward to avoid a clash with a folding second row seat. The* ***Front Seat Clash Avoidance*** *feature can be switched off via the* ***SEAT SETTINGS*** *screen.*

Touch the **head restraint fold** icon (**4**) to display the **HEADREST DROP** screen. To fold a head restraint via the touchscreen, follow the same process as described for folding a seat.

Note: *It is not possible to raise the head restraints remotely. See* ***49, ELECTRIC REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS****.*

Note: *It is not possible to fold the left-side or center second row head restraints unless both the left-side and center second row seats are unoccupied. Both options remain grayed out on the touchscreen until both seats are unoccupied.*

Note: *The second row seats pause mid-travel when returning to the raised position when* ***UNFOLD ALL*** *is selected from the touchscreen.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

⚠WARNING

While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centerline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

⚠WARNING

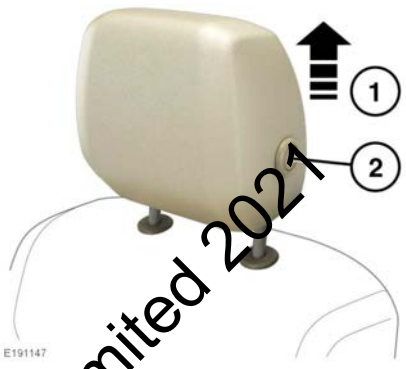
Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

⚠WARNING

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could potentially cause serious injury or death.

Head restraints are fitted to all front and rear seats.

MANUAL FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



To adjust the manual front head restraints:

1. To raise the head restraint, pull it upward.
2. Press the button on the side of the head restraint to move the head restraint downward. Simultaneously press down on the head restraint.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Head restraints

ELECTRIC FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



To adjust the electric front head restraints:

1. Use the switches on the side of the seat cushion to move the head restraint to the required position.
2. Move the head restraint wings manually to the required position.

MANUAL REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



Press the button (**1**) located on the side of the rear head restraint to fold the head restraint. Simultaneously, move the head restraint to the fold position.

⚠WARNING

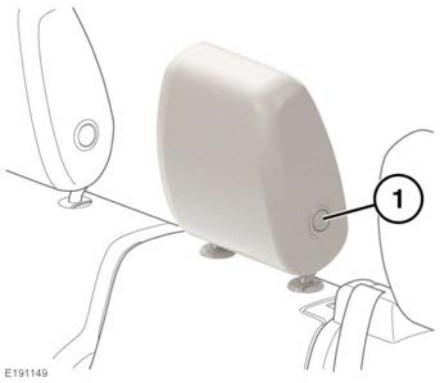
Do not drive or carry passengers with the rear head restraints in the folded position in any occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

To return the rear head restraint to its correct position, push the head restraint backward until it locks into place.

Note: *It is not possible to adjust the height of the rear head restraints.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ELECTRIC REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



Press the button (**1**) located on the side of the rear head restraint to fold the head restraint.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive or carry passengers with the rear head restraints in the folded position in any occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

To return the rear head restraint to its correct position, push the head restraint backward until it locks into place.

Note: *It is not possible to adjust the height of the rear head restraints.*

REAR HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL



The manual rear head restraints can be removed, if required, e.g., to fit larger child seats.

Note: *Two people are required to carry out this operation.*

To remove a manual rear head restraint, first move it to the fully raised position. Then:

1. Press the release tag* below the stem collar and simultaneously press the button on the other stem collar.
   *To locate the release tag, press down on the seat material in the area shaded on the illustration.
2. A second person is now required to lift out the head restraint.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Head restraints

⚠WARNING

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the stem collars and push the head restraint downward.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

⚠WARNING

Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.

⚠WARNING

Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices on vehicles with electrically adjustable steering columns. Automatic movement of the steering column could result in damage to the vehicle or possible injury or death to the occupant.



1. **Manual adjustment:** Move the locking lever, located under the column downward to unlock. Move the steering column up, down, in, or out, to the desired position. Move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.
2. **Electric adjustment:** Move the control up or down to adjust the tilt or height. Move the control forward or rearward to adjust reach.

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

With the steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column and driver's seat move to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

On opening the driver's door, the system raises the steering column to the highest position. The system lowers the driver's seat to a lower position, assisting with exit from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the system returns the driver's seat and steering column to the previous positions.

Note: *If the driver's seat or steering column are adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement stops.*

To prevent automatic movement of the driver's seat and steering column, turn the control clockwise to the manual position.

Note: *If the steering column control is moved away from AUTO when the driver's seat and steering column are in the exit position, the system resets. The driver's seat and steering column move back to their previous positions when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

POWER STEERING

The instrument panel displays a warning message and an amber warning lamp to indicate a fault with the power steering system. See **86, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Power assistance may be reduced to protect the system if overheating is detected. Overheating can be caused by excessive steering inputs or high ambient temperatures.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has cooled.

The steering wheel may vibrate to protect against freezing caused by water around the steering system.

If full steering assistance does not return, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



To activate the heated steering wheel, press button **(1)**. Press again to switch off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SEAT BELT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

Always replace a seatbelt if it becomes frayed, contaminated, doesn't work properly or after the vehicle has been involved in an accident.

⚠WARNING

Always avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils, chemicals and especially battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure the seat belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges when using them to restrain items other than occupants.

⚠WARNING

Always wear seat belts low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders.

⚠WARNING

Always adjust seatbelts and positioning sliders as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort.

⚠WARNING

Always sit well back in the seat, with the seatback in an upright position.

⚠WARNING

Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short. The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but does not replace them.

⚠WARNING

Never place hard, sharp, or fragile items between the occupant and the seat belt.

⚠WARNING

Never use comfort clips, or any devices that create slack in the seat belt system.

⚠WARNING

Never modify the seat belt adjusting devices or assembly, in any way that prevents the assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠WARNING

Never wear seat belts with the straps twisted.

⚠WARNING

Never place a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant.

⚠WARNING

Never independently wear the lap belt or shoulder belt portion of the seat belt.

⚠WARNING

Never attempt to cushion the impact of an accident by placing anything between an occupant and the seat belt.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Seat belts

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks.

Note: *Always contact a retailer / authorized repairer before attempting to carry out a repair on a vehicle. Only approved replacement parts should be used for any repairs that are carried out.*

SEAT BELT OPERATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt, designed for an occupant older than 12 years of age or weighing more than 36 kg (80 lb). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint.

To fasten a seat belt:

1. Make sure that the seat, and occupant's sitting position, are correct.
2. Draw the belt out smoothly across the collar bone at the mid-point between the shoulder and neck, and down to the appropriate buckle.
3. Press the metal tongue into the buckle until a click is heard.

Note: *When releasing the seat belt, hold the belt before pressing the release button. Doing so prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.*

Note: *A seat belt slider may be fitted to this vehicle. When the seat belt is not in use, the belt slider allows for optimal positioning of the metal tongue.*

To unfasten a seat belt:

1. Hold the belt.
2. Press the red button on the buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back to its original resting position.

If a seat belt height adjuster is fitted, to operate:

1. Press and hold the button to release the locking mechanism.
2. Slide the mechanism up or down to the required height.
3. Release the button to re-engage the locking mechanism.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving. Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash.

⚠WARNING

Never attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause incorrect seat belt adjustment, or loss of vehicle control.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.



E184191

⚠WARNING

Always position the seat belt correctly for the safety of a pregnant mother and unborn child. Failure to observe this may increase the risk of serious injury during emergency braking or in the event of an accident.

To adjust the seat belt for use during pregnancy:

1. Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen.
2. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt across the chest, and to the side of the abdomen.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Regularly inspect seat belts for wear and damage. Regularly check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing. Also check the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

To inspect the condition of the seat belts:

1. With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
2. With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snags. Allow the belt to fully retract with a smooth action.
3. Partially unreel the seat belt. Hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any seat belt fails to meet the above criteria contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage. If the belt does not ease out from the anchorage, return the vehicle to level ground before attempting to release the seat belt again.*

Note: *If the rear seats are returned to the upright position quickly, the seat belt mechanism may lock. If locking occurs, ease the belt out from the upper anchorage.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SEAT BELT LOCKING MECHANISM

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

The rear seat belts and the front passenger seat belt have a locking mechanism which improves the retention of child seats.

To fit a child seat:

1. Place the child seat in the vehicle. Attach the seat belt, and secure the buckle in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
2. Pull on the shoulder section of the belt to unreel all of the remaining webbing to the limit of its travel. The automatic locking feature now engages. The locking feature acts as a ratchet, only allowing the webbing to retract.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract onto the child seat, while firmly pushing the child seat into the vehicle's seat. A clicking sound confirms that the ratchet has engaged.
4. Make sure there is no slack in the seat belt, by pulling upward on the shoulder belt immediately above the child restraint.

When the child seat is removed, and all of the seat belt webbing is allowed to retract, the seat belt locking mechanism reverts to normal operation.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

An audible warning sounds, and a warning lamp illuminates when the following conditions occur:

- The driver seat, or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seat belts have not been fastened.
- The vehicle accelerates from a low speed.
- A front seat belt is unfastened while the vehicle is moving.
- A rear seatbelt is unfastened.

If a front seat belt has not been fastened, the audible and visual warnings turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *There may be a short delay at the start of the journey before the passenger side reminder operates.*

Note: *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder system. If any objects are placed on the front passenger seat, make sure they are secured using the seat belt.*

SEAT BELT MONITOR

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays a graphic to indicate which rear seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. The graphic also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

Note: *In all cases the graphic covers all rear seating positions and may also display front row positions.*

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 53, SEAT BELT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Always check and replace the seat belt pre-tensioners after any activation. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners reduces the effectiveness of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS).

Seat belt pre-tensioners are fitted to the front, and all rear outboard seats.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. The seat belt pre-tensioners automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt. As a result, forward movement of an occupant on a seat fitted with a pre-tensioner is reduced.

Note: *The rear center seat is not fitted with a seat belt pre-tensioner.*

Load limiters are fitted to all seats, except the second row center seats.

Load limiters help to regulate tension of a seat belt in a severe impact.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CHILD SEAT SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.

⚠WARNING

Always use a child restraint or booster seat appropriate to the age and size of a child.

⚠WARNING

Always wear seat belts or use suitable child restraints, for every trip, no matter how short.

⚠WARNING

Always securely store a head restraint, if removing it in order to fit a child restraint.

⚠WARNING

Always refit a removed head restraint after a child restraint is removed.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure the child restraint is correctly anchored.

⚠WARNING

Never use a forward-facing child restraint until the child using it is above 20 lb (9 kg), and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

⚠WARNING

Never allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold on to the child.

⚠WARNING

Never use a child seat that only hooks over the seatback. A child seat of this type cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for a child.

⚠WARNING

Even with advanced air bags, children can be killed or seriously injured. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. All children under the age of 12 should ride in the outboard second row seats.

CHILD SEAT OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

All infants and children should be restrained in a suitable child safety seat. The child safety seat should be appropriate to the age and size of the infant or child.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly secured in a child restraint system appropriate for the age and weight of the child, in a rear seating position. Failure to use an appropriate restraint system greatly increases the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Note: *The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when traveling in a vehicle is subject to change. The driver is responsible for making sure that all regulations in force are complied with.*

BOOSTER SEATS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

A child may be too large to fit into a child safety seat, but too small to safely fit the vehicle's seat belt. In these circumstances it is recommended that a booster seat is used for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the fitting and use of the booster seat. Adjust the vehicle's seat belt accordingly.

If the booster seat is fitted with LATCH connectors, these should be used to secure the seat in conjunction with the rear seat belt.

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Non-LATCH child restraints

- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
- Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of a child seat. Replace child seats or harnesses that show signs of wear.
- Make sure that all the slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Make sure that any belt positioning sliders on the seat belts are adjusted such that there is no slack in the lap belt after fastening.
- No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage a child not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See **61, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.
- When using a seat belt to secure a non-LATCH child restraint, make sure the seat belt's locking mechanism is used.

LATCH child restraints

- Always attach the top tether when fitting the LATCH seat.
- Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child seat. Always give the LATCH seat a final pull, to make sure that the lower anchors are secure.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
- Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of a child seat. Replace child seats and harnesses that show signs of wear.

  No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage children not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See **61, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.

CHILD SAFETY INFORMATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended. Failure to observe this may result in serious injury, or death in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by use of the lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured.

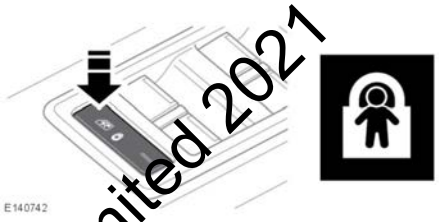
A child should only travel in the front passenger seat if it is essential and national or state legislation permits it. If this is the case, it is recommended that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.
- Adjust the seatback to the optimum upright position to support the child seat.
- Adjust any lumbar support to the minimum support position.
- Adjust any cushion extenders to the fully retracted position.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.



It is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled if children are to be carried in the rear seat positions.

Press the switch located on the driver's door to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator illuminates when active, and the message center displays a message.

To switch off, press the switch again. The LED extinguishes, and the message center displays a message.

WARNING LABELS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E156334

The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun-visor. The label warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger air bag is fitted and operational.

⚠WARNING

Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side air bag, as an inflating air bag can cause serious or fatal injury.



E187568

The above label is affixed to both B pillars. The label warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side air bag.

VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

⚠WARNING

All children under the age of 4 should ride in the second row seats. Children aged between 4 and 12 should ride in either the second or third row seats.

Note: *Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.*

Note: *Make sure the child seat fits the child properly. Always check the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits.*

Vehicles with adjustable second row seats

Before fitting a child seat to a second row adjustable seat, adjust the second row seatback to the upright position to support the child seat.

Vehicles with third row seats

Jaguar Land Rover Limited do not recommend that children under the age of 4 use the third row seats.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FITTING LATCH CHILD RESTRAINTS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Do not attempt to fit a LATCH child restraint to the center rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold a LATCH child restraint in this position. Install only using seat belts (non-LATCH system) and the top tether at this position. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

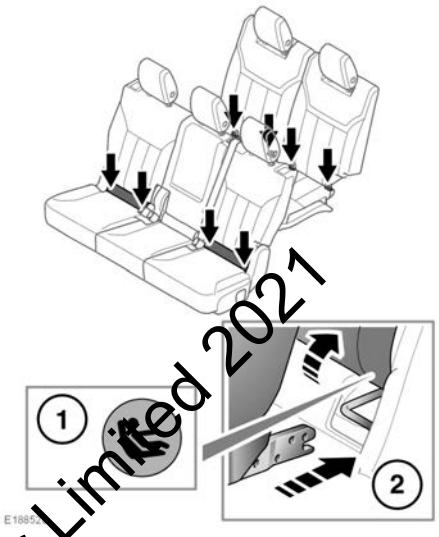
⚠WARNING

If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

⚠WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. This could endanger the child in the event of an accident.

LATCH anchorage child restraints can be fitted to the outer seat positions on the second row seats and both of the third row seats.



To fit a LATCH child seat:

1. A label displaying the LATCH symbol is sewn into the flaps, to indicate the position of the LATCH lower anchorages.
2. Raise the flap to expose the LATCH anchor points. Slide the child seat locking mechanism into both of the anchor points.
   For child seats fitted with non-rigid LATCH connectors, connect the lower tether strap hooks to the anchor bars and tighten the straps.

   Note: *If required, rotate the support strut on the rear of the flap through 90 degrees to lock the flap in the raised position.*

Some child restraints are fitted with an upper tether anchorage. See **64, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchor points should be checked visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

Note: *Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

Note: *For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.*

Note: *After removing a child restraint, always make sure the lower anchor bar flap is fully closed. Failure to fully close a flap could hinder a seat fold maneuver.*

FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured.

⚠WARNING

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

⚠WARNING

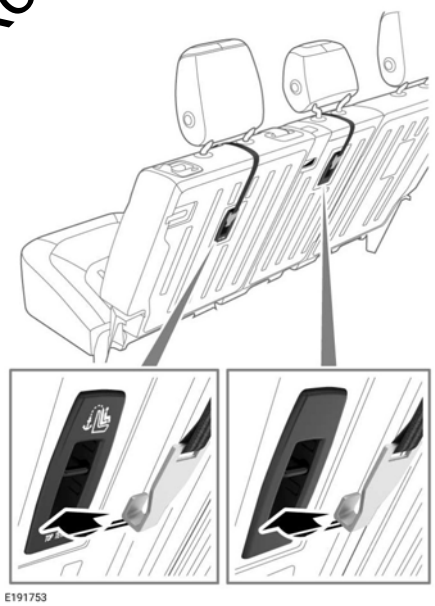
If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the center seating position, the center armrest must be in the stored position (folded into the seat). In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

Tether anchorage points are fitted to the back of all second and third row seating positions. Each tether anchorage point is for the sole use of a child restraint fitted to the same seat.

Note: *Do not attach a tether strap to an anchorage point on a folded seat.*

Always use the tether anchorage provided with your child seat or restraint system. The tether anchorage should be correctly routed and tightened.

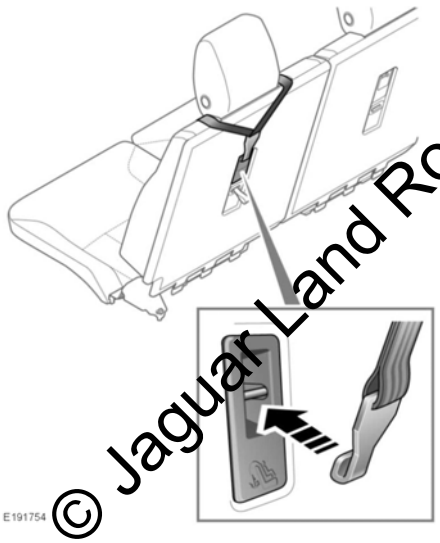
Second row seats



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Fit the child restraint securely in a second row seat.
2. Pass the tether strap(s) under the head restraint, between the two head restraint stems.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor point on the back of the same seat. Make sure the strap is not twisted, and that the hook is facing toward the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap(s) according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Third row seats



1. Fit the child restraint securely in a third row seat.
2. If the child restraint has two tether straps, pass one strap around each side of the head restraint. If the child restraint has one tether strap, pass the strap around the left side of the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor point on the back of the same seat. Make sure the strap is not twisted, and that the hook is facing toward the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap(s) according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Air bags

AIR BAG SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings before using any of the features in this section.

Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Always wear seat belts, for every journey, no matter how short, in all seating positions. The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) adds to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts, but it does not replace them.

⚠WARNING

Always make sure the roof lining and door pillar trims are correctly fitted, in good condition, and free from obstruction.

⚠WARNING

Always wear correctly positioned seat belts, and sit as far back as practically possible from the air bag. Air bags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions or other injuries.

⚠WARNING

Always maintain a gap between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso to enable unobstructed inflation of the air bags.

AIR BAG OPERATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) inflates instantaneously, and cannot provide protection in secondary or some other types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Air bag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions, vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc. vary considerably and affect the rate of vehicle deceleration accordingly.

The air bags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

AIR BAG OBSTRUCTION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Never obstruct the operation of the air bags by placing any part of the body or any objects in contact with, or close to, an air bag module.

Note: *Unauthorized modifications of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*

Examples of obstructions include:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an air bag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an air bag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted air bags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by the vehicle manufacturer, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted air bags.

AIR BAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

When the air bag inflates:

⚠WARNING

A fine powder is released. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can also cause breathing difficulty for people who suffer from asthma or other respiratory problems.

⚠WARNING

A loud noise is emitted. The noise may cause temporary discomfort and loss of hearing.

⚠WARNING

Some air bag components become very hot. Do not touch the air bag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

If any of these problems occur, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

After inflation, the front and seat mounted side air bags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

AIR BAG WARNING LAMP

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system. Never use a child restraint on the front passenger seat if the warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system.

The instrument panel displays an illuminated air bag warning lamp as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **85, AIR BAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following air bag warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.

- Fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- Fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- Illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. Elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning lamp.
- Rotary coupler.
- Air bag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Air bag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Air bag wiring harness.
- Seat occupancy sensor.
- Front passenger belt tension sensor.
- Air bag status indicator.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.

Note: *Not all of the SRS Elements listed are fitted to all specifications of vehicle.*

AIR BAG SERVICE INFORMATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Never attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the SRS, or with any wiring or components in the vicinity of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.

⚠WARNING

Never use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of any Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative.

The following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/authorized repairer or a qualified person:

⚠WARNING

Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.

⚠WARNING

Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Note: Always consult a retailer/authorized repairer if:

- An air bag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the air bag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering air bags.
- The amber air bag warning lamp illuminates.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 62, AIR BAG SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified must contact a retailer/authorized repairer before any modifications are made. Incorrect modifications may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

USA only: If you are considering modifying the vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, e.g., by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat(s) or air bag system, please contact:

Jaguar Land Rover North America LLC

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

24/7 Roadside assistance: 1-800-637-6837

General inquiries: 1-800-FIND 4WD

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

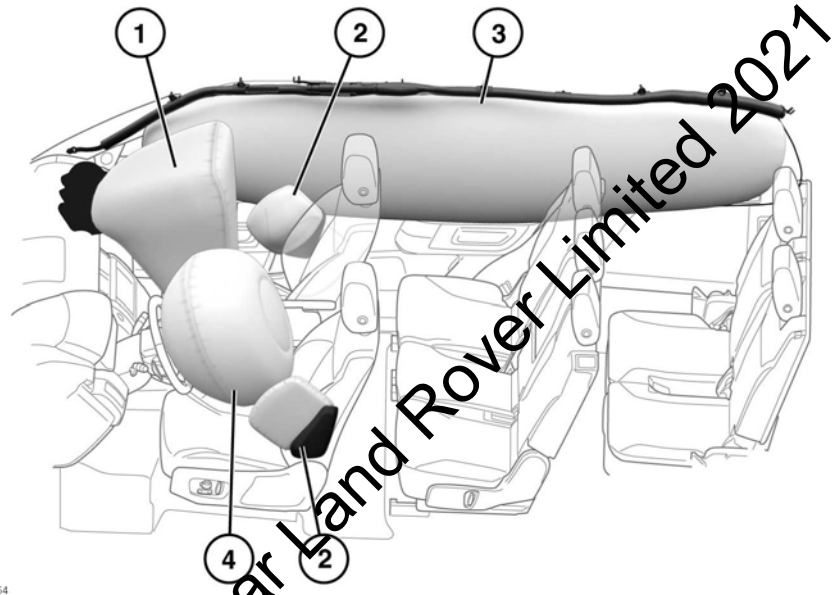
Air bags

AIR BAG LOCATIONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of 10in (25cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver's air bag module.



Air bag locations:

1. Front passenger's air bag.
2. Front seat side air bags.
3. Curtain air bags.
4. Driver's air bag.

Note: *The general location of air bags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word* ***AIR BAG****.*

FRONT AIR BAGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

The single stage driver's air bag deploys, depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The front passenger's air bag is able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the front passenger's air bag inflates fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the air bag only partially inflates.

SIDE AIR BAGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

The side air bags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso. In general, the side air bags deploy in the event of a side impact, and only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIR BAGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 66, AIR BAG SAFETY.

The curtain air bags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

Note: *Curtain air bags do not only inflate as a result of side impacts and rollover events. The curtain air bags may deploy in some frontal impacts.*

OCCUPANT SENSING

⚠WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the relevant warnings before using any of the features in this section. See 58, CHILD SEAT SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child restraint system. Children should be placed in an age and weight appropriate child restraint system and should be secured in a rear seating position.

⚠WARNING

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

⚠WARNING

For optimum safety, children under the age of 13 should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended. An inflating air bag could cause injury or death to children traveling in the front passenger seat.

The front passenger seat is fitted with an occupancy sensor system that determines if:

- The seat is unoccupied.
- The seat is occupied by a person or object of low weight, or a child seat.
- The seat is occupied by a heavier person or object.

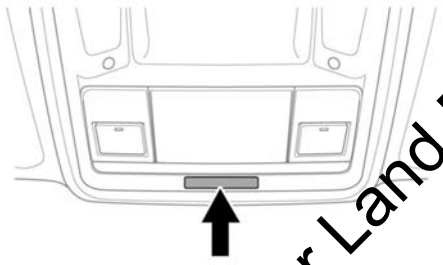
The system consists of:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- A weight sensing pressure pad fitted under the front passenger seat cushion. The sensor measures downward pressure and weight on the seat cushion.
- A seat belt tension sensor integrated into the anchor point of the front passenger seat belt.
- A control unit fitted under the front passenger seat.
- An air bag status indicator lamp, mounted in the roof console.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the ignition is switched on when checking the operational status of the front passenger air bag.



E163315

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Operational states

There are three operational states. The operational states are shown in the following table:

Occupancy status	Passenger air bag status	Status indicator display
Completely empty.	Deactivated.	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF *
Child restraint, or low weight occupant or object.	Deactivated.	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
Heavy occupant or object.	Activated.	ON PASSENGER AIRBAG **

* If the status lamp shows that the air bag is off with a seated adult in the front passenger seat, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer immediately.

** Displays for 60 seconds, followed by no display.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Instrument panel

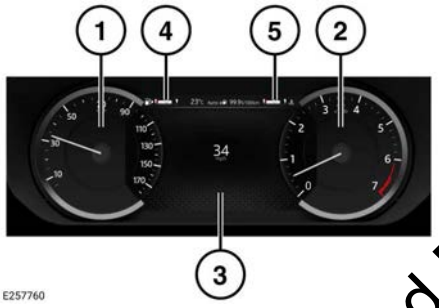
INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

The instrument panel displays information, warnings, and menu options to the driver.

The vehicle has one of the following instrument panels:

- Standard instrument panel. See **74, STANDARD INSTRUMENT PANEL**.
- Virtual instrument panel. See **74, VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

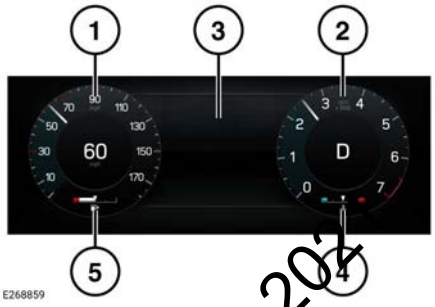
STANDARD INSTRUMENT PANEL



The standard instrument panel comprises permanent speedometer (**1**) and tachometer dials (**2**). The information panel (**3**) is only visible when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The information panel displays the fuel level (**4**) and the engine temperature (**5**).

VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL



The virtual instrument panel comprises a speedometer (**1**), a tachometer (**2**), and an information panel (**3**). The engine temperature (**4**) is displayed within the tachometer. The fuel level (**5**) is displayed within the speedometer.

All instruments are only visible when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The virtual instrument panel can be configured to meet personal preferences. See **74, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL

The virtual instrument panel can be configured using the steering wheel controls. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION** and **77, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.

To configure the virtual instrument panel:

1. Select **Display**.
2. Select **Layout**.

The following options are available:

- **Two dial**: Displays the speedometer and tachometer either side of the information panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 202

- **One dial**: Displays two information panels either side of a central tachometer.
- **Full map**: Displays the navigation system information over the entire instrument panel.
- **Media**: Displays the current media source information over the entire instrument panel.
- **Driver assistance**: Displays the currently enabled driver assistance features over the entire instrument panel.

The selected option is retained after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

Note: *Driving status information, e.g., the vehicle's speed, is always displayed in the instrument panel, irrespective of the option selected.*

SPEEDOMETER

The speedometer displays the current vehicle speed. Depending on market specification, the speedometer can be configured to display in mph or km/h.



To configure the speedometer, touch the **Settings** icon on the touchscreen.

From the settings menu:

1. Select **All**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Units**.
4. Select **Trip**.

TACHOMETER

The tachometer displays the current engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

INFORMATION PANEL

The information panel displays information and menu selection options. The information panel can be configured to meet personal preferences. See **77, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.

FUEL GAUGE

The fuel gauge displays the current fuel tank level. An arrow-head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates to indicate that the vehicle should be refueled in the near future.

The approximate driving distance for the current fuel level can be viewed via the trip computer. See **78, TRIP COMPUTER**.

NOTICE

Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE GAUGE

The temperature gauge displays the current engine temperature.



If the pointer moves into the red segment, the engine is overheating. In this event, the engine temperature warning lamp illuminates.

If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

NOTICE

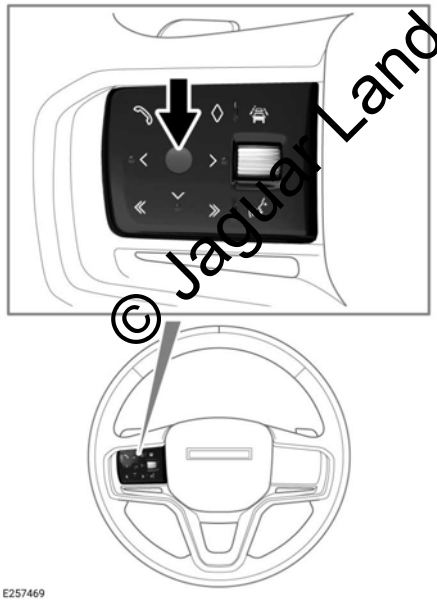
Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

Note: *Engine performance may be reduced, and some vehicle systems may stop working, if the engine overheats.*

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION

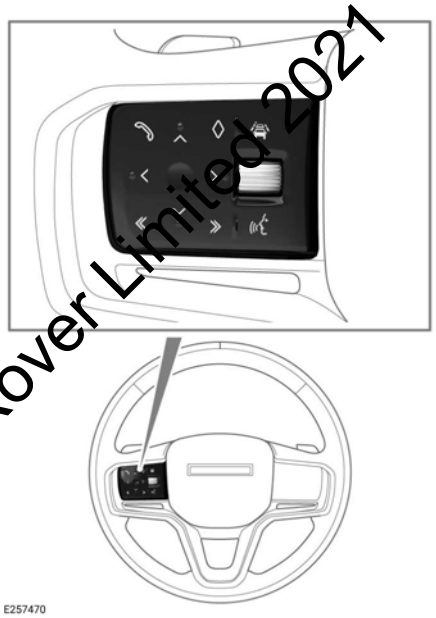
⚠WARNING

Do not operate the instrument panel menu controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.



E257469

The instrument panel's display settings and some vehicle features can be configured using the instrument panel menu. The instrument panel menu is operated via the left-side steering wheel controls. Press the center of the controls to display the instrument panel menu and the instrument panel menu controls.



E257470

To operate the instrument panel menu:

- Press the **^** and **v** icons to scroll through the menu items.
- Press the **>** icon or the center of the controls to enter a sub-menu.
- Press the center of the controls to confirm a selection.
- Press and release the **<** icon to return to a higher-level menu.
- Press and hold the **<** icon to exit the menu.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS

⚠WARNING

Do not operate the instrument panel menu controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Instrument panel menus do not display until any messages are read and cleared. Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death. See 77, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES.

The following main menu options are available:

- **Phone**: Contains a list of recent phone contacts.

  Note: *The phone menu only displays when a smartphone is paired and connected.*
- **Media**: Displays information on the current media source.
- **Trip**: Displays trip meter information and settings. See **78, TRIP COMPUTER**.
- **Info panel**: Standard instrument panel only. Contains sub-menus and settings to allow the driver to configure the instrument panel's display.
- **Display**: Virtual instrument panel only. Contains sub-menus and settings to allow the driver to configure the instrument panel's display. See **74, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.
- **Head-up display**: Displays Head-Up Display (HUD) sub-menus and settings. See **79, ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.
- **Vehicle**: Contains sub-menus and settings for the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

Note: *Not all menu options are available in all markets.*

Note: *Some menu options are not available once the engine is started.*

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

⚠WARNING

Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle, serious injury, or death.

The instrument panel displays warning and information messages to the driver.

Warning messages require the driver to take action as soon as safely possible. Warning messages are accompanied by a warning lamp.

Information messages provide the driver with vehicle information, or actions to be taken.

Press the center of the left-side steering wheel controls to clear a message. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Clearing a warning message does not rectify the fault. The associated warning lamp remains illuminated until the fault is rectified.*

If a persistent fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the relevant message each time the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The messages are displayed in order of importance, with the highest priority message being displayed first. Each message is displayed for 2 seconds. Some messages may be accompanied by an audible tone.

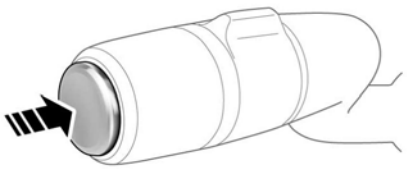
Some messages may also display an Owner's Handbook symbol. Further information on the message can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook.

TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer displays and stores trip information. The information panel displays the information.

The following information can be displayed:

- **Date**.
- **Trip distance**.
- **Average speed**.
- **Average economy**.
- **Instantaneous economy**.
- **Range**.



E197183

Press and release the trip button, located on the end of the lighting control, to scroll through the available options.

Some trip computer information can be reset to zero. Press and hold the trip button for 2 seconds when the instrument panel displays the required information.

Two trip computers are available: **Trip A** and **Trip B**. Both display the same information. To switch between the trip computers:

1. Select the **Trip** instrument panel menu. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION** and **77, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
2. Select **Trip bank**.
3. Select **Trip A** or **Trip B**.

A third option, **Trip Auto**, is also available. **Trip Auto** allows the driver to add or remove data from either **Trip A** or **Trip B** to a running total.

To add data for the last journey to **Trip Auto**:

1. Select **Trip Auto** from the **Trip bank** menu.
2. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second.
3. The instrument panel displays either **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey**. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The trip computer can be configured to display in miles or km in the same way as the speedometer. See **75, SPEEDOMETER**.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

⚠WARNING

Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The HUD projects some instrument panel information onto the windshield.

Note: *The HUD must be correctly adjusted to match the driver before use. See **79, ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.*

To switch the HUD on or off:

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu. See **77, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
2. Select **Enable HUD**.

To select which items the HUD displays:

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu.
2. Select **HUD content**.
3. Select the options to be displayed from the list.

Note: *The HUD can only display information that is also currently displayed in the instrument panel.*

Note: *The position and format of the displayed information is dependent on the priority and number of options selected.*

If the HUD requires cleaning, follow the recommended procedure. See **336, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

⚠WARNING

Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction. Driver distraction may cause an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

The position and brightness of the HUD can be adjusted. The position of the HUD must be correctly set before use. The correct position is dependent on the height of the driver and the seat position.

To set the HUD to the correct position:

1. Set the driver's seat to the correct position. See **35, SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION**.
2. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION** and **77, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPTIONS**.
3. Select **Position**.
4. Follow the on-screen positioning instructions, using the **arrow** icons on the left-side steering wheel controls.
5. When correctly adjusted, press the **O** icon on the left-side steering wheel controls.

The position of the HUD can be stored using the seat memory function. See **36, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

To adjust the brightness of the HUD:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Select the **Head-up display** instrument panel menu.
2. Select **Brightness**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions, using the **arrow** icons.
4. When correctly adjusted, press the center of the left-side steering wheel controls.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD) LIMITATIONS

The Head-Up Display (HUD):

- Takes longer to display information in extreme temperatures.
- Does not operate correctly if items are placed between the top of the dashboard and the windshield.
- May not view correctly if the driver is wearing polarized sunglasses.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:


See **83, BATTERY CHARGE (RED)**.



USA: See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.


Canada: See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.


See **84, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.



USA: **84, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.


Canada: See **84, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.


See **84, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.


See **84, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)**.


See **84, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)**.


See **84, SEAT BELT (RED)**.


See **85, AIR BAG (AMBER)**.



See **85, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)**.



USA: See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.


Canada: See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.


See **85, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)**.


See **86, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER)**.


See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.



See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.


See **86, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.


See **86, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.


See **86, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.


See **86, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.


See **86, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)**.


See **87, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVE (GREEN)**.



See **87, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)**.


See **87, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (GREEN)**.


See **87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Warning and information lamps



See **87, BRAKE HOLD (GREEN)**.


See **87, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.


See **87, FOLLOW MODE (GREEN)**.


See **87, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.


See **87, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.


See **88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.


See **88, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)**.


See **88, LOW BEAM (GREEN)**.



See **88, LOW RANGE (GREEN)**.


See **88, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.



See **88, SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)**.


See **88, STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN)**.


See **88, TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)**.


See **88, TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)**.



See **89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)**.


See **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.



See **89, PARK ASSIST AUTO SEARCH (BLUE)**.


See **89, STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GRAY)**.



See **89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE)**.



See **89, AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE)**.


See **89, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.



See **89, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.


See **89, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (WHITE)**.


See **89, LOW TRACTION LAUNCH (WHITE)**.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

⚠WARNING

Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is active, and others indicate that the driver must take action and seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

LAMP CHECK

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and turn signals.*

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the vehicle's ignition system is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the air bag warning lamp which remains on for 7 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the instrument panel.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The 12V battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. The instrument panel displays a warning message. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (RED)

⚠WARNING

Do not drive if the instrument panel displays a message indicating a low brake fluid level. Check the brake fluid level and top up as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and may lead to a collision. A collision can potentially result in serious injury or death.



USA.



Canada.

The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates red while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message displays in the instrument panel.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits, and investigate the cause of the warning.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



USA.



Canada.

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied.

If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The red lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking without the appropriate turn signal being operated.

Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, felt through the steering wheel.

The left or right lane illuminates, depending on which lane boundary is being crossed.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

SEAT BELT (RED)

Note: *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***54, SEAT BELT OPERATION****.*



When the vehicle is in motion and seats are occupied, the warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime if the seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AIR BAG (AMBER)



The air bag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or while driving, there is a fault with the air bag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

⚠WARNING

If the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and brake warning lamps illuminate at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified. The braking system may not be functioning correctly which may, in turn, lead to a loss of control, potentially causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for operating the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions at all times. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



USA.



Canada.

The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates amber after starting the engine, or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)



The check engine warning lamp illuminates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

The lamp remains illuminated until the engine starts. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, an emissions-related fault has been detected. The vehicle remains safe to drive with the lamp illuminated, although qualified assistance should be sought as soon as possible.

With the lamp illuminated, the vehicle may enter limp-home mode. Limp-home mode reduces vehicle performance to safeguard against any further damage to the vehicle. See **145, LIMP-HOME MODE**.

If the check engine warning lamp flashes when the engine is running, reduce the vehicle's speed as soon as it is safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER)



The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates amber when the driver condition monitor system determines that the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The instrument panel also displays a warning message.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active.

If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF warning lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the instrument panel.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message, or an information message, is available in the instrument panel.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights indicator lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates amber to warn that one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel also displays a warning message. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tire pressures. Inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVE (GREEN)



The adaptive cruise control lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control feature is active.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)



The adaptive speed limiter lamp illuminates when the adaptive speed limiter feature is switched on.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (GREEN)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the auto stop/start system.*

BRAKE HOLD (GREEN)



The brake hold lamp illuminates when a brake hold function is activated.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates green when cruise control is active.

FOLLOW MODE (GREEN)



The follow mode lamp illuminates green when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

GEARSHIFT (GREEN)

⚠WARNING

The warning indicator is only a guide. The driver is responsible for operating the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions at all times. Failure to do so may result in an accident, potentially leading to serious injury or death.



The gearshift indicator lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gearshift indicator lamp does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The green lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled and the system is tracking the lanes.

LOW BEAM (GREEN)



The low beam lamp illuminates when the low beam headlights are switched on.

LOW RANGE (GREEN)



The low range lamp illuminates when low range is selected.

SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)



The speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter feature is active.

STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN)



The steering assist active lamp illuminates green when the feature is active.

TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The trailer turn signals lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the turn signal warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the turn signal bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If a connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The appropriate turn signal lamp, left or right, flashes when the column control is moved up or down to signal a turn.

If a turn signal bulb fails, the visual and audible warnings flash and sound, respectively, at twice the normal rate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates blue when the AHBA feature has activated the high beam headlights.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

PARK ASSIST AUTO SEARCH (BLUE)



The park assist auto-search information lamp illuminates blue when the park assist system is searching for a valid parking space.

STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GRAY)



The steering assist not active lamp illuminates gray when the feature is not active.

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (WHITE)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates white when the AHBA feature is active.

AUTO LIGHTS (WHITE)



The auto lights warning lamp illuminates white when the vehicle's exterior lights are operating in auto mode.

AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)



The auto stop/start inhibit lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is active but a vehicle system requires the engine to run.

AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The auto stop/start OFF lamp illuminates white when the auto stop/start system is switched off.

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (WHITE)



The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates white when the driver condition monitor system determines the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel.

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH (WHITE)



The low traction launch lamp illuminates white to confirm that the low traction launch system is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Exterior lights

EXTERIOR LIGHTS OVERVIEW

The lighting system operates automatically depending upon the ambient lighting conditions. The system selects the appropriate lighting function, low beam or Daytime Running Light (DRL), for the conditions that the system detects. In some circumstances, it may be necessary for the vehicle user to manually override the automatic operation. Some manual operations are not possible due to vehicle activity or legislative requirements.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LIGHTING CONTROL



1. Neutral position of the lighting control: The lighting system operates automatically, dependent on the ambient level of light. During daylight, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) automatically switch on. During night time, the headlight switches on automatically. Rotate the lighting control to the required position and release, to manually switch on any lighting functions. After being released, the lighting control returns to the neutral position.
2. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **88, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
3. Headlights OFF: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights off.
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. **AUTO**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to select auto lights. Selecting **AUTO** causes the lighting system to operate according to ambient conditions. When ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, low beam and licence plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA), and wiper detection may also be activated.

   Note: *Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.*

6. High beam: With the headlights on, push and release the lighting control to select high beam. Push and release the lighting control again to deselect high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

   Note: *Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.*

7. High beam flash: Pull the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. High beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.

   Note: *Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.*

8. Front fog lights: Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel, and release to switch off the front fog lights. Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel again, and release to switch off the front fog lights. The instrument panel warning light illuminates. See **87, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.

9. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the headlights or front fog lights are selected. Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel, and release to switch on the rear fog lights. Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel again, and release to switch off the rear fog lights. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **86, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

During normal daylight operation, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) operate automatically with the lighting control in the **AUTO** position.

The DRL switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied. Market dependent.
- Auto lights are selected and high ambient light levels are detected.

Turn the lighting control to the **OFF** position to switch off the DRL. The DRL can be manually switched off only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. The DRL reactivates when the vehicle's speed increases above 6 mph (10 km/h) or the vehicle covers a distance of 109 yards (100 meters). Repeat the process to switch off the DRL during a journey.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

Headlight courtesy delay operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position, ambient light levels are low, and the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

The time delay for illumination can be changed via the **Exterior Lights** settings.

To access the time options for headlight courtesy delay via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Exterior Lights** soft key.
5. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Home lights** to open the options menu.
6. Choose a time delay option.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

Press the headlight button on the smart key to switch off courtesy lights at any time.



Settings icon[1]



Exit icon[2]

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

⚠WARNING

The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all potential circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times. Incorrect use of the headlights may cause an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The forward-facing sensors are mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep this area of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The AHBA system automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level. AHBA is enabled when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position.

The driver can disable and re-enable the AHBA system at any time via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Vehicle**.
4. Touch **Exterior Lights**.
5. **Automatic high beam assist**: Toggle on or off. Toggle on to activate and view the available options.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. Touch the **exit** icon[2], after selection, to return to the previously displayed screen.

The AHBA system only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 15 mph (24 km/h).

Push and release the lighting control to manually override to low beam from high beam. Rotate the collar to **AUTO** to return to AHBA. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (BLUE)**.

Push and release the lighting control to manually select high beam. Rotate the lighting control to **AUTO** to return to AHBA.

The following may affect the operation of the AHBA system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- A dirty or obscured sensor.
- A dirty, damaged, or misted windshield.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central highway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windshield.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

WINDSHIELD WIPER DETECTION

If **AUTO** lights is selected and the windshield wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more. The side lights, tail lights, and headlights switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lights automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

EXTERIOR LIGHTS CONDENSATION

Condensation in the headlights, turn signals, or rear lights is a natural phenomenon.

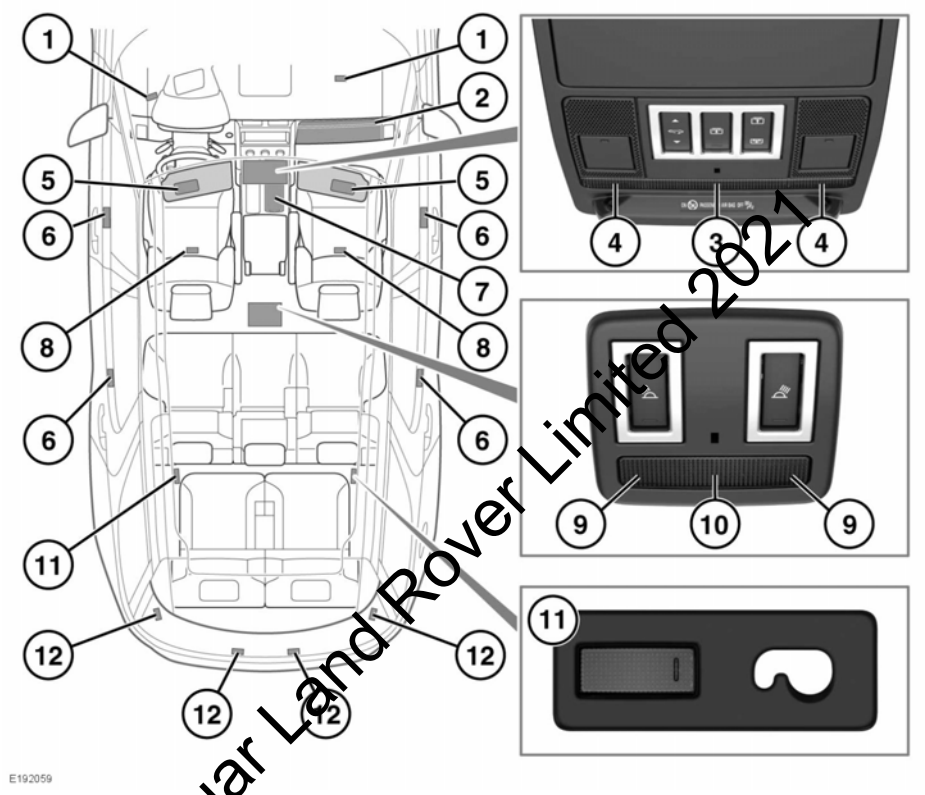
Condensation can occur under certain atmospheric conditions or after washing the vehicle. The performance and life expectancy of the lights is not affected.

Condensation should partially or completely clear, with regular use of the lights, within 48 hours of dry atmospheric conditions.

LED lights distribute less heat towards the outer lens than halogen or xenon lights. In extreme conditions, LED lights may take longer to clear, but this is not detrimental to the performance of the light.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INTERIOR LIGHTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Interior lighting locations and operation:

1. Front seat footwell lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened.
2. Glovebox lights: Illuminate when the upper or lower glovebox is opened.
3. Front interior courtesy light: To switch on or off, touch the center of the lens briefly. To switch automatic illumination on or off, touch the lens until the light flashes. In auto mode, the lights illuminate when a door is opened.
4. Front reading lights: Move a finger close to, or touch, the relevant lens to switch on or off.
5. Vanity mirror light: Slide the cover open or closed to switch on or off.

6. Puddle lights: Illuminate when the doors are opened.
7. Storage compartment lighting: Controlled by the settings of the front interior courtesy light. See **111, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.
8. Rear seat footwell lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened.
9. Rear reading lights: Press the relevant button to switch on or off.
10. Rear interior courtesy light: Illuminates when a door is opened. Controlled by the settings of the front interior courtesy light.
11. Rear interior lights: Illuminate when the doors are opened. Press to switch on or off.
12. Loadspace lights: Illuminate when the tailgate is opened.

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

AMBIENT INTERIOR LIGHTING

Note: *Vehicles without configurable interior mood lighting illuminate the standard white light for the interior lights.*

To adjust the configurable interior mood lighting for color and intensity, select the **Vehicle** menu in System Settings. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

STEALTH MODE

Note: *The interior illumination control does not operate while stealth mode is active.*

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid with night-time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the touchscreen's **Vehicle** menu. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Stealth mode switches off the touchscreen. If night-time conditions exist when the touchscreen is switched off, interior switch illumination and instrument panel back-lighting automatically reduce to the minimum light levels. Stealth mode deactivates if night-time conditions no longer exist.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WIPER OPERATION

NOTICE

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. Operating the wipers on a dry windshield could cause damage to the wiper blades, arms, mechanism and the windshield.

NOTICE

Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windshield, around the wiper arms and blades, and the cowl area, before operating the wipers. Failure to do so can damage the wiper blades, arms, mechanism and the windshield.

NOTICE

Make sure the wipers do not stick to the glass during freezing or hot conditions. Attempting to use the wipers while they are stuck to the glass could cause damage to the wiper blades, arms, mechanism and the windshield.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.

NOTICE

Make sure the wipers are not in automatic rain sensing mode and are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

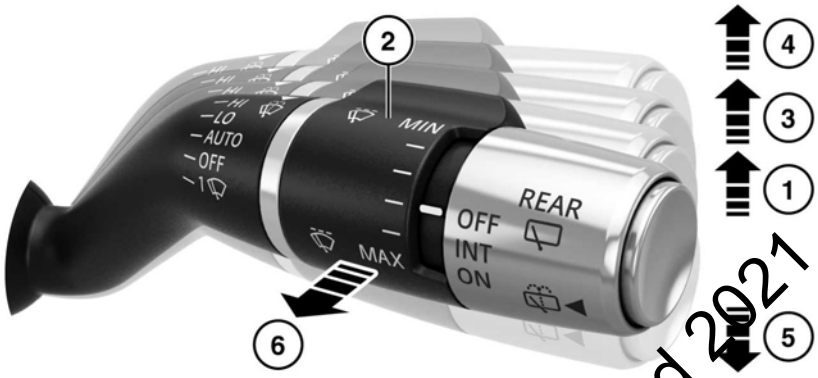
Note: *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended windshield washer fluid. See* ***403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

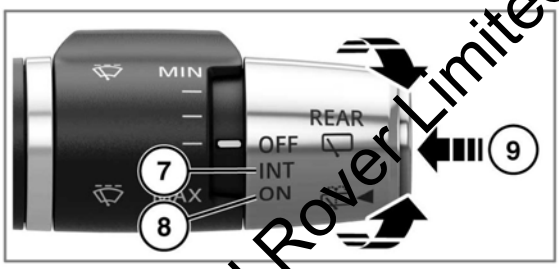
Note: *The windshield is no longer wiped effectively in the automatic rain sensing mode if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See* ***328, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION****.*

Note: *If the wipers become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts the operation of the wipers. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the vehicle's ignition.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wipers and washers





© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To operate the washers and wipers:

1. Automatic rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions. The appropriate wiper frequency is selected for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).
   When rain sensing mode is disabled: Intermittent wipe. The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).
2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe.

   Note: *Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.*
3. **LO**: Low speed continuous wipe.
4. **HI**: High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windshield, or hold down for further continuous wipes.

6. Windshield wash and wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windshield. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the control's position.

   Note: *The front wipers do not operate while the hood is open.*

7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear window wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimize drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

   Note: *The rear wiper activates when Reverse (**R**) is selected and the front wipers are operating.*

   Note: *The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.*

RAIN SENSOR

Note: *Static droplets may not be detected when the vehicle is first started. A single wipe should be used to clear the windshield.*

Note: *If the wash/wipe control is in the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open. See **97, WIPER OPERATION**.*

Note: *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windshield may result in the windshield wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wash/wipe control is returned to the **OFF** position.*

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windshield, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor detects the presence and amount of water on the windshield and automatically activates the windshield wipers, accordingly.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position (**1**). Rotate the collar (**2**) to adjust the behavior of the system to suit the driver's preference. See **97, WIPER OPERATION**.

The driver can disable and re-enable the rain sensing at any time via the touchscreen.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Convenience** soft key.
5. Touch the **Wipers** soft key.
6. Touch the **Rain sensing wipers** toggle.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 5 mph (8 km/h) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 5 mph (8 km/h), the original wiper speed setting is automatically restored.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The front wipers speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by retailer/authorized repairer.

Rear wiper

The frequency of the intermittent rear wiper increases when the vehicle's speed increases.



The rear wiper speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by retailer/authorized repairer.

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe feature is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe feature clears any remaining drips from the windshield.



The drip wipe feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

WINTER PARK POSITION

NOTICE

Make sure that the wiper arms are in the winter park position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windshield. Failure to do so, may result in damage to the bonnet.

When the vehicle is parked, the wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. The wiper blades can be lifted from the windshield to limit the possibility of the blades sticking to the glass. Lifting the wiper blades from the windshield aids the removal of snow, mud, and leaves, etc.

The wipers move to the winter park position when the vehicle's ignition is switched off. The wipers remain in the winter park position until one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle's speed is above 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The wipers are operated.

The driver can disable and re-enable winter park at any time via the touchscreen:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Convenience** soft key.
5. Touch the **Wipers** soft key.
6. Touch the **Winter wiper park** toggle.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

HEADLIGHT WASHERS

Note: *The headlight washers operate only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.*

The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windshield wash.

The feature operates every fourth operation of the windshield washers. The feature operates if the headlights are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash.

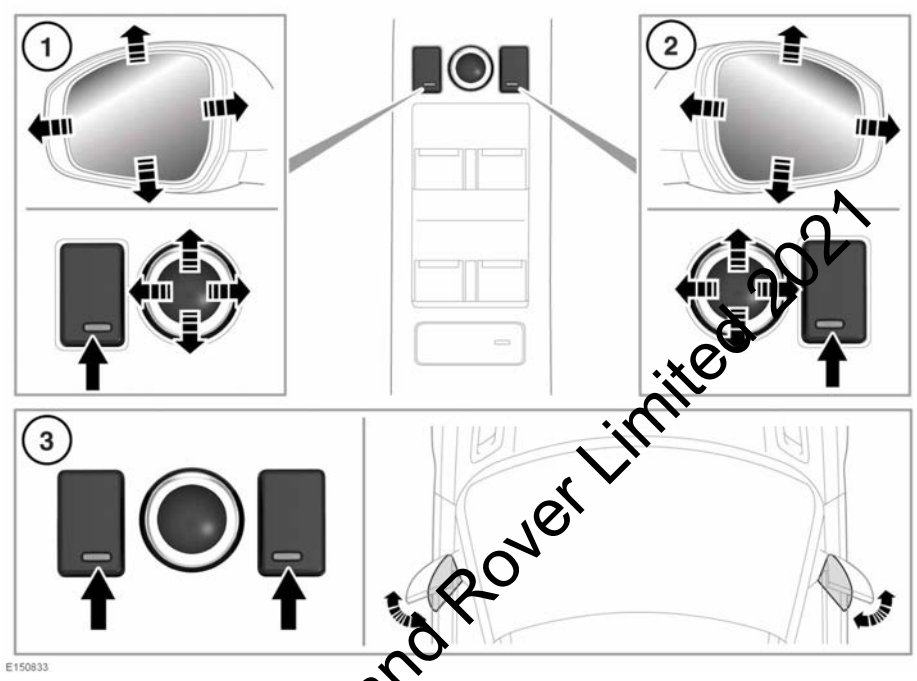
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Switching the headlights or the vehicle's ignition off and back on again resets the cycle. See **91, LIGHTING CONTROL** and **136, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mirrors

DOOR MIRRORS



Note: *An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or outwards, the mirror head is disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold and then unfold the mirror using the button.*

Note: *The door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.*

Note: *If the door mirrors are folded using the buttons, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. The mirror unfolds when the vehicle exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h).*

1. Left door mirror adjustment.
2. Right door mirror adjustment.
3. Press both buttons to fold and unfold the mirrors.

   Note: *Power-folding is a vehicle specific feature. The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 70 mph (113 km/h).*

Press the appropriate button to select the relevant door mirror to be adjusted. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The door mirrors can be configured by a retailer/authorized repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.

The door mirrors can be adjusted for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Garage mode

If the mirrors are folded in before the vehicle is locked, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Garage mode prevents the mirrors being damaged when unfolding. For example, in a tight garage spot.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Mirror dip can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle** settings menu.

To access the **Mirror Dip on Reverse** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Vehicle**.
4. Touch **Convenience**.
5. Touch **Mirrors**.
6. **Mirror Dip on Reverse**: Toggle on or off.
7. Touch the **exit** icon[2], after selection, to return to the previously displayed screen.

Selecting Reverse (**R**) causes the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the door mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the door mirrors can be adjusted and the new position can be saved.

Note: *The new door mirror dip position can only be saved in **R**.*

When the vehicle is in **R**, press the memory save button (**M**). Select either memory **1**, **2**, or **3** to save the reverse mirror dip position to the corresponding memory. See **36, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

Three different reverse mirror dip positions can be saved. Use the memory recall feature to recall the saved positions.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, the door mirrors return to the previous position.

Note: *Mirror dip is a vehicle specific feature. If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7.5 mph (12 km/h) in **R**, the mirrors return to the normal position for enhanced visibility.*



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the garage door opener. Failure to use the garage door opener safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

⚠WARNING

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to program the garage door opener with the vehicle inside the garage.

NOTICE

The device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver. See ***107, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE****.*

The RF transceiver is also known as HomeLink®.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror.

The hand-held transmitter is also known as a garage door remote.

The RF transceiver can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to three different hand-held transmitters. The RF transceiver can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF-operated remote devices.

The transceiver RF approval numbers for the USA and Canada are shown below:

USA and Puerto Rico FCC ID: MZLJLRHL4.

Canada IC: 4112A-JLRHL4.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

NOTICE

Unplug the remote device during programming of the remote device if repeated operation of the remote control is required. Repeated operation of the remote control during programming may result in damage to the remote device.

Note: *HomeLink® is compatible with a wide range of remote devices. For information on compatible devices and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com****.*

For the best results, fit a new battery to the remote control before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

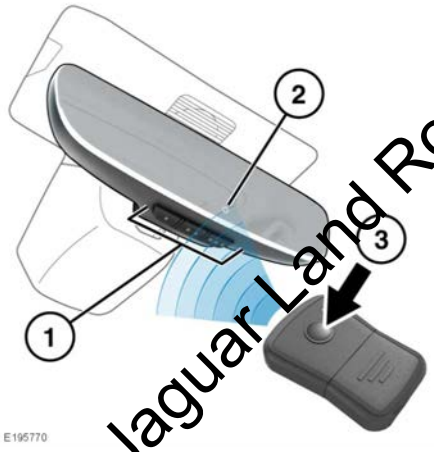
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PROGRAMMING

Note: *The instructions below apply to the majority of HomeLink® compatible systems. However, there are some HomeLink applications, or HomeLink compatible systems, that require slightly different instructions. For more information and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com****.*

Note: *Garage door openers manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. In this case, a stepladder, or other sturdy, safe device may be required to reach the learn or smart button on the garage door opener.*



1. HomeLink buttons.
2. LED indicator.
3. Remote control for the device, e.g., garage door opener.

If required, erase the previous programming from the HomeLink device. See **106, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**.

To program the HomeLink device:

1. With the ignition switched on, press and release the required HomeLink button (**1**). The LED indicator (**2**) flashes orange.
2. Position the end of the remote control (**3**) 1 to 3 inches (2 to 8 cm) from the HomeLink button.
3. Press and hold the button on the remote control until the LED indicator changes from flashing orange to flashing or solid green.

   Note: *Some remote device systems require the operator to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Refer to the additional information in* ***Gate operator and Canadian programming*** *at the end of the* ***PROGRAMMING*** *instructions.*
4. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device.

   Note: *The device should now be programmed. If not, carry out the following additional steps:*
5. Locate the **learn** or **smart** button on the garage door opener's motor-head unit.

   Note: *The* ***learn*** *or* ***smart*** *button can usually be found directly on the motor-head unit. If in doubt, refer to the garage door opener's manual to identify the button.*
6. Firmly press and release the **learn** or **smart** button. There are typically 30 seconds to initiate Step **7**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

7. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete.

Gate operator and Canadian programming

Canadian Radio Frequency (RF) laws require remote device systems to have a remote control signal that only operates for a short period of time. The signal times-out before programming is complete. The operator is required to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Some U.S. gate operators also have this type of signal.

If in Canada, or experiencing difficulties while programming the remote device, carry out the following:

During programming of the remote device, replace programming step **3** with the following:

- Press and hold the HomeLink button. Simultaneously, press and release the remote control button every 2 seconds, until the LED indicator rapidly flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the HomeLink and remote control buttons.
- Continue the programming process from step 4.

If the HomeLink LED indicator does not rapidly flash green or continuously illuminates green after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at: **www.HomeLink.com**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed HomeLink® button:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the required HomeLink button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED indicator starts to flash orange. See **105, PROGRAMMING**.
3. Release the button.
4. Follow the programming instructions from step 3 onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the HomeLink® device:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Press and hold the outer two HomeLink buttons until the LED indicator changes from continuously illuminated orange to flashing green. See **105, PROGRAMMING**.

   Note: *Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.*
3. Release the buttons. HomeLink is initialized and the previous settings of all three buttons are erased.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

NOTICE

If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink® device. See ***106, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING****.*

Note: *Retain the original remote device's remote control handset for future programming requirements.*

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink® website: **www.HomeLink.com**, or call the toll-free helpline at: 1-800-355-3515.

For Genie and Sommer garage door openers, go directly to the HomeLink website.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

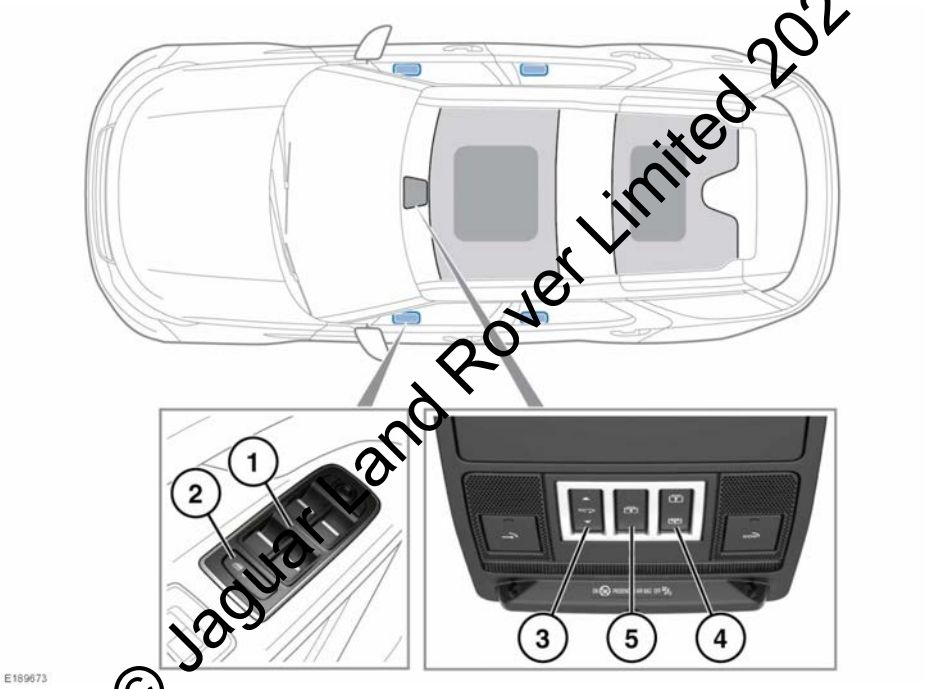
ELECTRIC WINDOWS

⚠WARNING

To prevent accidental operation, never leave the smart key inside the vehicle if children or animals are also left inside the vehicle. Unsupervised operation of the windows can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

If children are in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows, rear seats and doors. If the windows, rear seats or doors are operated by children, there is a risk of serious injury or death.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Window switches:
   - To open a window: Press lightly at the front of the switch and release.
   - To close a window: Pull up lightly at the front of the switch and release.
   - For one-touch open and close operation, press or pull firmly at the front of the switch and release.

Note: *The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.*

2. Rear window isolator button: Press the switch to isolate operation of the rear windows and doors. The indicator light in the switch illuminates to confirm isolation.

   Note: *The rear window isolator also isolates the rear seat adjustment and activates the child safety locks. See* ***61, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*

3. Front roof blind switch:
   - To open the blind: Press lightly at the rear of the switch and release.
   - To close the blind: Press lightly at the front of the switch and release.
   - For one-touch open and close operation, press firmly at the front or rear of the switch and release.
4. Rear roof blind switch:
   - To open the blind: Press lightly at the rear of the switch and release.
   - To close the blind: Press lightly at the front of the switch and release.
   - For one-touch open and close operation, press firmly at the front or rear of the switch and release.
5. Panoramic roof switch:

NOTICE

Wherever possible, remove any snow, ice, dirt, and leaves, etc., from the panoramic roof mechanism, before closing. Failure to do so, may damage the panoramic roof mechanism.

NOTICE

To prevent accidental damage, make sure that any roof rack load will not interfere with the opening of the panoramic roof.

- Press lightly at the rear of the switch to tilt the roof. Once tilted, lightly press again to open the roof.
- From the fully open position, press lightly at the front of the switch to fully close.
- For one-touch open and close operation, press firmly at the front or rear of the switch and release.

Note: *The panoramic roof will operate for 40 seconds after the ignition is switched off, provided that a front door is not opened.*

Automatic roof blind

The automatic operation of the roof blind can be adjusted via the climate settings screen on the touchscreen display.

When the feature is selected and the doors are locked, the roof blind closes automatically. When the engine is running, the roof blind returns to the previous open position.

ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

⚠WARNING

Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Before closing a window or the panoramic roof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

The anti-trap mechanism does not operate when closing the panoramic roof from the tilted position. The panoramic roof can cause serious injury should a body part become trapped. Always make sure that the panoramic roof is free from obstructions before closing.

Anti-trap protection will stop window or panoramic roof movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or panoramic roof and its aperture, and remove any obstructions (e.g., ice, etc.).

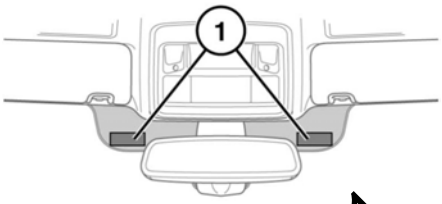
If it is still necessary to raise the window or close the panoramic roof, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window or panoramic roof. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window or opens the panoramic roof slightly.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window or close the panoramic roof again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window or opens the panoramic roof slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window or panoramic roof for a third time. Hold the button in the close position. Hold until closed.

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset. See* ***329, WINDOW RESET****.*

Note: *The panoramic roof's anti-trap mechanism works differently and does not require reset if activated. See* ***329, SUNROOF RESET****.*

SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



E198893

The solar attenuating glass windshield filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.

Electronic devices, such as toll road payment tags or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be attached at the indicated locations. The locations are on the inside of the windshield. If the tags are located at another part of a solar attenuating windshield, the electronic scanners may not recognize them.

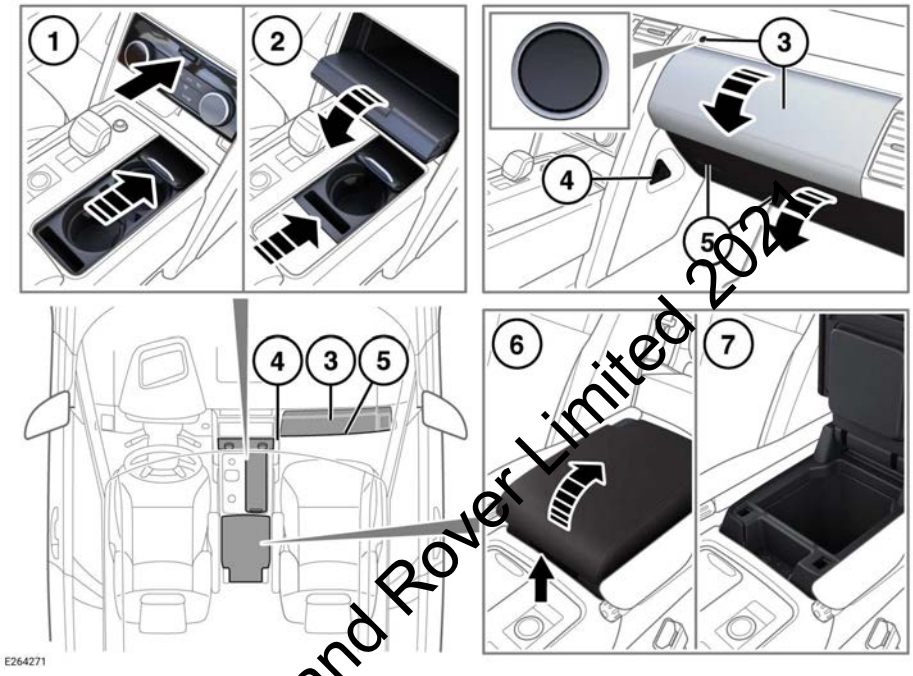
The optimal fixing location is at the top of the windshield, as shown at (**1**), close to the interior rear-view mirror.

Note: *The electronic device should be in the size appropriate location on the driver's side of the windshield.*

Note: *Transponders, mounted on the front license mount plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Make sure any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Do not drink while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not remove items from, or place items in, the cup holders while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

The cool box should be switched off when it is not needed, to preserve battery charge.

Front storage locations:

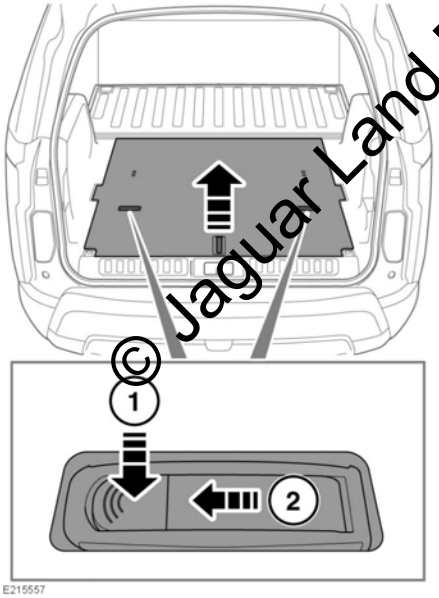
1. Climate control panel: Press to release. Cupholder cover: Slide forwards to reveal cupholders.

2. Access to storage behind climate control panel. Access to storage behind cupholders.
3. Upper glovebox: press button to release lid.
4. Convenience hook.
5. Lower glovebox: release catch to open glovebox.
6. Armrest: Release catch, then lift armrest upwards.
7. Deep storage area: Lift the armrest to access the storage area.

Note: *The climate controls do not operate when the panel is open.*

Under the loadspace floor

The storage compartment is located under the loadspace floor (not applicable on commercial variant).



To access the storage compartment:

1. Reposition the loadspace mat for access.
2. Press both release buttons (**1**) in the location shown.

To close the storage compartment:

1. Press the loadspace floor firmly into the closed position.
2. Press both latches (**2**) to secure the loadspace floor.

Commercial vehicles

⚠WARNING

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Storage compartments

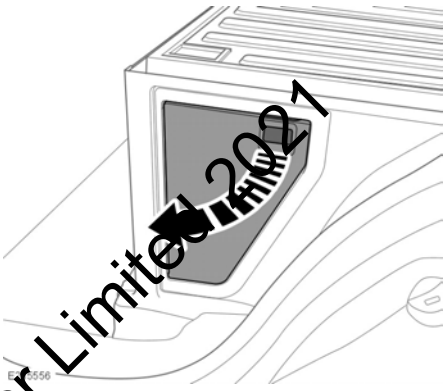
Between the front seats

Storage is provided between the front seats.



Inside the rear doors

The storage compartment spans the full width of the vehicle. Access is gained from either rear door on each side of the vehicle.

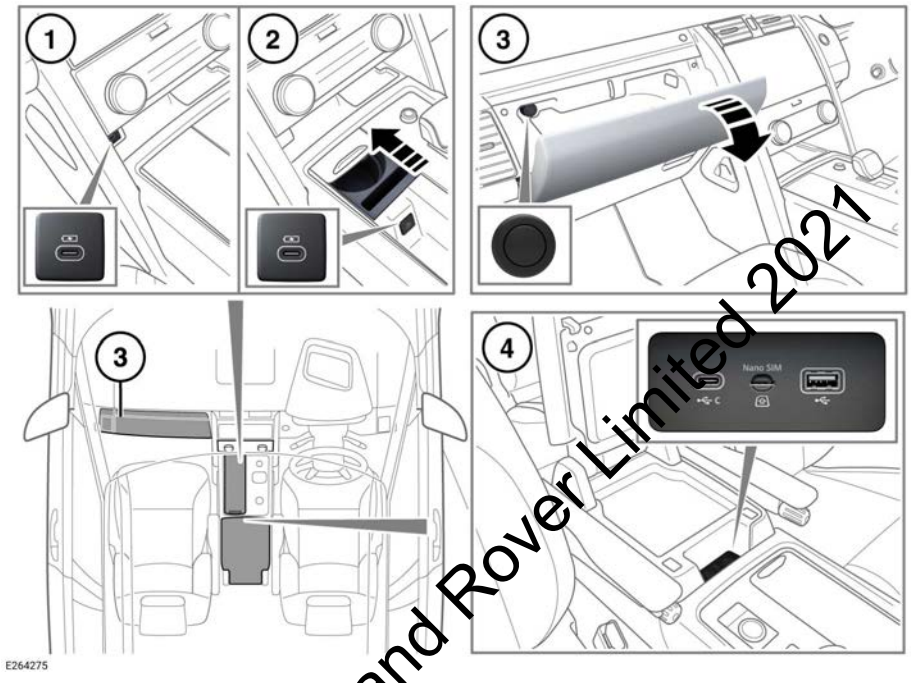


To access the storage compartment:

1. Open either rear exterior door.
2. Pull the storage compartment door handle downward.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

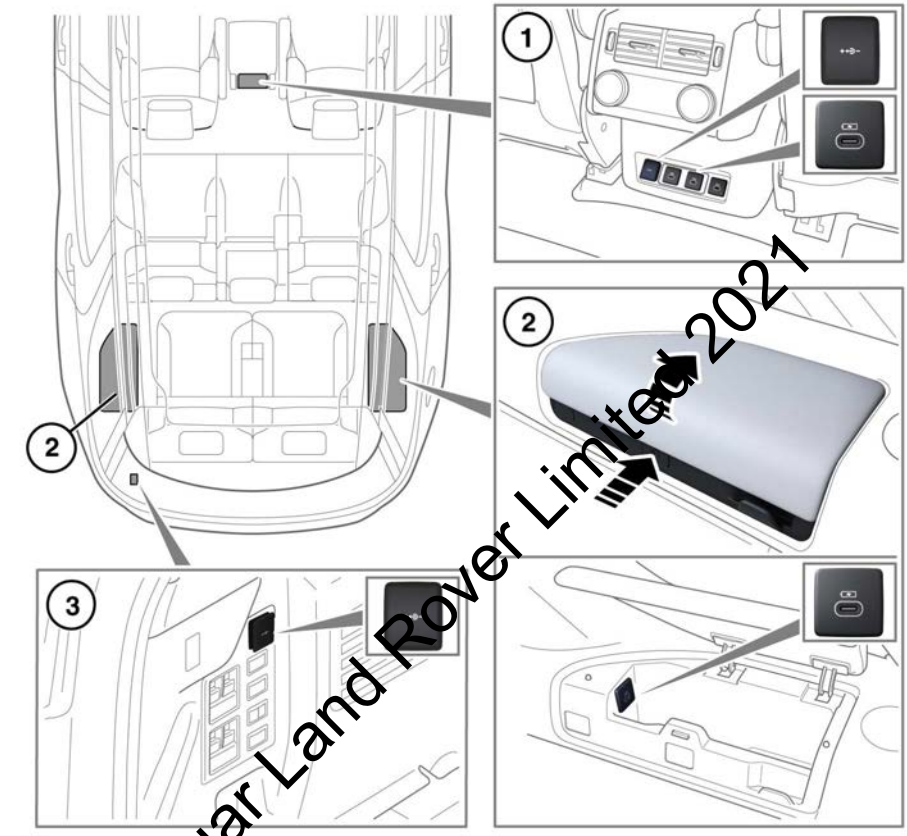
Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

Note: *Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.*

Note: *The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.*

Front auxiliary power sockets:

1. USB C power outlet below the climate control panel.
2. USB C power outlet below the cup holder.
3. 12v socket, located in the glovebox.
4. USB A, C and nano SIM sockets in front of armrest.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Rear auxiliary power sockets:

1. Center console power sockets.
2. Rear side storage power sockets.
3. Loadspace power socket.

WIRELESS CHARGER

⚠WARNING

Metallic objects may become hot if they are placed between the mobile device and the charging mat, which may result in serious injuries.

Storage compartments

Note: *Do not place anything other than a Qi-compatible mobile device or accessory onto the charging mat. Items such as keys, key fobs, coins, jewellery, paperclips, or foil candy wrappers may interfere with the wireless charger operation.*



The wireless charger is located on the center console, beneath the climate controls. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**. The wireless charger provides up to 15 Watts of power to charge Qi-compatible mobile devices.

To use the wireless charger:

1. Switch on the vehicle ignition.
2. Place the Qi-compatible mobile device in the center of the mat with the device's screen facing upward. Align the longer edge of the device with the longer edge of the wireless charging area. Charging commences after a short delay of up to 10 seconds.

Note: *Remove the mobile device from the wireless charger to stop the charging process.*

Note: *The amount of charging current supplied and the time taken for charging is entirely under the control of the mobile device.*

Note: *The wireless charger continues to charge during an engine stop/start event.*

Note: *Aftermarket device cases or enclosures can reduce wireless charging efficiency, or block it altogether. If a Qi-compatible device exhibits problems charging wirelessly, remove any aftermarket cases or enclosures.*

Note: *Removing the device from the wireless charging mat and replacing it will reset the connection.*

Note: *Dynamic driving could cause the device to move around on the wireless charging area. This may cause the wireless charge process to disconnect briefly. Make sure the device remains flat on the wireless charging mat.*

The wireless charger switches off automatically when the mobile device is fully charged.

The following icons appear on the touchscreen and relate to wireless charging status:

Charging: Indicates a device is on the charging mat and recognized by the system.

Charged: Indicates the mobile device is fully charged.

Foreign object: Indicates a foreign object is detected on the charging mat. Occasionally, the wireless charging system may display this symbol while cooling down. Wireless charging will resume once the system's temperature has normalized.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Phone signal booster

The wireless charger mat incorporates a phone signal booster. The phone signal booster is a cell phone signal enhancer, designed to compensate for reduced reception inside the vehicle's interior. This phone signal booster operates by selectively boosting signals into and out of the cell phone via an external antenna. The phone signal booster operates automatically when a cell phone is placed on the charging mat; there is no need to connect or set up the phone signal booster.

Note: *The phone signal booster cannot enhance cell phone reception in areas where there is no signal available.*

PHONE BOOSTER REGULATORY STATEMENT

⚠WARNING

E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served when using this device.

Note: *FCC/ISED Notice: This is a CONSUMER device. BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider.*

Note: *In Canada, BEFORE USE, you must meet all requirements set out in ISED CPC-2-1-05. You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 8 in (20 cm) from any person.*

Note: *You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC (or ISED in Canada) or a licensed wireless service provider.*

Note: *FCC RF Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End users must follow the specific operating instruction for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Jaguar Land Rover or Molex could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.*

FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR IC 4774A-MBCNAR.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LOAD CARRYING

⚠WARNING

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and should wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident or subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.

LOADSPACE COVER

⚠WARNING

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

To avoid injury the loadspace cover must not be left in the installed position when the third row seats are occupied.

NOTICE

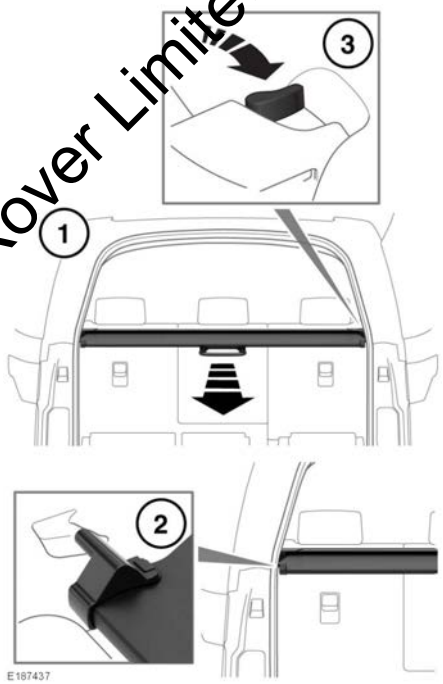
Remove the stored loadspace cover before moving the seats. Failure to do so may result in damage to the loadspace cover.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to raise the second row seatbacks into the upright position when the loadspace cover stored behind the second row seats. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to tip the second row seatbacks forward, for third row access, with the loadspace cover stored behind the second row seats. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.

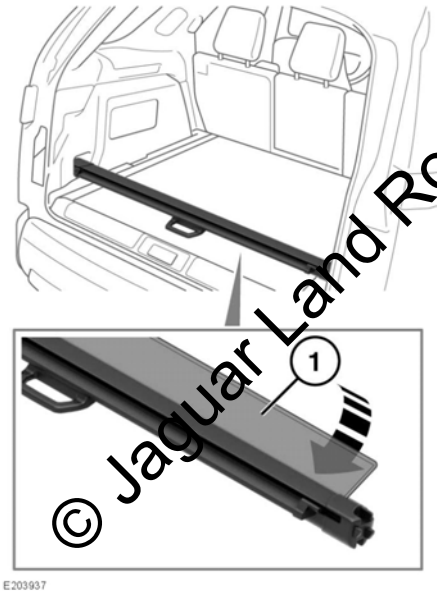


1. Pull the rigid portion of the cover to unroll.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Engage the end pieces into the recessed areas moulded into the loadspace sides. To retract the loadspace cover, disengage the ends from the recessed areas and allow the soft portion of the cover to retract into its housing.
3. To remove the cover, turn the release lever to unlock the assembly and disengage the pins from the sockets.

To refit the cover, engage the left side of the assembly into the recessed area. Engage the right side and push down into place until an audible click is heard.



E203937

To store the loadspace cover:

1. Fold the flap (**1**) underneath the loadspace cover, as illustrated.
2. Locate the loadspace cover into the recesses in the side trim panels.

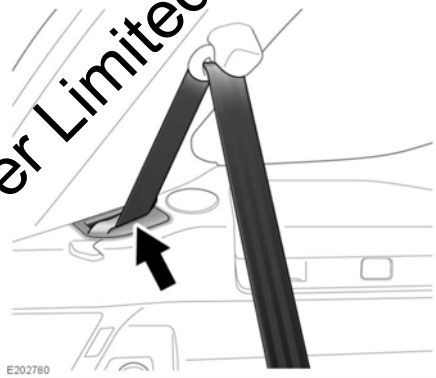
NOTICE

Make sure that the flap is folded underneath the loadspace cover. Failure to do so may result in damage to the cover.

Third row seat belts

⚠WARNING

Never place the loadspace cover behind the second row of seats, if the third row is to be occupied. Failure to do so may result in damage to the cover.



E202780

The loadspace cover can be used with the third row seat belts still connected.

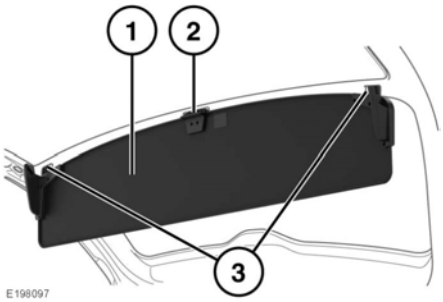
To allow the loadspace cover to be unrolled and retracted, without fouling on the seat belt, place the seat belt into the trim clip. The trim clip is located at the rear of the loadspace.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tailgate blind

NOTICE

If items carried in the loadspace are higher than the loadspace cover, remove the tailgate blind to prevent damage to the blind and/or the items.



1. Tailgate blind.
2. Central clip.
3. Outer clips.

To remove the tailgate blind:

- Carefully release the central clip (**2**).
- Release the two outer clips (**3**).
- Store the tailgate blind securely in the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not store the tailgate blind loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuver, the tailgate blind could cause serious injury or death.

To install the tailgate blind:

- Align the central clip (**2**) and the two outer clips (**3**).
- Secure the central clip in the tailgate.
- Fully locate the two outer clips.

POWERED INNER TAILGATE

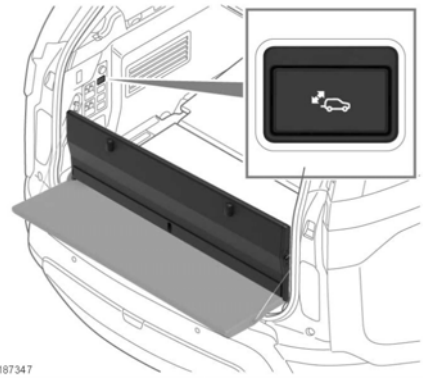
WARNING

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

The primary functions of the powered inner tailgate are as a loading platform and for social seating.

The powered inner tailgate operates automatically when the smart key or the kick gesture are used to open or close the tailgate. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION** and **21, GESTURE TAILGATE**.

The powered inner tailgate does not operate when the interior or exterior tailgate buttons are used to open or close the tailgate.



Powered inner tailgate operation:

Press the button shown in the illustration to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the powered inner tailgate.

Object detection while opening:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If an object is detected that would interfere with the powered inner tailgate opening, powered inner tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions, and press the powered inner tailgate button again to close/open powered inner tailgate.

Object detection while closing:

If an object is detected that would interfere with the powered inner tailgate closing, powered inner tailgate movement stops. If the powered inner tailgate is open, remove any obstructions and press the powered inner tailgate button again to close the powered inner tailgate. If the powered inner tailgate is not open, press the powered inner tailgate button to open the powered inner tailgate and then remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the powered inner tailgate button to close the powered inner tailgate.

Note: *The direction of travel of the powered inner tailgate may change after an object has been detected.*

Press the tailgate close button to close the powered inner tailgate along with the opened tailgate.

The powered inner tailgate can also be manually operated.

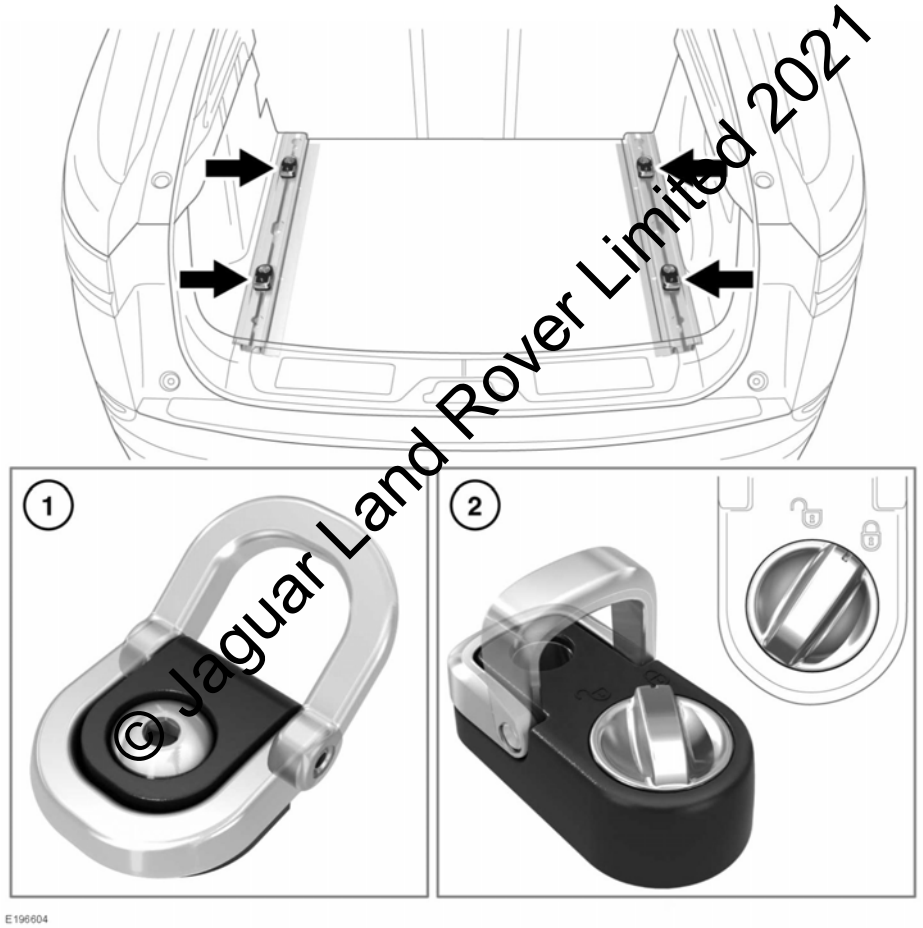
Note: *When in the lowered position, the maximum weight capacity of the powered inner tailgate is 440 lbs (200 kg).*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

⚠WARNING

All items carried in the loadspace should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, subject to sudden braking or change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.



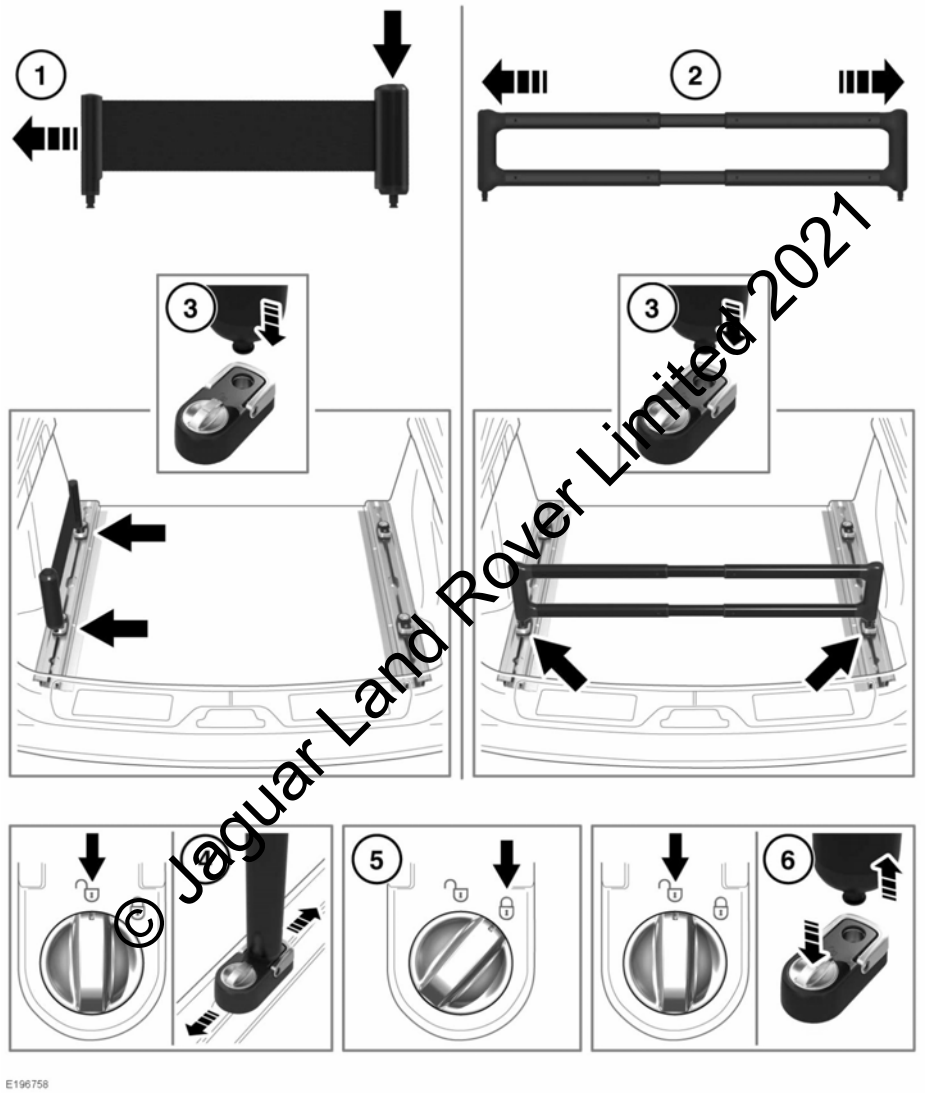
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the loadspace floor.
2. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, turn the locking mechanism counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the mechanism and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the mechanism to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly, until a click is heard. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the mechanism clockwise to lock.

Note: *In some markets, a range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LUGGAGE DIVIDER



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

A luggage divider kit is provided to assist with safely securing items of luggage to the loadspace floor.

Floor-mounted luggage rails provide a full width mounting channel that accommodates a flexible retracting band or a solid telescopic divider. Use the flexible retracting band or the solid telescopic divider to retain soft and hard luggage of all shapes and sizes.

1. Press then pull the retracting band until the required length is reached.

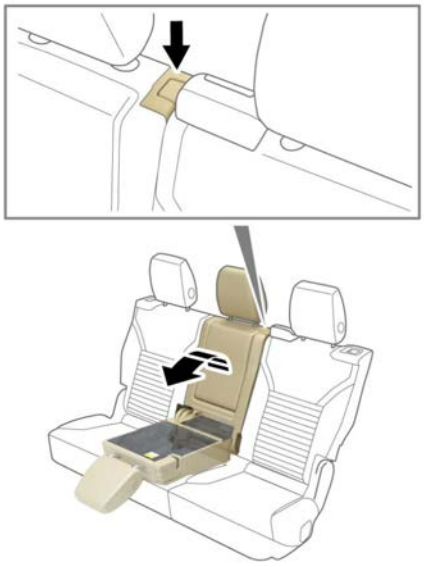
   Note: *The retracting band should only be used along the side of the loadspace floor, as illustrated.*

2. Adjust the divider to the required length.
3. Unlock the appropriate lashing eye and attach the retracting band and divider.
4. With the lashing eye in the unlocked position, press the mechanism and slide to the required position in the luggage rail.
5. Lock the lashing eye in the required position.
6. To remove the retracting band and divider from the lashing eye, unlock the lashing eye and press the lock or unlock button to release.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Load carrying

SKI HATCH



E219237

The ski hatch located in the backrest can be used for transporting long objects.

Press the center release button and fold down the ski hatch panel.

To close the ski hatch panel, push the panel up to the closed position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOWING SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before towing a trailer. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits adversely affects the vehicle's stability and braking. Increased braking distances and loss of vehicle control may be experienced.

⚠WARNING

Only fit approved towing accessories. Vehicle stability may be compromised if non-approved towing accessories are fitted.

⚠WARNING

Never use the vehicle's towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer.

NOTICE

The use of weight distribution hitches is not recommended.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOWING WEIGHTS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Description	Variant	Maximum weight lbs (kg)
Unbraked trailer towing mass.	All vehicles.	1 653 (750)
Towing mass.[1]	3.0L gasoline.	8 200 (3 720)
	2.0L gasoline.	6 613 (3 000)
Tongue weight (Certified).[2]	All vehicles.	330 (150)
Tongue weight (Design).	All vehicles.	771 (350)

[1] The towing mass and Gross Train Weight (GTW) can be increased for certain markets. Information can be found on the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label. See **402, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

[2] For every lb (kg) above 220 lbs (100 kg) added to the trailer's certified tongue weight, the same weight must be removed from the vehicle's payload. Make sure that the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the GTW, and the maximum rear axle weights are not exceeded. If required, remove weight from the vehicle to facilitate the increased tongue weight.

Make sure to never exceed the GVW, the GTW, or the front and rear axle weights. See **405, WEIGHTS**.

Note: *Include the trailer's tongue weight when calculating the GVW and rear axle weight.*

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the trailer's tongue weight. The combined weights must never exceed the GVW or the maximum weights for the front and rear axles.*

Note: *For every 3 281 feet (1 000 meters) increase in height above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.*

Note: *Make sure the legal requirements for the country in which the vehicle is traveling are observed.*

For further information, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer and quote the VIN. See **402, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOW HITCH RECEIVER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

The fitting of a tow hitch is required before towing. See **129, TOW HITCH**.

Note: *The tow hitch receiver is rated as Class IV.*

Note: *Make sure that safety chains are used and connected as shown.*

⚠WARNING

Do not loop a safety chain over the tow ball. The safety chain may slide off, preventing correct operation in the event that the trailer becomes disconnected. Failure to correctly secure a safety chain could result in serious injury or death.



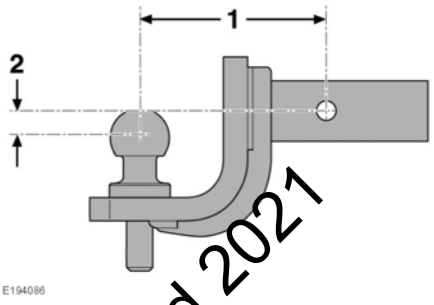
TOW HITCH

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

The fitting of a tow hitch is required for towing with the tow hitch receiver.

The following tow hitch dimensions must be adhered to:



1. The maximum recommended length is 6.5 in (165 mm).
2. The minimum recommended ball height is 1 in (25 mm).

If in any doubt about the fitment of a tow hitch, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

TOWING A TRAILER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Before towing a trailer, make sure both the vehicle and the trailer are being used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and any applicable legislation. See **128, TOWING WEIGHTS** and **405, WEIGHTS**.

Note: *A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is normal under high load towing conditions.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HITCH ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Hitch assist displays a rear camera image on the touchscreen, to aid in the process of connecting a trailer. Hitch assist overlays an approximation of the tow ball's position, and the intended steering direction.

NOTICE

The driver is responsible for calculating correct distances and maneuvering the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch. Failure to maneuver the vehicle accurately may result in damage to the vehicle and trailer.

Note: *The accuracy of hitch assist is affected by the height of the trailer's tow hitch compared to the vehicle's tow ball. The maximum height difference should be no more than 1.2 in (3 cm).*

To activate hitch assist:

1. Select Reverse (**R**). The touchscreen automatically displays a rear-view camera image.
2. Select **TOWING**.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. Maneuver the vehicle until it is in the required position.

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

The information in the following table should be used to confirm if a trailer or lighting board is compatible with the vehicle. The vehicle is unable to detect a trailer or lighting board that does not meet the specifications given.

Function	Minimum load	Maximum load
	Milliamps	Amps
Brake lights.	100	10
Turn signals.	50	5
All side marker lights combined.	n/a	10
Reverse lights.	n/a	5
Fog light.	n/a	5
Permanent battery feed.	n/a	15
Ignition feed.	n/a	15

Note: *Only use equipment that requires a 12-volt supply from the vehicle.*

Note: *Only attach appropriate electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket. Using inappropriate or sub-standard towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The trailer turn signal lamp flashes alongside the relevant turn signal lamp in the instrument panel when:

- An electrical connection is present between the vehicle and the trailer.
- The vehicle's turn signals are used.

If the trailer turn signal lamp does not flash, check the trailer's electrical connection. Take appropriate action to make sure the trailer's turn signals are functioning correctly.

An electric trailer brake module connector is located near the driver's position. The information in the following table should be used to confirm if an electric trailer brake module is compatible with the vehicle. If in doubt, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer.

Function	Maximum load
Permanent battery feed.	30 A
Brake signal.	100 mA
Electric brake connection to tow bar electrical socket.	30 A

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) automatically detects when sway is developing on a correctly attached trailer. When active, TSA gradually reduces the vehicle's speed to help regain control of the trailer.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA) LIMITATIONS

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate if:

- The trailer is jack-knifing.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

TSA performance may be reduced when traveling on slippery surfaces.

TRAILER CALIBRATION

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

The tow assist features do not operate until a trailer profile has been created, and the corresponding trailer is connected and calibrated. A trailer profile must be created before the trailer can be calibrated.

Note: *The trailer does not need to be connected to the vehicle to create a profile. The trailer must be connected to the vehicle in order to be calibrated.*

To create a trailer profile:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the driver side bar. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **TOWING & TRAILERS**.
3. Select **+**.
4. Select the trailer type from the available options.
5. Enter the trailer dimensions.

Follow the on-screen instructions to calibrate the trailer, if it is already connected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

The trailer calibration process may not perform accurately in low ambient light levels. Always attempt to calibrate a trailer in good ambient light levels. Failure to accurately carry out the calibration process may result in damage to the vehicle or trailer.



The **tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen when a trailer is connected. Select the appropriate trailer profile.

If the trailer has yet to be calibrated:

1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate trailer profile.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to calibrate the trailer.

TOW ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Note: *Tow assist only operates if the connected trailer has had a profile created and has been calibrated. See **131, TRAILER CALIBRATION**.*

Tow assist displays camera views of the rear or side of the vehicle, to assist the driver when reversing a trailer. Trajectory lines are overlaid onto the images, depicting the predicted path of the trailer. Different camera views can be selected via the touchscreen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Tow assist can be configured to use either the surround camera system or the rear camera system.



The **tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar when a trailer is connected. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

To activate tow assist:

1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate profile for the connected trailer.
3. Select Reverse (**R**).

NOTICE

The trajectory lines change color based on the angle of the trailer in relation to the vehicle. Red trajectory lines indicate that damage may occur to the vehicle or trailer if the steering is turned further in the same direction.

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched off before disconnecting a trailer.*

TOW ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The following may have an affect on tow assist performance:

- Varying ambient light conditions: If varying light conditions are experienced, the trajectory lines are removed from the touchscreen image.
- If a door, or the tailgate, is opened: In this event, the corresponding camera view is replaced with a black screen.
- If the camera wash feature is used: In this event, the rear camera view becomes unclear.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADVANCED TOW ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

Note: *Advanced tow assist only operates if the connected trailer has had a profile created and has been calibrated. See **131, TRAILER CALIBRATION**.*

Advanced tow assist displays camera views of the rear or side of the vehicle, to assist the driver when reversing a trailer. Trajectory lines are overlaid onto the images, depicting the predicted path of the trailer. Different camera views can be selected via the touchscreen. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Advanced tow assist also operates the steering wheel when the vehicle is reversing, and all conditions are met.

Note: *The vehicle's speed and brakes must be controlled by the driver.*

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and for estimating both the trailer and vehicle's distance from the obstacles, when maneuvering. Failure to do so can result in vehicle or trailer damage, serious injury, or death.



The **tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar when a trailer is connected. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

To enable advanced tow assist:

1. Touch the **tow assist** icon.
2. Select the appropriate profile for the connected trailer.



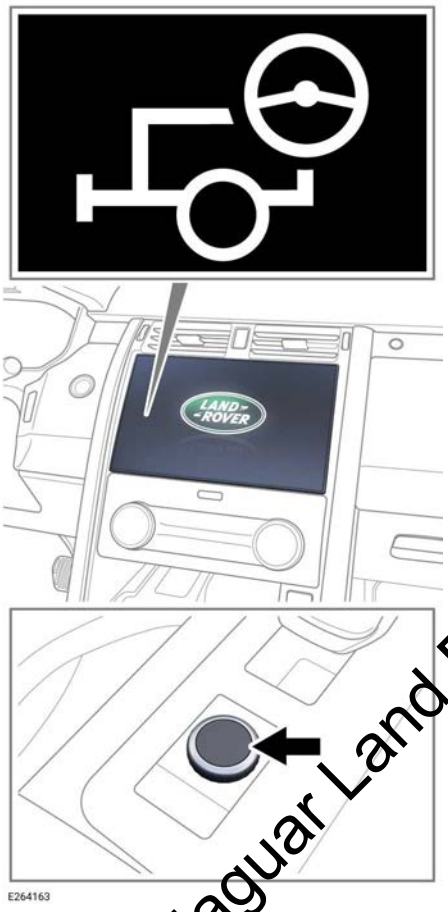
The **advanced tow assist** icon displays on the touchscreen passenger side bar once a trailer profile is selected.

Select Reverse (**R**).

To activate advanced tow assist:

1. Pull the rotary control upwards. An **advanced tow assist** icon illuminates on the rotary control.
2. Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select **START**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The **advanced tow assist** icon on the touchscreen now illuminates. The rotary control on the center console rises and can be used to control the path of the trailer when reversing.

When the required path has been set using the rotary control, use the accelerator and brake pedals to maneuver the trailer.

Note: *The driver can take control of the steering wheel if required. In this event, advanced tow assist is canceled.*

The trajectory lines change color as follows:

- Green lines indicate that the trailer is reversing in a straight line.
- Magenta lines indicate that the trailer is reversing at an angle.
- Red lines indicate that the trailer's reversing angle is too great. Red lines are accompanied by a warning message on the touchscreen.

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched off before disconnecting a trailer.*

ADVANCED TOW ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Advanced tow assist does not operate if:

- Any gear other than reverse is selected.
- The steering wheel is used to maneuver the vehicle.
- The tailgate is open or unlatched.
- Any of the doors are opened or unlatched.
- The rear camera becomes blocked.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is enabled.
- The rotary control is used for any other purpose while advanced tow assist is active.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h).

Advanced tow assist performance is adversely affected if non-approved towing equipment is used.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The touchscreen displays messages to inform the user of any conditions that have not been met in order for the system to operate. The touchscreen also displays messages regarding system faults or performance issues.

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before towing a trailer. See 127, TOWING SAFETY.

The following checks must be carried out before towing:

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible towing weights. See **128, TOWING WEIGHTS**.
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve an even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If possible, spread the load of any cargo between the vehicle's loadspace and the trailer. Loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Make sure not to exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Check that the tire pressures are correct for the current loading condition of the vehicle.
- Make sure that a suitable safety chain is used and correctly connected. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's guidelines. See **129, TOW HITCH RECEIVER**.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the trailer lights.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Starting the engine

STARTING SAFETY

⚠WARNING

Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

NOTICE

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. The catalytic converter may also be damaged due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if placed within a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.*

STARTING THE ENGINE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before starting the vehicle. See 136, STARTING SAFETY.

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Press the brake pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: *When starting the engine, the idle speed may rise. The rise in idle speed helps the engine reach its optimum operating temperature quickly, improving fuel efficiency.*

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

⚠WARNING

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Always make sure the vehicle is not left in a driveable condition, as serious injury or death may occur. See 140, DRIVER EXIT.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (**P**).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

⚠WARNING

When the vehicle is moving it is not advisable to switch off the engine. Driving with due care and attention remains the driver's responsibility. Always drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the instrument panel displays the message **Engine Stop button pressed**.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

   Note: *If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.*
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

ROLLING RESTART

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated by Selecting Neutral (**N**) and press the engine **START/STOP** button.

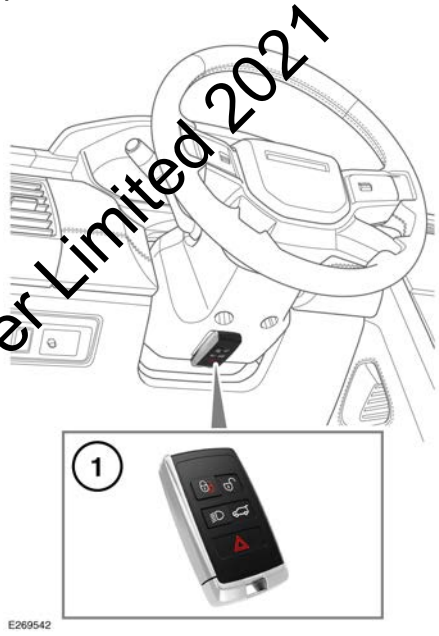
Note: *The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

ENGINE START BACKUP

The engine start backup feature is required to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The engine start backup feature can only be used when the instrument panel displays **Place Smart Key as shown, and press start button**.



Note: *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*

1. While holding the smart key in position, firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognised, or the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles

NOTICE

*Seek qualified assistance if the vehicle has been in a recent collision and the engine fails to start when the **START/STOP** button is pressed. Damage to the vehicle may have occurred.*

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **137, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Check the instrument panel for messages and any illuminated warning lamps. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **82, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **77, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **11, SMART KEY OPERATION**.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

Gasoline vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Firmly press the brake pedal.
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal, and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

ENGINE PRE-HEATER

NOTICE

The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze. Damage may be caused to the engine if the correct mixture of antifreeze is not present.

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below 14°F (-10°C) are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTO STOP/START

NOTICE

Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency. The system automatically activates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When **On demand hold** is not active and the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start. See **153, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)**.

Operation of the auto stop/start system is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

Note: *When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may also restart the engine before setting off.*

Under certain conditions, the auto stop/start system also switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving. See **140, AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE**.

TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop, drive forward with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected, and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

The following conditions inhibit an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately 28°F (-2°C).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 104°F (40°C).
- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached their optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 10 mph (16 km/h).
- A gearshift paddle has been used to select a gear.

The instrument panel displays an information lamp when the vehicle is stationary and the auto stop/start system is active, but operation is inhibited. See **89, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.

TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- A gearshift paddle is used to select a gear.

DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/ START



Touch the **vehicle controls** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar.

- Select **DRIVE**.
- Touch the **Engine Start/Stop** soft key.

Note: *The auto stop/start system is automatically deactivated if low range or Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected. The system is also deactivated if certain terrain response special programs are selected by the driver, or selected by the* ***AUTO*** *driving program.*

When the auto stop/start system is deactivated, the instrument panel momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start Off**. A status icon is also displayed. See **89, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

The instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available** if the icon is touched while the system is unable to operate.

Note: *The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

AUTO STOP ON THE MOVE

Vehicles with a 48v system are equipped with an auto stop on the move feature. The auto stop on the move feature switches off the engine while the vehicle is moving if:

- The vehicle is traveling at less than approximately 1 mph (2 km/h), and:
- The brake pedal is pressed.

When the brake pedal is released, the engine automatically restarts.

Operation of the auto stop on the move feature is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **87, AUTO STOP/ START (GREEN)**.

The auto stop on the move feature is deactivated if auto stop/start is deactivated. See **140, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.

DRIVER EXIT

⚠WARNING:

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Make sure the vehicle is not left in a driveable condition, as serious injury or death may occur.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle detects when a driver is not present. If this is the case, the system automatically switches off the vehicle's ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See **27, LOCK CONFIRMATION**.

The driver exit feature is only active when:

- The vehicle is stationary, and:
- The engine has been switched off by either the auto stop/start system or, if applicable, the hybrid system.

Non-hybrid vehicles

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if both the following conditions exist:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

48V system vehicles only

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if both the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off when all the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- All foot pedals are released.
- The driver's door is opened.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

⚠WARNING

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Selecting Park (P) also applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the ignition off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select P. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in serious injury in death.

NOTICE

*Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.*

NOTICE

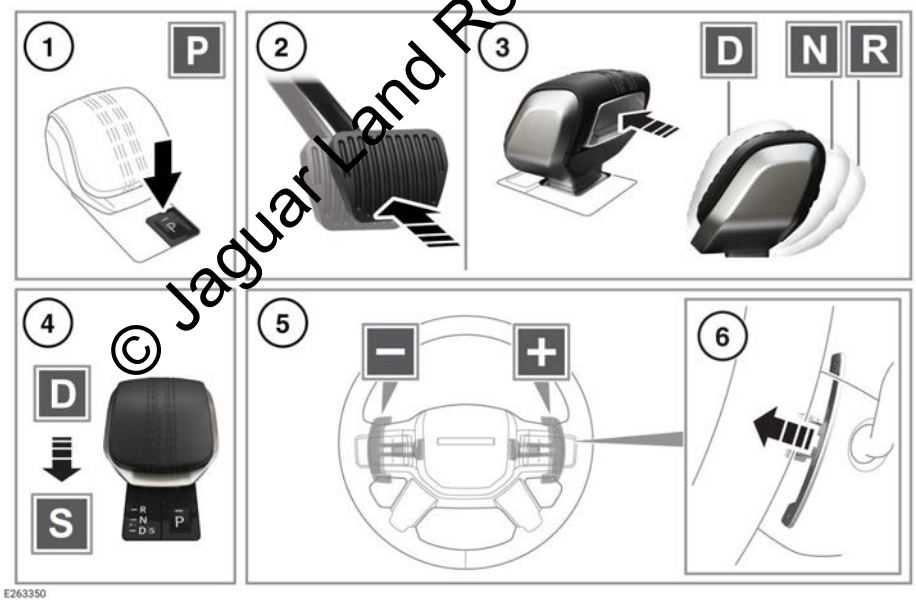
*Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.*

NOTICE

Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

NOTICE

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays the current gear selection status. The appropriate indicator lamp, at the base of the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

Note: *When the gear selector is released, it returns to the central position.*

Note: *If the driver's door is opened whilst the vehicle is stationary, with the transmission engaged in* ***R****,* ***D****, or* ***S****, then* ***P*** *is automatically selected.*

1. Press to select **P**. The **P** indicator lamp illuminates to confirm. Select **P** before switching the ignition off.

   Note: ***P*** *can be selected in any gear.*

   Note: ***P*** *cannot be selected by manually moving the gear selector.*

   Note: *If the ignition is switched off with the EPB released and* ***N*** *selected, the system waits for 10 minutes before automatically selecting* ***P****. The procedure allows for the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash and should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.*
2. When the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal before selecting **D**, **N**, or **R**.
3. With the brake pedal still applied, press the button on the gear selector to allow gear selector movement:
   - Forward to select **R**.
   - To the center position to select **N**.
   - Rearward to select **D**.

   Note: *The button must be pressed in order to make all gear selections.*
4. While in **D**, move the gear selector rearward to select **S**.

   Note: *Repeat this action to return to* ***D****.*
5. To select manual gear changes while in **S**, lightly pull the steering wheel left paddle for down-shifts, or lightly pull the right paddle for up-shifts. The instrument panel displays the manual gear selection status.
   The relevant gear selector indicator shows the status of the manual gear selection:
   - Continuous illumination confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognized and selected.
   - On or off flashing confirms the driver's gear change request has been recognized but not selected.
6. Gearshift paddles: Allow for manual gear selection while in **D** or **S**. To exit manual mode, pull and hold the right paddle for approximately 1 second. The transmission will return directly to the previous automatic operation in **D** or **S**.

Gearshift paddle

Gearshift paddle use can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required. A gearshift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **87, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**. If the gear selector remains in the **D** position, temporary use of the manual gear selection mode is held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering, or continuing to request gearshift changes via the steering wheel gearshift paddles.

Note: *If continued use of the gearshift paddles is required, select* ***S****.*

The driver can configure the gearshift paddles to be active in both **D** and **S**, or active in **S** only, via the touchscreen:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Vehicle** soft key.
4. Touch the **Convenience** soft key.
5. Touch the **Gear shift paddles** soft key.
6. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Gear shift paddles active in** to open the options menu.
7. Choose **Sport only** or **Drive and Sport**.
8. Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.



Settings icon.[1]

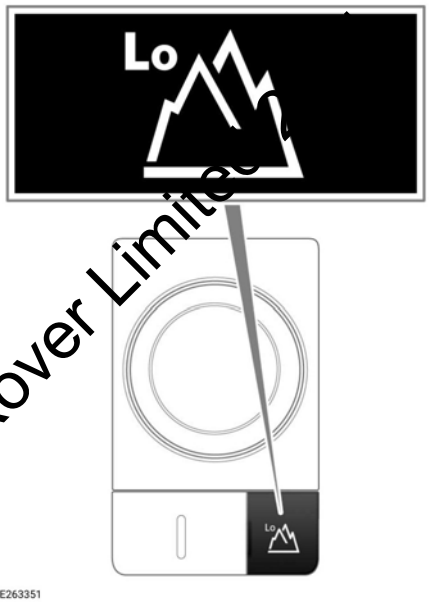


Exit icon.[2]

SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE

NOTICE

Do not change from high range to low range while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in damage to the vehicle.



The **Lo** button is used to alternate the engagement of the transfer case between low range and high range.

Note: *The **Lo** button only operates with the engine running.*

Note: *Low range should only be used in situations where low speed maneuvering is necessary, including more extreme off-road conditions. High range should be selected for normal road driving.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Press the **Lo** button, located on the center console, to engage the transfer case into low range. The button's LED indicator flashes during the change and then remains illuminated to confirm selection. The instrument panel briefly displays the **Low range selected** message. The instrument panel also illuminates the low range warning lamp. See **88, LOW RANGE (GREEN)**.

Press the **Lo** button again to engage the transfer case into high range. The button's LED indicator lamp flashes during the change and then extinguishes to confirm selection. The instrument panel briefly displays the **High range selected** message. The low range warning lamp also extinguishes.

The vehicle should be stationary, with the engine running, during a transfer case range change to low range.

Operate as follows:

1. Select Neutral (**N**).
2. Press the **Lo** button to engage the transfer case into high or low range, as required.

   Note: *If the **Lo** button is pressed when the vehicle's speed is too high, the instrument panel displays the maximum speed for the range change.*

   Note: *If the **Lo** button is pressed before **N** is selected, the instrument panel displays a warning message.*
3. When the range selection is confirmed, select Drive (**D**).

The procedure can also be used for changing from low range to high range with the vehicle traveling at a speed of less than 37 mph (60 km/h).

LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the warning message **Gearbox Fault**. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

NOTICE

The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is reduced and must take this into account when driving. Use of the steering wheel's paddle shifts is also disabled.

Some transmission faults may cause gear selector lock. In this event, the gear selector can be moved but it does not allow a gear request to be made until the ignition is switched off and on again. A flashing gear status in the instrument panel indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. This can be accompanied by the message **Reselect Gear to Maneuver**. Select Neutral (**N**) and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the vehicle is clear of people and obstacles before adjusting the suspension height.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, and the brake pedal released, if the suspension height is adjusted while the vehicle is stationary.

NOTICE

Take care when adjusting the suspension height if a trailer is attached to the vehicle.

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The electronic air suspension system raises or lowers the height of the vehicle, based on a number of conditions and driver selections.

The electronic air suspension system comprises a number of features, including:

- Normal height. See **148, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
- Off-road height. See **148, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT**.
- Extended mode. See **148, EXTENDED MODE**.
- Access height. See **149, ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Auto access height. See **149, AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Locked access height. See **150, LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT**.
- Rear height adjust. See **150, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.
- Adaptive dynamics. See **152, ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS**.

Instrument panel messages and indicator lamps on the touchscreen inform the driver of system status. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW** and **144, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Note: *Under certain circumstances, the electronic air suspension system may not perform a height change. See **152, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION LIMITATIONS**.*

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.



Touch the **vehicle controls** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar to access the electronic air suspension controls.

Select **RIDE HEIGHT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E266884

The **RIDE HEIGHT** screen displays the current height setting. Soft keys are displayed for other height options. The touchscreen displays messages and symbols to confirm the status of the electronic air suspension.

The touchscreen displays a status symbol when suspension height changes are being made. Press the **X** in the center of the status symbol to cancel the height change request.

Note: *Automatic height changes cannot be canceled.*

The rear suspension height can also be adjusted using buttons located in the loadspace, or by using the smart key. See **150, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST** and **151, OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY**.

Note: *The vehicle height may raise or lower automatically. For example, if the vehicle is traveling at high speed or a request is received from the terrain response system.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, vehicle height changes can be made after the vehicle's ignition is switched off. See* ***152, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION LIMITATIONS****.*

Note: *Under certain conditions, vehicle height changes can be made after the doors have been opened by pressing and holding the appropriate soft key.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NORMAL HEIGHT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Normal height should be used when driving on-road.

Vehicle height changes to and from normal height can be made manually via the touchscreen. See **146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.



The instrument panel displays a symbol when the suspension is moving to normal height.

When the height change is completed, the instrument panel momentarily displays the symbol.

OFF-ROAD HEIGHT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Off-road height raises the vehicle to provide greater ground clearance when driving off-road.



The instrument panel displays a symbol to confirm the vehicle is in off-road height.

Off-road height has two settings, as follows:

- The **Off-Road 1** setting raises the vehicle 1.5 inches (40 mm) above normal height. The **Off-Road 1** setting operates at speeds of up to 50 mph (80 km/h). The **Off-Road 1** setting can be selected at speeds of up to 44 mph (70 km/h).
- The **Off-Road 2** setting raises the vehicle 3 inches (75 mm) above normal height. The **Off-Road 2** setting operates at speeds of up to 30 mph (50 km/h). The **Off-Road 2** setting can be selected at speeds of up to 25 mph (40 km/h).

Off-road height is selected via the touchscreen. See **146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

When off-road height is selected, the touchscreen displays an **AUTO** soft key. Touch the **AUTO** soft key to switch **AUTO** mode on and off.

When **AUTO** mode is selected the vehicle automatically selects either the **Off-Road 1** or **Off-Road 2** height setting depending on the vehicle's speed.

When **AUTO** mode is switched off, the touchscreen displays **Off-Road 1** and **Off-Road 2** soft keys. Touch the appropriate soft key to manually select the required suspension height.

EXTENDED MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Extended mode is an automatic suspension height setting that raises the vehicle to assist maneuvering in the event that the vehicle is:

- Grounded in severe off-road conditions.
- Lowered onto an obstacle.
- Wading in deep water.
- Driving in narrow ruts.

The touchscreen automatically displays the **RIDE HEIGHT** screen when extended mode is activated. See **146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Note: *The touchscreen may not display the **RIDE HEIGHT** screen if it determines a higher priority screen should be displayed.*

Follow the instructions displayed on the touchscreen if additional suspension lift is required.

ACCESS HEIGHT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The vehicle can be lowered to allow easier access.



The instrument panel displays a symbol and messages to confirm the vehicle is in access height.

Access height is selected via the touchscreen. See **146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Access height can be requested while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If selected while moving, the suspension height does not lower until the vehicle's speed is reduced sufficiently. If the vehicle's speed isn't reduced sufficiently within 1 minute, the request is canceled.

Access height can also be selected up to a minute after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.:

The vehicle can be configured to enter access height automatically. See **149, AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT**.

The suspension automatically raises to normal height once the vehicle is driven. If required, the suspension can be locked in access height. See **150, LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT**.

AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The vehicle can be configured to enter access height automatically via the touchscreen. To enable the auto access feature:

1. Press the **settings** icon. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **ALL**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Convenience**.
5. Select **Vehicle access**.
6. Touch the **Auto access height** toggle.

The auto access feature lowers the vehicle by up to 0.8 inches (20 mm) when either:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The vehicle's ignition is switched off.
- The vehicle is stationary and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

  Note: *The vehicle does not lower if the second row center seat belt is unbuckled, but the second row outer seat belts remain buckled.*

The vehicle is lowered by a further 0.8 inches (20 mm) when a door is opened.

The vehicle returns to normal height if a door is not opened and the vehicle's speed reaches 25 mph (40 km/h).

Note: *The auto access feature operates more efficiently and smoothly with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied and the brake pedal fully released.*

AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT LIMITATIONS

The auto access feature is only available once every time the vehicle is stationary.

The auto access feature is only available for 90 seconds after the vehicle is stationary.

The auto access feature only operates if:

- The vehicle is in the normal suspension height setting. See **148, NORMAL HEIGHT**.
- The transmission is in high range. See **144, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.
- There are enough air reserves in the suspension system to return the vehicle back to its original height.
- One of the following terrain response driving programs is selected:
  - **AUTO**.
  - Comfort.
  - Grass gravel snow.

    See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The auto access feature does not operate if the vehicle is parked on excessive slopes or on a very uneven surface.

LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

Locked access height mode is useful when maneuvering the vehicle in confined areas, e.g., multi-storey parking lots. Locked access height mode is available at speeds of less than 22 mph (35 km/h).

To enter locked access height mode:

- Select access height. See **149, ACCESS HEIGHT**
- Touch the **lock** icon.

Touch the **lock** icon or **Access** soft key to unlock access height mode. Alternatively, raise the vehicle's speed to over 25 mph (40 km/h).

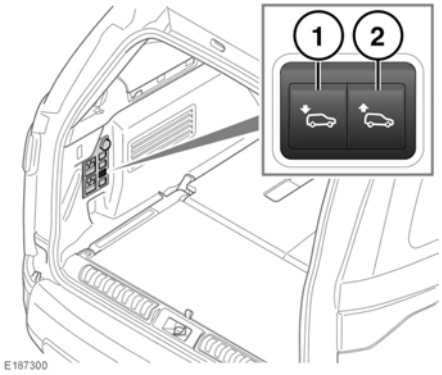
REAR HEIGHT ADJUST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The height of the rear suspension can be adjusted manually via the buttons located on the left side of the loadspace. The rear height adjust feature is useful when loading or unloading the vehicle, or when connecting or disconnecting a trailer, etc.



To manually lower the rear suspension, first unlock the vehicle and open the tailgate. Then:

1. Press and hold to lower the rear of the vehicle.
2. Press and hold to raise the rear of the vehicle.

Press and hold both buttons to return the vehicle to the normal suspension height setting.

The rear height adjust feature operates for a short period of time with the vehicle's ignition switched off. Switch the vehicle's ignition on if the feature stops operating. See **137, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.

The rear height adjust feature can also be operated via the smart key. See **151, OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY**.

Note: *The amount of rear height adjustment is dependent on the current suspension height setting, and whether any doors are open.*

Note: *The front of the vehicle may also lower in order to maintain the correct headlight alignment.*

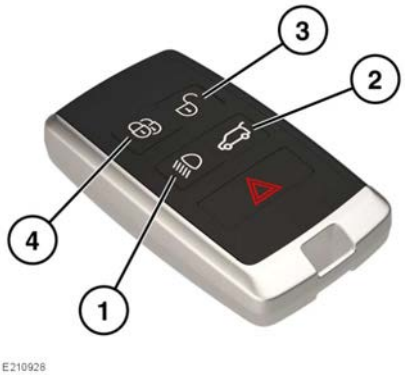
Note: *There may be a slight delay between pressing a button and the suspension system responding to the request.*

OPERATING REAR HEIGHT ADJUST WITH THE SMART KEY

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before adjusting the electronic air suspension. See 146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION SAFETY.

The rear height adjust feature allows the rear of the vehicle to be manually raised and lowered. See **150, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.



To adjust the rear suspension height via the smart key:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Safely stop the vehicle.
2. Press the hazard warning lights button on the dashboard. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the tailgate button (**2**) to lower the vehicle.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the unlock button (**3**) to raise the vehicle.
5. Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the lock button (**4**) to return the vehicle to the normal height setting.

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors the current road conditions and driving style, and automatically adjusts the suspension settings accordingly. Adaptive dynamics also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

The instrument panel displays a message, and may also illuminate the general or critical warning lamps, if adaptive dynamics develops a system fault. See **81, OVERVIEW**.

In the event of a system fault, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION LIMITATIONS

The electronic air suspension system:

- Does not raise the vehicle if there are insufficient air reserves in the system. Insufficient air reserves may occur due to frequent height adjustments within a short period of time. Run the engine without making further suspension height requests to replenish the air in the system.
- May not operate if the engine is not running.
- Operates without the engine running if:
  - The auto stop/start system switches off the engine.
  - A request to lower the suspension is made within one minute of the vehicle's ignition being switched off.
  - A height change is canceled.
  - The rear height adjust feature is operating.
- Stops operating shortly after a door is opened. If the door is closed within 90 seconds, operation resumes.
- Only lowers the vehicle when a door is open if sufficient air reserves are available to return it to its original height.
- May not lower the vehicle to its lowest position while a door is open.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any system or performance issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)

The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) on this vehicle does not create a pulsing sensation under heavy braking, unlike previous systems.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to follow the guidance given could affect vehicle safety, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible. Seek qualified assistance.

⚠WARNING

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance.

⚠WARNING

Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency.

⚠WARNING

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

⚠WARNING

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency.

⚠WARNING

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

⚠WARNING

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts the operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

⚠WARNING

Repeated or prolonged heavy braking can cause the brakes and the brake fluid to overheat, resulting in reduced braking efficiency and brake failure.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive if the instrument panel displays the Brakes Overheating message. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the brakes to cool. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with overheated brakes can cause increased braking distance or brake failure.

The red brake warning lamp and a continuous chime accompanies the **Brakes Overheating** message. The chime ceases when the vehicle is stationary. See **83, BRAKE (RED)** and **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brake pedal, allowing wheel rotation. Re-apply the brake pedal to allow the ABS to gain control.

Note: *The vehicle needs to be in Neutral (**N**) or an appropriate gear to descend the slope. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) must not be applied.*

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that the EBA system helps to bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

The amber brake warning lamp indicates an EBA system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

The Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that the EBD system helps to maintain maximum braking efficiency and stability.

If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, the EBD system reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, the EBD system increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

The red brake warning lamp indicates an EBD system fault and the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

⚠WARNING

Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp is illuminated or the EPB warning lamp is flashing. Seek qualified assistance urgently. A faulty EPB system can lead to personal injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface. Operating the EPB on wet or loose surfaces may lead to damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

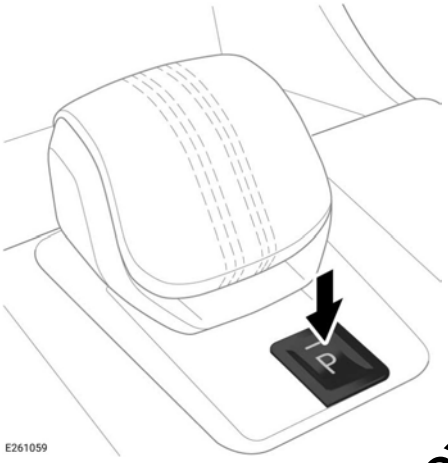
⚠WARNING

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the braking system.



The EPB is integrated with the Park (P) button located on the center console.

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

When the **P** button is pressed, the transmission engages Park (**P**) and the EPB applies to help secure the vehicle.

Note: *The EPB may be applied automatically by other vehicle functions.*

When stationary, with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in a forward or reverse gear, press the accelerator pedal gradually to release the EPB. The result is that the vehicle can be driven away smoothly. The driver's door must be closed or the driver's seat belt fastened to allow the EPB to release.

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h).

Note: *The driver may wish to leave the vehicle secured by using transmission Park (**P**) only, e.g. in very cold environments.*

To deactivate automatic operation of the EPB when the vehicle's ignition is switched off, operate as follows:

1. Press the **P** button once to engage transmission Park (**P**) and apply the EPB.
2. Press the brake pedal and simultaneously press the **P** button for 1 second. The EPB releases and transmission Park (**P**) remains engaged.
3. Check that the vehicle is secured by transmission Park (**P**).

If an EPB fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The red EPB warning lamp also flashes. See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.

Emergency brake function

In an emergency, press and hold the **P** button to apply the EPB and give a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be traveling at more than 2 mph (3 km/h), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The brake warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds, and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The stop lights illuminate. Release the **P** button, or press the accelerator pedal, to release the EPB.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Driver exit EPB application

To protect against unintentional vehicle movement, the EPB automatically applies when the driver is detected to be exiting the vehicle. The EPB is applied when Drive (**D**), Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**), or Sport (**S**) is selected and all of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The brake pedal is released.

Note: *If the driver exit EPB application feature is triggered while the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled, the seatbelt must be buckled to allow drive-away release.*

Note: *The vehicle may move briefly before the EPB is applied.*

Note: *On a steep slope, the EPB does not apply if significant vehicle speed is reached as the brake pedal is released.*

Note: *If the EPB is released and the driver exit conditions are still met, the EPB automatically re-applies after a short period of time.*

To exit the vehicle with the EPB released and the transmission in **N**, operate as follows:

1. With the vehicle's ignition switched on, press the **P** button to engage transmission Park (**P**) and apply the EPB.
2. Press the brake pedal and simultaneously press the **P** button for 1 second. The EPB releases and transmission Park (**P**) remains engaged.
3. With the brake pedal pressed, select **N**.
4. Switch the vehicle's ignition off.
5. Open the driver's door and exit the vehicle.

BRAKE HOLD

⚠WARNING

The brake hold functions act on all four wheels. Under the specified conditions, the brake hold functions apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) automatically on the rear wheels only. On steep or slippery slopes, especially when facing downhill, applying the EPB may cause the vehicle to skid. Re-apply the brake pedal to secure the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the vehicle it is recommended to disable all brake hold functions when using an automated car wash that propels the vehicle. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The brake hold functions maintain the vehicle in a standstill position without the brake pedal having to be pressed continuously.



When a brake hold function is active, the instrument panel illuminates the brake hold lamp.

The brake hold functions operate in Reverse (**R**), Neutral (**N**), Drive (**D**) and Sport (**S**). Brake hold maintains hydraulic brake pressure in the braking system until the accelerator pedal is applied.

The engine may auto stop while the brake hold function is active. When driving away, there is a slight delay after the accelerator is pressed, while the engine restarts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The brake hold functions apply the EPB and then deactivate if:

- The brake hold function has been active for more than 5 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled while a brake hold function is active.
- The driver's door is opened while a brake hold function is active.

The brake hold functions are unavailable if:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled or the driver's door is opened.
- If Park (**P**) is selected.
- The EPB is applied. See **154, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)**.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is active.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active and the vehicle is being driven downhill.
- Adaptive cruise control queue assist is active.
- The vehicle's engine is switched off manually.

The brake hold functions do not operate if there is a fault with:

- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).
- The braking system.
- The EPB system.

Auto hold

The auto hold function applies the brakes automatically to prevent the vehicle rolling back downhill. The auto hold function also holds the vehicle on uphill or downhill slopes whenever it is brought to a stop using the brake pedal.

The auto hold function is unavailable if the vehicle is engaged in **N** or **P**.



To disable or re-enable auto hold, touch the **vehicle controls** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **219, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

1. Select **DRIVE**.
2. Touch the **Autohold** soft key.

Note: *To disable the auto hold function while it is holding the vehicle on the brakes, press the brake pedal and touch the* ***Autohold*** *soft key.*

On demand hold

To activate on demand hold, the vehicle must be at a standstill and the driver must give the brake pedal a quick firm press. On demand can be activated in any gear except P.

On demand hold operates in **R**, **N**, **D** and and maintains hydraulic brake pressure in the braking system until the accelerator pedal is applied.

Note: *On demand hold is still available when auto hold has been disabled via the touchscreen.*

HILL START ASSIST

When pulling away uphill, hill start assist briefly holds the vehicle after the brake pedal is released, to allow time for the driver to press the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to pull away without rolling backward.

Hill start assist is not available if there is a Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) fault. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

⚠WARNING

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should be driven with due care and attention at all times. Always drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to do so can potentially result in a loss of control of the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

The vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance in extremely low temperatures. In these conditions, drive with extra caution.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) helps maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g., during unstable driving conditions such as understeer and oversteer. If required, DSC controls the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels.

Note: *Noise from the braking system may be heard during DSC operation.*

DSC may also activate if wheel spin is detected, to help improve the vehicle's acceleration performance.

DSC automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. DSC can be switched off via the touchscreen. See **158, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

DCS works in conjunction with the terrain response system. When operational, the terrain response system automatically adjusts DSC to suit the current driving program selection. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The amber DSC lamp flashes in the instrument panel when DSC is active. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

The amber DSC lamp illuminates permanently if the system develops a fault. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if the fault persists.

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

The vehicle's stability and safety may be reduced by inappropriately switching Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off. Switching DSC off could result in a loss of control of the vehicle, potentially leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



To switch DSC off, first touch the **vehicle controls** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar.

Select **DRIVE**.

To switch DSC off, touch the **Dynamic Stability Control OFF** soft key.



The touchscreen displays an amber **DSC OFF** icon to confirm DSC has been switched off. A tone also sounds.

Note: *Switching DSC off reduces the level of traction and stability control intervention. An increase in wheel spin and a reduction in the vehicle's stability may be experienced.*

Note: *In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that DSC is not switched off.*

Note: *DSC cannot be switched off if the comfort, **ECO**, or **AUTO** terrain response driving programs are selected. See **182, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.*

Note: *DSC cannot be switched off if a driver assistance feature is active.*

Note: *Make sure DSC is switched back on at the earliest opportunity. See **159, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON**.*

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.



The touchscreen displays an amber **DSC OFF** icon if Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) has been switched off.

Touch the **DSC OFF** icon to switch DSC on. The **DSC OFF** icon extinguishes to confirm that DSC has been switched on.

Note: *DSC automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

ACTIVE REAR LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) SAFETY.

The active rear locking differential improves traction on uneven surfaces.

NOTICE

Make sure the following guidance is followed, to avoid causing damage to the active rear locking differential.

During the vehicle's first 1 000 miles (1 600 km):

- Avoid fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Do not exceed a vehicle speed of more than 120 mph (190 km/h).

  Note: *Always observe the national speed limits for the country in which the vehicle is traveling.*
- Avoid prolonged periods of driving at speeds in excess of 100 mph (160 km/h).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD)

The All Wheel Drive (AWD) system enhances the vehicle's traction and stability on uneven and slippery roads, and in adverse conditions.

The AWD system automatically varies the status between AWD and Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) to suit the current driving style and prevailing conditions. The status can viewed via the 4x4i feature. See **210, 4X4i OVERVIEW**.

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault is detected with the AWD system. Reduced vehicle performance may also be experienced. In this event, the vehicle can still be driven, but with extra care. If the fault persists, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW

Terrain response comprises a number of different driving programs that can be selected to suit the current terrain, driving conditions, or driving style.

Each driving program alters various vehicle settings, including suspension height, engine speed, and the amount of steering effort required.

The following driving programs are available:



See **162, COMFORT**.



See **162, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW**.



See **163, MUD RUTS**.



See **163, SAND**.



See **163, ECO**.



See **164, ROCK CRAWL**.



See **164, WADE**.



See **164, CONFIGURABLE TR**.



See **165, AUTO**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, either the comfort or **AUTO** driving program is automatically selected when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. An alternative driving program can be selected via the rotary control on the center console. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

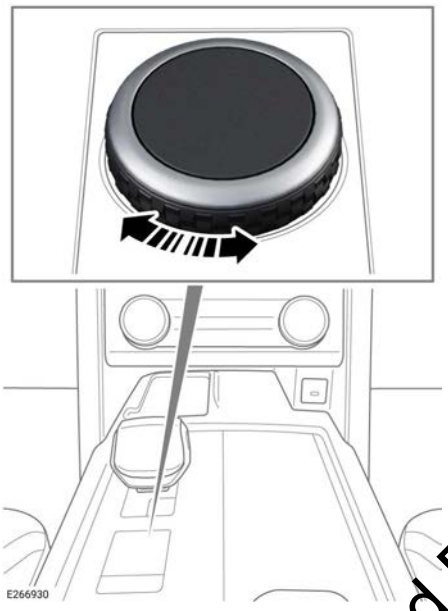
To view additional information on the selected driving program:

1. Touch the **apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **4x4i**.
3. Select **TR INFO**.

Terrain response works in conjunction with the Hill Descent Control (HDC) and Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) systems to further enhance the vehicle's capabilities. See **165, DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION



Rotate the control to select the desired driving program.

Note: *A different procedure is required to select the* ***AUTO*** *driving program. See* ***165, AUTO****.*

The touchscreen displays a confirmation message and the appropriate icon for the selected driving program. The instrument panel also displays the same icon.

Note: *The driving program icon flashes if a program change is requested, but the change is inhibited due to dynamic conditions. The selection takes place one the activation conditions have been met.*

⚠WARNING

Do not become distracted by the terrain response system while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Make sure the correct driving program for the prevailing conditions is selected. Failure to select the correct driving program could result in vehicle damage.

COMFORT

Select the comfort driving program when driving on-road and on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles and dry wooden planks.

Select the comfort driving program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

Note: *Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.*

GRASS GRAVEL SNOW

Select the grass gravel snow driving program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose or slippery material.

In the event that traction control systems restrict the vehicle's progress, switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). Switch DSC on again once the difficulty is overcome. See **158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *It is recommended that the sand driving program is selected for deep snow or gravel. See* ***163, SAND****.*

MUD RUTS



Select the mud ruts driving program when driving on terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven.

Vehicle performance is further enhanced if low range is also selected. See **144, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

Note: *In some instances, an instrument panel message may prompt the driver to select low range.*

The suspension height raises automatically if the mud ruts driving program and low range are both selected.

SAND



Select the sand driving program when driving on terrain that is predominantly soft, for example, dry sand, deep gravel, or deep unpacked snow.

⚠WARNING

Do not select the sand driving program when driving on packed snow or ice. Selecting the sand driving program in these circumstances could result in reduced vehicle stability and braking performance, potentially leading to personal injury and vehicle damage.

Vehicle performance is further enhanced if low range is also selected. See **144, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

In the event that automatic braking systems restrict the vehicle's progress, switch off Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW**.

Note: *It is recommended that the mud ruts driving program is selected if conditions become wet and deep enough to cause the wheels to sink. See* ***163, MUD RUTS****.*

ECO



The **ECO** driving program adjusts various vehicle systems and features in order to increase fuel economy.

The **ECO** driving program can be used in conjunction with the **ECO DATA** feature. The **ECO DATA** feature comprises a number of touchscreen displays designed to encourage a more efficient driving style. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

When selected, the **ECO** driving program:

- Switches off the heated or climate seats.
- Switches off the heated steering wheel.
- Sets the auto blower speed to low.
- May reduce the audio volume.

In addition:

- The heated windshield does not automatically switch on when the engine is started, if configured to do so. See **257, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
- The performance of the climate system may be affected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The **ECO DATA** feature monitors, displays, and records the driver's manual inputs on the touchscreen. Automatic inputs, e.g., adaptive cruise control acceleration, are not monitored, displayed, or recorded. Items not being monitored or recorded are grayed out.

Note: *The **ECO DATA** feature only begins recording data after the vehicle has traveled at least 1 mile (1 km).*

ROCK CRAWL



Select the rock crawl driving program for low speed control on extreme terrain.

Use the rock crawl driving program when traversing uneven rocky terrain, including inclines and declines.

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in low range before selecting the rock crawl driving program. The instrument panel displays a message if rock crawl is selected when the transmission is in high range. Follow the on-screen instructions to select low range. See **144, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.*

The suspension height raises automatically if the rock crawl driving program and low range are both selected.

WADE



Select the wade driving program when driving through deep water. When selected, the **WADE AID** feature becomes active. See **213, WADE SENSING**.

The suspension height raises to the off-road height when the wade driving program is selected. The suspension height lowers back to normal height if the vehicle's speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

⚠WARNING

Follow the guidance given on the touchscreen to make sure the system limitations are not exceeded. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury or death. See 212, WADE SENSING SAFETY.

CONFIGURABLE TR



The configurable terrain response feature allows the user to create a unique off-road terrain response profile.

To create a profile:

1. Select the **CONFIGURABLE TR** driving program via the rotary control on the center console. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to create, save, or edit a profile.

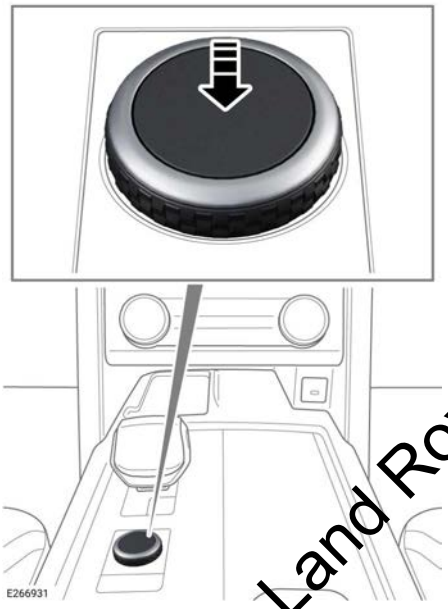
Up to four profiles can be created.

A unique terrain response profile can be selected in the same way as a standard terrain response driving program. The last used profile is automatically selected. A pop-up menu allows the user to select an alternative profile, or to edit the current profile.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTO

The **AUTO** terrain response setting automatically selects the most appropriate driving program for the prevailing conditions.



To select the **AUTO** terrain response setting, press the rotary control down until it sits flush with the center console. An **AUTO** icon illuminates on the rotary control to confirm the **AUTO** setting has been selected.

The instrument panel also displays a message to confirm the **AUTO** setting has been selected.

Note: *The **ECO**, wade, and configurable terrain response driving programs are not selected by the **AUTO** terrain response setting.*

Note: *The performance of the **AUTO** terrain response setting is limited if a trailer is connected to the vehicle.*

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

The terrain response driving programs automatically enable Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). If required, DSC can be manually disabled. See **158, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

Note: *DSC cannot be disabled if the **AUTO** terrain response setting is selected.*

Some terrain response driving programs automatically select Hill Descent Control (HDC). If required, HDC can be manually deselected. See **167, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

The instrument panel displays the DSC and HDC status.

TERRAIN RESPONSE LIMITATIONS

If the terrain response system develops a system fault:

- The instrument panel displays a warning message.
- The comfort driving program is automatically selected.
- All other driving program icons gray out and are unavailable for selection.

The instrument panel displays a message if the fault was temporary and has since passed. In this instance, the comfort driving program remains active, but the other driving programs become available for selection.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel also displays a message if the fault is permanent. Follow the on-screen guidance and contact a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

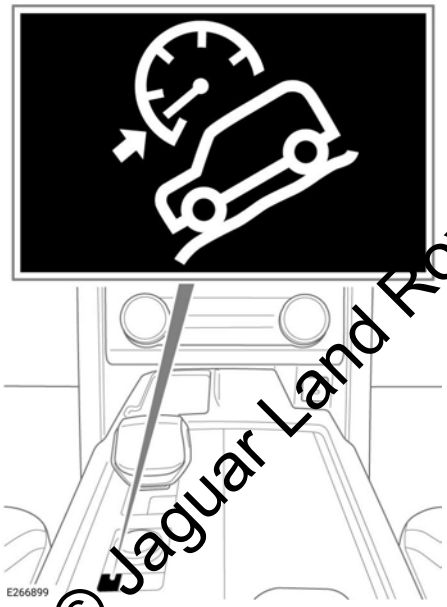
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)

Hill Descent Control (HDC) restricts the vehicle's speed to a set limit when traveling downhill.

⚠WARNING

Do not attempt a steep descent if HDC is inoperative or warning messages are displayed. Doing so could lead to loss of vehicle control, resulting in vehicle damage, personal injury, or death.



The HDC button is located on the center console. The HDC button also controls operation of the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system. See **199, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW**.

The button operates as follows:

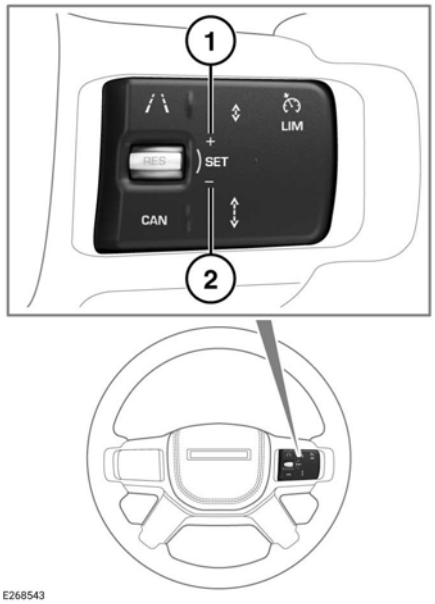
- A first press of the button enables the HDC system.
- A second press of the button disables the HDC system, and enables ATPC.
- A third press of the button disables ATPC.

The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and illuminates the HDC information lamp to confirm HDC has been selected. See **88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

Note: *HDC is automatically selected by some terrain response driving programs.*

HDC remains selected for up to 6 hours after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

Press the HDC button a second time to deselect HDC. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and extinguishes the HDC information lamp. If HDC is deselected while it is active, operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to increase.



©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

To adjust the vehicle's rate of descent:

1. Press and release the **SET+** button to increase the vehicle's speed in increments of 0.6 mph (1 km/h). Press and hold the **SET+** button for larger increases, up to the maximum permissible speed.
2. Press and release the **–** button to decrease the vehicle's speed in increments of 0.6 mph (1 km/h). Press and hold the **-** button for larger decreases, down to the minimum permissible speed.

The instrument panel displays the current set speed and the range of set speeds available.

Note: *The maximum and minimum permissible speeds are dependent on the gear selection.*

Note: *The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Using the **SET+** button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.*

Note: *A pulsation may be felt through the brake pedal if the brakes are used when HDC is active. HDC operation resumes when the brake pedal is released.*

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) LIMITATIONS

Hill Descent Control (HDC) does not operate when Park (**P**) is selected.

HDC operation is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 mph (50 km/h). In this instance, the instrument panel display turns gray and warning messages are displayed. The HDC information lamp also flashes.

HDC operation is disabled if the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h). The instrument panel displays a message and extinguishes the HDC information lamp.

If a fault is detected while HDC is active:

- HDC operation gradually fades out.
- The instrument panel displays a warning message.
- The HDC information lamp flashes.

Contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible if an HDC fault occurs.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

Gradient Release Control (GRC) improves the vehicle's ability to smoothly pull away from a standstill when on an incline or decline. GRC achieves this by automatically controlling brake operation once the brake pedal is released. No driver intervention is required.

GRC operates when forward or reverse gears are selected.

GRC also operates if the brakes are applied while Hill Descent Control (HDC) is active. See **167, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

GRC does not operate if the terrain response sand driving program is selected. See **163, SAND**.

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the instrument panel displays a warning message, indicating that the HDC system is temporarily unavailable. HDC operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the instrument panel warning message extinguishes and HDC operation resumes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Speed limiter

SPEED LIMITER SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a speed limiter. Failure to use the speed limiter safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Speed limiters are driving aids only. Always drive with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognized by the speed limiter systems. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

⚠WARNING

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill slope, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.

Note: *Speed limiters are convenience features only. Speed limiters do not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal road speed limit.*

SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 170, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.

Two types of speed limiter are available:

- Speed limiter.
- Adaptive speed limiter.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed. When a maximum speed limit is set, the vehicle responds normally until the set speed is reached. At this point, the vehicle stops accelerating.

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation system to restrict the maximum vehicle speed. The maximum speed is set based on the information received from both of these systems. If the system cannot determine a valid maximum speed, the last known detected speed limit is used.

To activate the speed limiter, see **171, SPEED LIMITER**.

To activate the adaptive speed limiter, see **172, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER**.

Press and hold the **CAN** button on the steering wheel to switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive speed limiter.

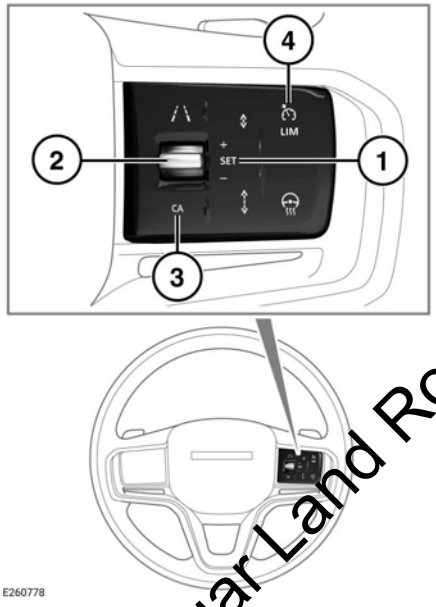
Note: *The speed limiter is not available when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SPEED LIMITER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 170, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.



1. Speed control rocker switch: Push the rocker switch upward to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downward to select **SET-**.
2. Push the speed control rocker switch inwards to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.
4. **LIM** button.

Press the **LIM** button to toggle between speed limiter and cruise control.



The LIM information lamp is displayed in the instrument panel when the speed limiter is active.

The speed limiter does not operate until activated.

To activate the speed limiter, push the rocker switch upward to the **SET+** position. The vehicle's speed is now limited to the speed it was traveling at when the switch was pressed. If the vehicle is stationary when **SET+** is selected, the system sets the speed limit to 10 mph (16 km/h).

Push the rocker switch upward and hold in the **SET+** position to increase the speed limiter's set speed in 5 mph (10 km/h) steps. Push the rocker switch briefly upward to the **SET+** position to increase the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Push and hold the rocker switch downward to the **SET-** position to reduce the speed limiter's set speed in 5 mph (10 km/h) steps. Push the rocker briefly to the **SET-** position to lower the speed limiter's set speed by 1 mph (2 km/h).

Push the **CAN** button to suspend speed limiter operation. Select either the **RES** or the **SET+** position to resume speed limiter operation.

Note: *In speed limiter mode, pushing the rocker inwards to the **RES** position activates the system at the previously used set speed. In adaptive speed limiter mode, pushing the rocker inwards to the **RES** position sets the speed limiter to the traffic sign recognition system's detected speed limit.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Pushing the rocker to the **SET+** position limits the vehicle's speed to the speed it is traveling at when the switch is moved.

The speed limiter's set speed can be overridden if a higher level of acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the speed limiter's set speed, any speed limitations are reapplied.

SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

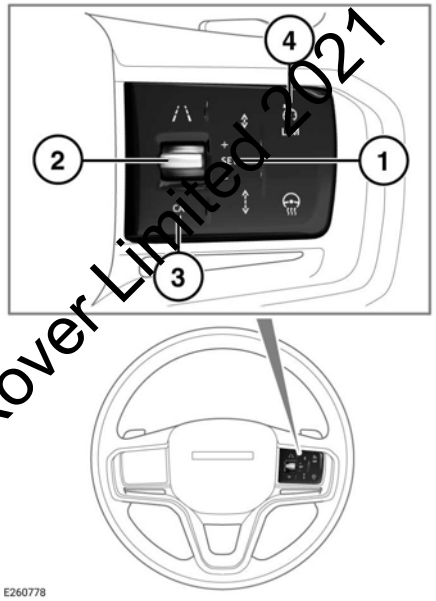
The driver may notice the effects of the speed limiter if the vehicle's speed is close to the set speed limit.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 170, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.



1. Speed control rocker switch: Push the rocker switch upward to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downward to select **SET-**.
2. Push the speed control rocker switch inwards to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.
4. **LIM** button.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Press the **LIM** button to toggle between adaptive speed limiter and cruise control. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the speed limiter or the adaptive speed limiter information lamp. See **88, SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)** and **87, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREEN)**.



If the speed limiter information lamp is displayed, press and hold the **CAN** button. The adaptive speed limiter information lamp replaces the speed limiter information lamp to confirm that the adaptive speed limiter has been selected.

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate until activated. Push the set speed rocker switch upward (**SET+**) or inward (**RES**) to activate the adaptive speed limiter. The Head-Up Display (HUD) and instrument panel display the detected speed limits as icons.

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit lower than the current vehicle speed, it automatically slows the vehicle to meet the speed limit.

If the system detects a speed limit higher than the current vehicle speed, it allows the driver to accelerate up to the speed limit.

Note: *Adaptive speed limiter only activates if the vehicle's speed is less than 20 mph (30 km/h) over the set speed. If the vehicle's speed is 20 mph (30 km/h) above the set speed, the instrument panel displays a warning message and the system does not activate.*

Press the **CAN** button to suspend adaptive speed limiter operation. Press the speed control rocker switch inward (**RES**) or upward (**SET+**) to resume adaptive speed limiter operation.

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the adaptive speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit, any speed limitations are reapplied.

The system's detected speed limit can be adjusted, if required, to control the vehicle's speed at just above or below the detected speed limit. To adjust the detected speed limit:

1. Push the speed rocker control upward (**SET+**) to raise the maximum vehicle speed 1 mph (2 km/h) above the detected speed limit. The maximum increase available is 6 mph (10 km/h) above the detected speed limit. Push and hold the speed rocker control (**SET+**) to raise the maximum vehicle speed in larger increments above the detected speed limit.
2. Push the speed rocker control downward (**SET-**) to reduce the maximum vehicle speed 1 mph (2 km/h) below the detected speed limit. The maximum decrease available is 6 mph (10 km/h) below the detected speed limit. Push and hold the speed rocker control downward (**SET-**) to reduce the maximum vehicle speed in larger increments below the detected speed limit.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Any adjustments to the system's detected speed limit are lost if the speed limiter is deactivated, or if the vehicle's ignition is switched off.*

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER LIMITATIONS

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is unavailable. If the adaptive speed limiter is unavailable the system reverts to standard speed limiter operation using the last detected speed limit. See **170, SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW**.

The adaptive speed limiter:

- Does not apply speed limits below 10 mph (16 km/h). For detected speed limits below 10 mph (16 km/h), the system sets a speed limit of 10 mph (16 km/h).
- May allow vehicle speed to increase in certain conditions, e.g., when traveling downhill. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 2 mph (3.5 km/h) above the detected speed limit, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 5 mph (7 km/h) above the detected speed limit for 4 seconds, a chime also sounds.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation system. Always make sure the navigation system is operating correctly and is using the latest software.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using cruise control. Failure to use cruise control safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions. Driving at unsafe speeds increases the risk of an accident.

⚠WARNING

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill slope, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set cruising speed may infringe on local laws.

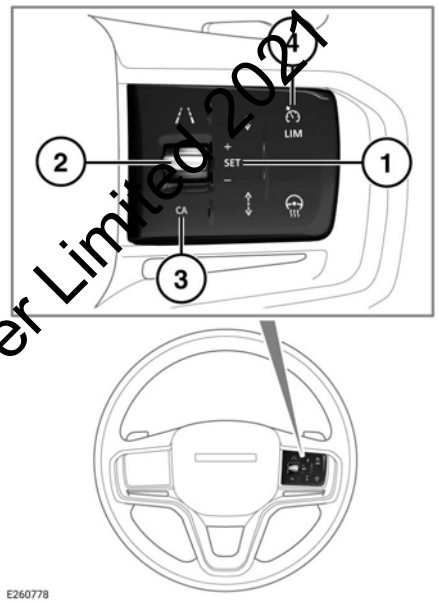
⚠WARNING

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained. For example, cruise control should not be used on roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery, or unpaved.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 175, CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.



Cruise control allows the vehicle to automatically maintain a set vehicle speed. Controls mounted on the steering wheel are used to operate the system. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by using the brake or accelerator pedals.

1. Speed control rocker switch: Push the rocker switch upward to select **SET+**. Push the rocker switch downward to select **SET-**.
2. Press the speed control rocker switch to select **RES**.
3. **CAN** button.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. LIM button.

Press the **LIM** button (**4**) on the steering wheel to toggle between cruise control, speed limiter or adaptive speed limiter. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the cruise control or the speed limiter information lamp. See **171, SPEED LIMITER**.

While driving at the desired speed, push the speed control rocker switch (**1**) upward to the **SET+** position to activate cruise control. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that the system is operational. See **87, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.



The cruise control icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates green to confirm cruise control is operational.

Note: *Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.*

To increase the set speed, press the speed control rocker control upward to the **SET+** position. A single brief push of the rocker raises the vehicle's speed by 1 mph (2 km/h). A sustained push-and-hold increases vehicle speed by 5 mph (10 km/h). Alternatively, press the accelerator pedal to increase the set speed. When the new desired speed is reached, push the rocker control upward to the **SET+** position.

Note: *Cruise control cancels if the accelerator pedal is pressed to override the system for more than 1 minute.*

Push the speed control rocker control downward briefly to the **SET-** position to reduce the set speed. A single press of the switch reduces the vehicle's speed by 1 mph (2 km/h). Push and hold the speed control rocker control to the **SET-** position to reduce the set speed in 5 mph (10 km/h) increments.

Press the speed control rocker to the **RES** position to resume cruise control operation if it has been cancelled e.g., by use of the brake pedal. The set speed is retained in the system's memory until the ignition is switched off.

⚠WARNING

The RES switch should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch inadvertently may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, vehicle damage, or personal injury.

Press the **CAN** button to cancel the cruise control.

The cruise control system can be engaged from stationary:

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Select **D** (Drive) or **S** (Sport) using the gear selector.
3. If the set speed has already been set, push the speed control rocker control inward to the **RES** position to recall the set speed.
4. If the set speed has not already been set, press the speed control rocker upward to the **SET+** position and release to initially select 16 km/h (10 mph).
5. The desired set speed is adjusted with the set speed rocker control upwards **SET+** or downwards **SET-**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. Release the brake pedal. The vehicle accelerates to the selected set speed.

CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Cruise control cannot be set when the vehicle is traveling at speeds below 10 mph (16 km/h).

Cruise control does not operate when:

- The speed limiter or adaptive speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously. Press the **LIM** button (**4**) to switch between cruise control and the speed limiter. See **175, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is activated.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is activated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using adaptive cruise control or any of its features. Failure to use adaptive cruise control or any of its features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.

⚠WARNING

Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions. Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow. Using adaptive cruise control in these conditions increases the risk of a loss of control of the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Adaptive cruise control does not react to pedestrians, objects in the roadway, or oncoming vehicles in the same lane. Additionally, the system may not react to stationary or slow moving vehicles, e.g., cyclists and motorcyclists.

⚠WARNING

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor and camera to monitor the area in front of the vehicle. The radar sensor is mounted on the front of the vehicle. The camera is mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep these areas of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so may result in the system failing to identify objects ahead.

The driver should remain alert and intervene, if necessary, when adaptive cruise control is in operation.

The adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly in certain conditions. For example:



E214263

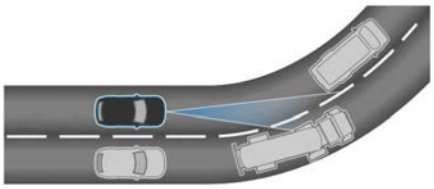
When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.



E214264

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane.



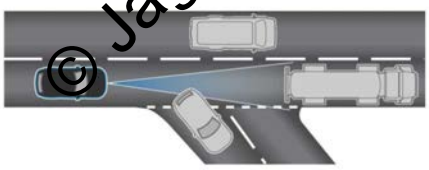
E214265

When entering or exiting a bend. Vehicles in front may not be detected.



E214266

When moving around a stationary vehicle. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.



E214267

When the vehicle in front turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Adaptive cruise control allows the driver to set a cruising speed for the vehicle. The vehicle's speed automatically reduces if a slower moving vehicle is detected in the lane ahead. The system then maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead. If the system detects that the slower moving vehicle is no longer present, it automatically raises the vehicle's speed back to the set speed. In some scenarios, adaptive cruise control also brings the vehicle to a standstill, if required.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control system illuminates the brake lights when it applies the brakes. A noise may also be heard.*

Adaptive cruise control comprises a number of different sub-features in order to operate effectively, including:

- Follow mode. See **182, FOLLOW MODE**.
- Queue assist. See **184, QUEUE ASSIST**.
- Stop and go. See **184, STOP AND GO**.

Note: *Adaptive cruise control is not available when the speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.*

Push the **LIM** switch on the steering wheel controls to toggle between speed limiter and adaptive cruise control functions. See **180, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system or in any of its sub-features. If this occurs, adaptive cruise control does not operate. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

⚠WARNING

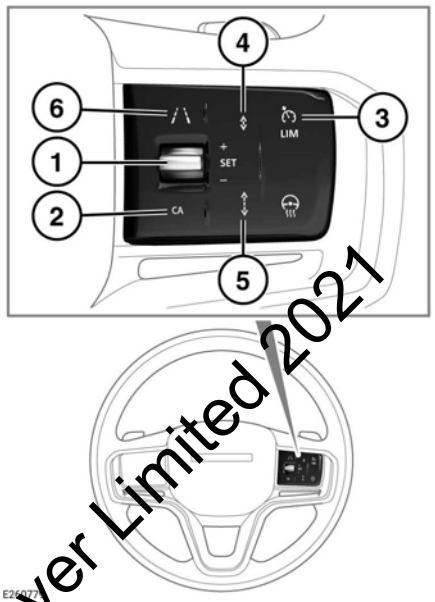
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

The RES (resume) switch should only be pressed if the driver is aware of the set cruising speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch when not aware of the set cruising speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and personal injury.

When adaptive cruise control is operating, it monitors the area in front of the vehicle to identify any vehicles which are in its path. The vehicle's cruising speed is controlled accordingly. See **183, FOLLOW MODE LIMITATIONS**.

Adaptive cruise control may also react to stationary vehicles that it previously recognized as traveling in the same direction. See **184, QUEUE ASSIST**.



E260772

1. Speed control rocker switch: Use to activate the system and adjust the set speed. Move upward to the **SET+** position to increase set speed, or downward to the **SET-** position to decrease set speed. Push the rocker switch inwards for the **RES** command.
2. **CAN**: Cancels the cruise control.
3. **LIM**: Switches between speed limiter and cruise control operation. See **171, SPEED LIMITER**.
4. Follow mode gap reduce button: A brief press reduces the set gap in follow mode. Press and hold to enable follow mode. See **182, FOLLOW MODE**.
5. Follow mode gap increase button: increases the set gap in follow mode.
6. Lane keep assist control. See **204, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Move the set rocker switch upward to set a desired cruising speed. The vehicle's cruising speed is set at the speed it is traveling. Use the gap control switches to adjust the set gap between the vehicle in front when follow mode is engaged.



The instrument panel displays a green information lamp to inform the driver that adaptive cruise control is engaged.

The steering wheel icon also illuminates green when adaptive cruise control is active.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Clear front bumper/windshield Driver Assistance feature performance limited may be displayed if adaptive cruise control is in standby and an obstruction is detected over a period of time. If the message is displayed, clear any obstruction (e.g. ice/ mud in front of the manufacturer badge or the windshield). Seek retailer/authorised repairer assistance if the message persists. The instrument panel may also display **Clear front bumper/windshield Driver Assistance feature performance limited** temporarily if the radar sensor or camera's vision is disrupted for a long period. For example, in poor weather conditions, when traveling through a tunnel, or in complex traffic situations.

Adaptive cruise control does not operate if:

- Neutral (**N**), Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) are selected.
- The speed limiter is in operation.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, but does not clear its memory, when:

- The **CANCEL** command is requested. See **180, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancelation.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Any passenger door is opened.
- An off-road terrain response program is selected.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, and its memory is cleared, when:

- All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) is selected.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- The ignition is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.
- The driver's door is opened.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL DRIVER INTERVENTION

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Adaptive cruise control

The amount of braking applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited. The system sounds an audible warning and the instrument panel displays a message if the system's braking limits are reached. The driver should intervene immediately and apply a higher level of braking force using the brake pedal.

Adaptive cruise control cancels when the brake pedal is pressed, or if the vehicle becomes stationary. Press the **RES** switch on the steering wheel controls to resume adaptive cruise control operation. See **180, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.

Pressing the accelerator pedal inhibits adaptive cruise control braking. The follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes to confirm the system has been overridden. See **87, FOLLOW MODE (GREEN)**.

Adaptive cruise control operation resumes when the accelerator pedal is released.

FOLLOW MODE

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

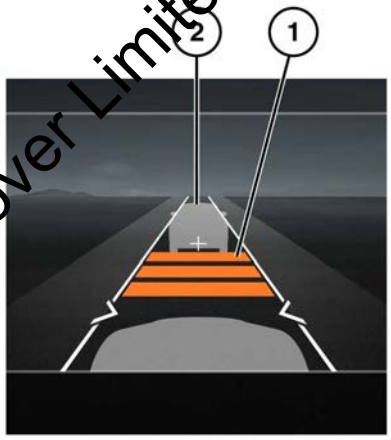
When adaptive cruise control identifies a vehicle in the lane ahead, it automatically enters follow mode. Adaptive cruise control adjusts the vehicle's speed by controlling acceleration and braking to maintain a set gap to the vehicle ahead.

WARNING

When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe gap to the vehicle ahead to reduce the risk of an accident.



The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that follow mode has detected a target vehicle.



E267119

1. Follow mode gap setting.
2. Targeted vehicle.

The instrument panel may also display the follow mode gap setting and a representation of the targeted vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If the turn signals are used, follow mode may reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead in anticipation of a maneuver. If a maneuver is not carried out, follow mode restores the previous gap setting after a few seconds.

Note: *Follow mode may not reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead if it is deemed inappropriate. For example, the vehicle ahead is already too close, or the maneuver has already been completed.*

The follow mode gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **183, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

SWITCHING FOLLOW MODE OFF

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Switching follow mode off allows the driver to take control of the vehicle speed. When follow mode is switched off, the adaptive cruise control system does not provide any vehicle braking. Vehicle braking must be applied by the driver.



To switch follow mode off, press and hold the gap reduce button. The cruise control icon illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched off.

To switch follow mode back on, press and release gap increase button. If adaptive cruise control is active and tracking a vehicle, the follow mode off white warning lamp extinguishes.



The adaptive cruise control icon illuminates gray (standby) or green (active) to confirm that the feature has been switched back on. The previous follow mode gap setting is resumed.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for selecting options appropriate for the driving conditions. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Follow mode has four different gap settings. Gap 3 is the default gap setting when the vehicle is switched on.

To decrease the follow mode gap, press the gap reduce button **4** on the steering wheel. To increase the follow mode gap, press the gap increase button **5** on the steering wheel.

The instrument panel displays a vehicle image with a number of bars when the follow mode gap is adjusted. The number of bars displayed in front of the vehicle image reflects the follow mode gap setting.

FOLLOW MODE LIMITATIONS

Follow mode maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead until:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed. If this occurs, the vehicle stops accelerating when the set speed is reached.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of the lane or out of view. If this occurs, the vehicle accelerates to the adaptive cruise control set speed.

QUEUE ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Queue assist enhances the adaptive cruise control follow mode feature. See **182, FOLLOW MODE**.

Queue assist operates at lower speeds than follow mode, allowing the feature to be used in slow-moving lines of traffic.

When the targeted vehicle slows to a standstill, queue assist brings the vehicle to a standstill. When the targeted vehicle moves off, briefly press the accelerator pedal, if safe to do so. Queue assist now maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead.

⚠WARNING

Queue assist may not recognize a stationary vehicle or object. To avoid an impact, it is important that the driver is prepared to press the brake pedal when approaching stationary vehicles or objects, if necessary.

If the vehicle is stationary, queue assist also applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), including when:

- Adaptive cruise control is canceled by the driver.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.

Adaptive cruise control deactivates when the EPB is applied.

STOP AND GO

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 178, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

In certain circumstances, adaptive cruise control is able to follow a targeted vehicle down to a standstill. See **184, QUEUE ASSIST**.

The stop and go feature automatically accelerates the vehicle away from a standstill, if the targeted vehicle pulls away within a few seconds. A short press of the accelerator pedal is required if the targeted vehicle is stationary for longer than a few seconds.

A short press of the accelerator pedal is also required if not all system requirements are met.

⚠WARNING

The instrument panel displays a warning message if adaptive cruise control detects an object in its immediate path when accelerating away from a standstill. Adaptive cruise control does not apply the brakes. Braking in order to avoid an impact remains the responsibility of the driver.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TYPE APPROVAL NUMBERS

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Note: *Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, could void the user's authority to use the equipment.*

Type Approval Numbers

The adaptive cruise control Radio Frequency approval numbers for the USA and Canada are:

USA FCC ID:	L2C0038TR
Canada IC:	3432A-0038TR

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to use the collision avoidance systems safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Collision avoidance systems are not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.

⚠WARNING

Blind spot driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles, and estimating the vehicle's distance from them, when maneuvering the vehicle. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential braking situations, and act appropriately.

⚠WARNING

Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.

⚠WARNING

Blind spot driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

Blind spot driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.

⚠WARNING

The radar and camera sensors used by the blind spot driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

⚠WARNING

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windshield. Operation of the blind spot sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

⚠WARNING

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

⚠WARNING

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers.

⚠WARNING

Do not use blind spot assist when a trailer is connected. The trailer may provide miscalculations or false indications. False indications could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

⚠WARNING

The radar sensor must be calibrated if it is replaced, its mounting is replaced, or it becomes misaligned, e.g., as a result of impact damage. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

FORWARD ALERT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Forward alert may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Note: *The driver is recommended to switch off the forward alert system when driving off-road, using a car wash, or when the vehicle is being towed.*

Forward alert monitors an area in front of the vehicle. The driver is warned if forward alert detects an object within the detection area. The instrument panel also displays a warning message if the vehicle is traveling between 18 mph (30 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h). The driver is responsible for taking appropriate action.

Four forward alert sensitivity settings are available:

- **Off**
- **Very Early**
- **Early**
- **Normal**

Warning sound and the instrument panel displays a warning message if forward alert detects an object in front of the vehicle.

Note: *Additionally, haptic alerts are used to notify the driver if forward alert detects an object in front of the vehicle.*

Forward alert can be switched on or off and the sensitivity settings can be adjusted via the **Driver Assistance** menu. See **187, CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY**.

CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY

Forward alert has four different sensitivity settings. The default setting is **Normal**.

If required, the sensitivity of the forward alert feature can be changed. To change the sensitivity settings, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. Touch to select the required setting:
   - **Off**
   - **Very Early**
   - **Early**
   - **Normal**.

The forward alert sensitivity setting is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and notes have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to understand the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The AEB system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

⚠WARNING

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras and forward-facing radars to detect real vehicles and pedestrians, plus other certified target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

⚠WARNING

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If neither of these occur, the AEB system may not operate.

⚠WARNING

Safety belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that the windshield is kept clean and that the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by label or stickers. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.

Note: *AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface and the vehicle's speed, tires, and braking system.*

Note: *When a vehicle is parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 210°F (99°C). In this state, the instrument panel displays a warning message. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 190°F (88°C), normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.*

Note: *When the vehicle's electrical system is first switched on, AEB may require an initialization period before it is fully functional. AEB efficiency is limited during this period.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and notes have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 188, AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY.

Note: *Not all vehicles are fitted with Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for confirmation.*

Note: *The driver is recommended to switch off the AEB system when driving off-road, when using a car wash, or when the vehicle is being towed.*

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, and forward-facing radars, located on the front bumper, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with:

- Another vehicle traveling in front.
- A crossing pedestrian.
- A pedestrian moving in the same direction as the vehicle.
- A crossing cyclist.
- A cyclist traveling in the same direction as the vehicle.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's electrical system is switched on.

If required, the AEB feature can be switched off via the touchscreen. To switch AEB off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Emergency braking**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

AEB operates at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).

The vehicle detection AEB system can detect:

- Vehicles traveling in the same road lane of speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Vehicles traveling in the same road lane with speeds up to 80 mph (130 km/h), dependant on the vehicle specification.
- Vehicles traveling in the adjacent road lane of speeds up to 39 mph (64 km/h). The system only detects other vehicles when host vehicle is turning left or right, with a speed of up to 12 mph (20 km/h).

The pedestrian and cyclist detection AEB systems are able to operate at speeds of up to 37 mph (60 km/h).

If an imminent risk of a collision is detected, the system automatically applies the brakes. The instrument panel also displays a warning message while AEB is operating.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

If AEB brings the vehicle to a stop, the brakes continue to hold the vehicle stationary for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle. Failure to take back full control of the vehicle could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *The brake lights are automatically operated in heavy braking situations.*

Note: *The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tires and the road surface.*

The driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. When overridden, AEB cancels its request for braking to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

After AEB has been activated, a warning sounds and the instrument panel displays a warning message.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) LIMITATIONS

Vehicle detection Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) does not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obscured.
- The forward-facing radars are dirty or obscured.

  Note: *The fitting of forward-facing radars depends on the vehicle specification.*

- The vehicle's speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h), or above 50 mph (80 km/h).
- The vehicle's speed is above 80 mph (130 km/h).

  Note: *Dependant on the vehicle specification.*

- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, or snow.
- The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tires and the road surface.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the pedestrian detection AEB system does not operate if:

- The vehicles speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
- The height of the object is less than 1 m.
- The pedestrian detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the cyclist detection AEB system does not operate if:

- The vehicle's speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The detected object is not identified as a cyclist.
- The cyclist AEB detection system cannot determine that the target object is a cyclist. For example, if the cyclist is carrying a large object.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) prepares the braking system if it detects a collision is imminent. If the driver subsequently presses the brake pedal, full braking force is applied immediately.

AEBA still operates if forward alert is switched off.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA) LIMITATIONS

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) feature does not take away the requirement to always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The AEBA feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles.

⚠WARNING

The AEBA feature does not react to vehicles traveling in the opposite direction.

⚠WARNING

In some circumstances, warnings may not display in the instrument panel. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance maneuver by making large steering wheel and pedal movements.

AEBA operates at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).

The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tires and the road surface.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.



E210991

The blind spot monitor system monitors an area adjacent to, and approximately 28 ft (8.5 m) behind, the vehicle. When the system detects an overtaking vehicle, the amber warning icon (**1**):

- Flashes if the relevant turn signal is being used.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Illuminates continuously if the relevant turn signal is not being used.
- Extinguishes when the system no longer detects a vehicle in the monitored area.

During initialization, the warning icons flash in both door mirrors.

A warning indicator (**2**) illuminates in the door mirrors when the blind spot monitor system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

The blind spot monitor system default mode is **ON** and the driver cannot switch the system off.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The blind spot monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The radar sensors become blocked or stop working.
- The door mirrors stop working.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

  Note: *The blind spot monitor system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the vehicle is still running. Switch the vehicle's electrical system off, then back on again, to enable the blind spot monitor system.*

The blind spot monitor system:

- Works most effectively on multi-lane highways.
- Monitors an area of approximately 11 ft (3.3 m) from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 28 ft (8.5 m) behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

The instrument panel display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210 and IC-RSS-251.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. this device may not cause interference, and

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Frequency of operation: 24.05GHz - 24.25GHz.

Field strength: Not greater than 2.5V/m peak (0.25V/m average) at a distance of 3 meters.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

The closing vehicle sensing system monitors an area adjacent to, and up to approximately 230 ft (70 m) behind, the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is automatically switched on when the blind spot monitor system is on. See **191, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.



E210991

An amber warning icon (**1**) is located in each door mirror. The icon:

- Illuminates continuously if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the closing vehicle sensing system, and the relevant turn signal is not being used. See **191, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.
- Flashes if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the closing vehicle sensing system, and the relevant turn signal is being used. See **191, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.

A warning indicator (2) illuminates in the door mirrors when the closing vehicle sensing system is disabled, not active, or there is a system fault.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING LIMITATIONS

The closing vehicle sensing system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The sensors become blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- The vehicle is traveling around a tight bend.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

Note: *The closing vehicle sensing system remains disabled if a trailer is disconnected from the trailer socket while the vehicle is still running. Switch the vehicle's electrical system off, then back on again, to enable the closing vehicle sensing system.*

The closing vehicle sensing system:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Works most effectively on multi-lane highways.
- Monitors an area of approximately 11 ft (3.3 m) from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 230 ft (70 m) behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

The instrument panel display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system applies corrective steering inputs if:

- A vehicle is detected in the blind spot monitor area, and
- A lane change maneuver is attempted.



If a lane change maneuver is initiated while a risk is detected, the relevant door mirror displays a flashing vehicle warning icon.

At the same time, a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane change. The instrument panel displays a warning icon with an audio alert when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel.

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.*

Note: *The BSA system operates irrespective of the use of turn signals.*

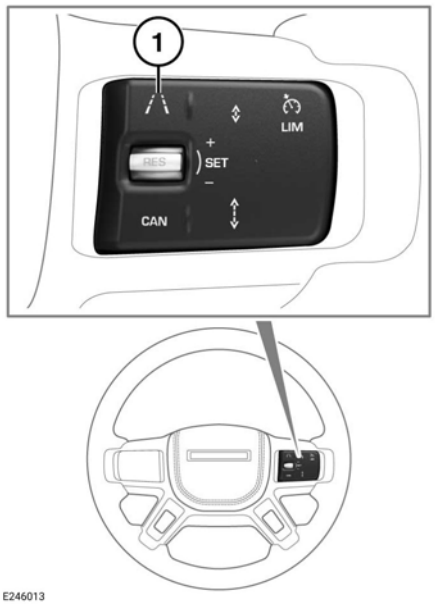
If required, the steering input provided by the BSA system can be overridden in order to complete a lane change maneuver. To override the steering input, the driver must apply force to the steering wheel to counter steer the steering input from the BSA system.

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system can be switched on and off via the driver assistance button (1). The button icon illuminates green to confirm system status.

Note: *The BSA system selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

A warning indicator (**2**) also illuminates in the door mirrors when the BSA and blind spot monitor system's are disabled, not active, or there is a system fault. See **191, BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E246013

Note: *The driver assistance button (1) also controls operation of the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system. See* ***204, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)****.*

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately below 40 mph (64 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 10 ft (3 m) or wider than approximately 13 ft (4 m).
- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.
- The camera under the rear-view mirror becomes blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- A fault occurs in the system.

The BSA system does not operate if:

- Adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the blind spot assist system.

The BSA system:

- Works in conjunction with the blind spot monitor and closing vehicle sensing systems.
- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

REAR TRAFFIC MONITOR

⚠WARNING

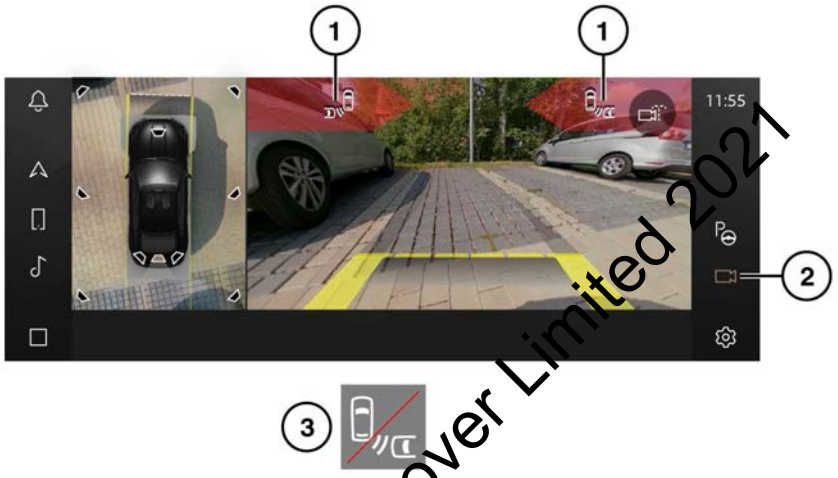
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Collision avoidance

Note: *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

Note: *Depending on the market in which the vehicle is used, an audible and visual warning is provided during a reversing maneuver.*



1. **Collision impact alert** icon.
2. **Camera** icon.
3. **Rear traffic monitor unavailable** icon.

The rear traffic monitor system consists of two features to assists the driver when carrying out a reversing maneuver:

- **Rear Traffic Warning**: The **Rear Traffic Warning** feature detects cross traffic moving target objects from speeds of approximately 2.2 mph (3.6 km/h) up to 43 mph (70 km/h). If activated, the touchscreen displays the **collision impact alert** icon (**1**) on the relevant side(s) of the screen. The **collision impact alert** icon informs the driver the vehicle is about to reverse into the path of a moving object. If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, a red colored block displays. An audible warning also sounds when the collision threat is red.

  Note: *Audible warnings do not sound if the vehicle is stationary. Additionally, audible warnings are not repeated until the collision threat visual alert disappears.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Rear Traffic Braking**: In the event of an imminent collision, the **Rear Traffic Braking** feature applies the brakes to try and prevent an accident. All emergency braking warnings are displayed via the instrument panel.

The **Rear Traffic Warning** feature is active when Reverse (**R**) gear is selected. The feature also becomes active from a stationary position and remains active up to speeds of approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).

If required, the **Rear Traffic Warning** feature can be switched on or off via the driver assistance menu. To switch the **Rear Traffic Warning** feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Rear Traffic Warning**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

   Note: *If **Rear Traffic Warning** is switched off, the **collision impact alert** icon does not display, and no audio alerts sound.*

The **Rear Traffic Braking** feature is active when the vehicle detects reverse movement and remains active up to speeds of approximately 5 mph (10 km/h).

The **Rear Traffic Braking** feature can also be switched on or off via the driver assistance menu. To switch the **Rear Traffic Braking** feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.
5. **Rear Traffic Braking**: Touch to switch toggle on or off.

   Note: *If **Rear Traffic Braking** is switched off, the system does not apply the brakes if a imminent collision is detected.*

The touchscreen displays the **Rear traffic monitor unavailable** icon (**3**) if either the **Rear Traffic Warning** or **Rear Traffic Braking** feature is not available, or if a fault is detected. The icon (**3**) also displays if both features are not available, or a fault is detected.

Note: *If a fault in a single sensor is detected, the entire rear traffic monitor feature is disabled.*

Note: *If the rear sensors are blocked, the rear traffic monitor's performance will be reduced, or the feature may be disabled all together. In the event that this occurs, the instrument panel displays a message requesting the rear bumper to be cleared of the obstacle and icon (**3**) displays on the touchscreen.*

If a fault is not rectified when the vehicle's electrical system is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

REAR PROTECTION MONITOR

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

The rear protection monitor system helps identify any potential collision risks from the rear of the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The system monitors an area of approximately 262 ft (80 m) behind the vehicle for threats from other vehicles that are approaching the rear at high speeds.

The system warns the driver of the vehicle approaching behind, of any potential collision by flashing the hazards lights rapidly.

The rear protection monitor system default mode is **ON** and the driver cannot switch the system off.

REAR PROTECTION MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The rear protection monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The relative speed between the host vehicle and threat vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.
- A vehicle crash is detected.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

The rear protection monitor system:

- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane, or in stop and go traffic.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications or impact damage.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

⚠WARNING

Use extreme care when maneuvering the vehicle in challenging off-road conditions. The driver must maintain full control of the steering and be prepared to use the brakes at all times.

⚠WARNING

Do not attempt a steep descent if ATPC is not enabled, or if the instrument panel displays any warning lamps or messages.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow ATPC displays to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 199, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

ATPC is an aid to off-road driving. When activated, the system attempts to maintain a constant vehicle speed when met with challenging off-road conditions. For example, when traversing snow, grass, gravel, sand, or mud.

Two levels of ATPC are available:

- Descent control mode. See **200, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.
- Full function mode. See **201, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.

When ATPC is enabled, and the brake pedal is fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance to allow the vehicle to:

- Pull away from a standstill in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, uphill, or downhill.
- Perform low speed maneuvering in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected speed up to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).

ATPC also works in conjunction with the terrain response system, and applies different acceleration rates based on the selected driving program. For example, the grass gravel snow setting requires the ATPC system to apply gentle vehicle acceleration. The comfort setting requires the ATPC system to apply a greater rate of vehicle acceleration. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

The instrument panel displays warning and information messages to make sure the full benefits of ATPC are realized.

Note: *The cruise control, speed limiter, and auto stop/start systems are disabled when ATPC is operating.*

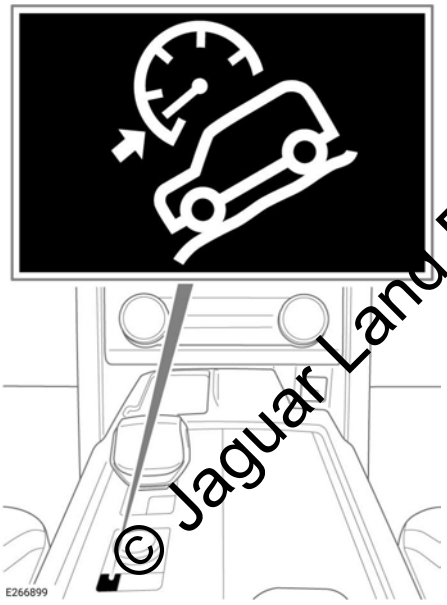
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 199, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

ATPC can be enabled when the vehicle is stationary or moving. When enabled, the system defaults to descent control mode. See **200, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.



The ATPC button is located on the center console. The ATPC button also controls operation of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system. See **167, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC)**.

The button operates as follows:

- A first press of the button enables the HDC system.
- A second press of the button disables the HDC system, and enables ATPC.
- A third press of the button disables ATPC.

The instrument panel displays an information lamp and a message to confirm that ATPC has been enabled. See **87, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (GREEN)**.

To enter descent control mode, see **200, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.

To enter full function mode, see **201, FULL FUNCTION MODE**.

ATPC remains enabled for 6 hours after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off.

DESCENT CONTROL MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 199, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

Descent control mode attempts to maintain a constant vehicle speed when descending a slope.

To enter descent control mode:

1. Carefully position the vehicle at the top of a slope.
2. With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Enable ATPC. See **200, ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. Select an appropriate terrain response program. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
5. Select Drive (**D**).
6. Release the brake pedal.

ATPC takes control of the vehicle's speed during the descent. The selected terrain response program determines the vehicle's speed during the descent. The vehicle's speed can be reduced by moving the **SET** switch on the right side steering wheel controls downward.

ATPC suspends descent control mode operation if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Descent control mode resumes once the accelerator pedal is no longer being used.

FULL FUNCTION MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC). See 199, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SAFETY.

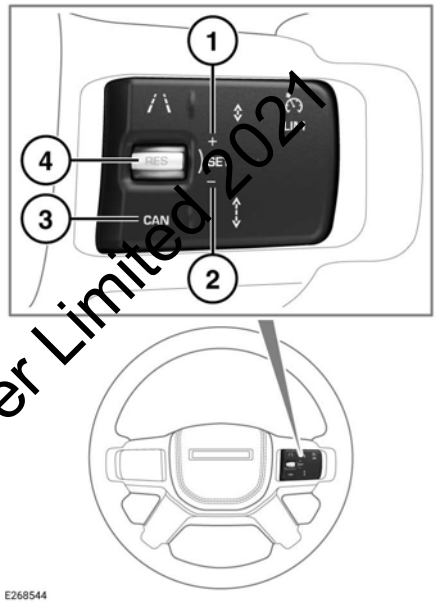
Full function mode builds on the features available in descent control mode, to further enhance the vehicle's ability to gain traction in challenging conditions. The benefits of full function mode include:

- Making a controlled ascent.
- Pulling away from a standstill.
- Driving on unstable and slippery surfaces.

Note: *Full function mode is only available if the driver's seat belt is buckled and all doors are closed. The instrument panel displays a warning message if these conditions are not met.*

To enter full function mode, first enable ATPC. See **200, ENABLING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

The vehicle is now in descent control mode.



To enter full function mode with the vehicle stationary, move the switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**) with the brake pedal firmly pressed.

To enter full function mode with the vehicle moving, move the switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**).

To adjust the vehicle's speed while full function mode is active:

- Move the switch (**4**) up to the **SET+** position (**1**) to raise the vehicle's set speed, or:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Move the switch (**4**) down to the **SET–** position (**2**) to lower the vehicle's set speed.
- Press the **CAN** button (**3**) to cancel the speed adjustment, and revert back to descent control mode.
- Press the **RES** switch (**4**) to resume the set speed, if the vehicle's speed has been lowered through gentle application of the brake pedal.

⚠WARNING

The RES switch should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES switch when not aware of the set speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.

Incremental increases or decreases in the set speed vary depending on the vehicle's current set speed, as follows:

- 0.3 mph (0.5 km/h) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 0 and 3 mph (0 and 5 km/h).
- 0.6 mph (1 km/h) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 3 and 6 mph (5 and 10 km/h).
- 1 mph (2 km/h) increments if the vehicle's set speed is between 6 and 19 mph (10 and 30 km/h).

The minimum set speed is 2 mph (3 km/h).

ATPC reverts back to descent mode if:

- Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The brake pedal is firmly pressed.
- The vehicle is brought to a standstill through light application of the brake pedal.

Light, gentle use of the brake pedal lowers the full function mode set speed. When the brake pedal is released, ATPC maintains the speed at which the vehicle was traveling when the brake pedal was released. A slight pulsation may be felt through the brake pedal when ATPC is actively braking.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) LIMITATIONS

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) does not operate if the following systems are enabled:

- Advanced tow assist.
- Wade sensing.

ATPC may also not operate if a system fault is present.

ATPC operation is disabled if the vehicle's speed rises above 50 mph (80 km/h). In this event, the ATPC information lamp extinguishes.

ATPC operation is suspended if:

- The vehicle's speed rises above 19 mph (30 km/h). In this event, the ATPC information lamp flashes. ATPC operation resumes if the vehicle's speed drops below 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake or accelerator pedals are used. ATPC operation resumes when the pedals are no longer being used.

ATPC performance is affected:

- If a fault is present in the system. In some circumstances, ATPC may operate in descent control mode only. In this event, the **SET** rocker switch on the right side steering wheel controls can moved upward to increase the descent control mode set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

- If the vehicle's brakes become overheated. ATPC operation is suspended if brake temperatures continue to rise.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DRIVING AIDS SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a driving aid system. Failure to use the driving aids safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Despite the vehicle being fitted with driving aids, the driver is still responsible for driving with due care and attention. The driver should also observe all road markings. Only drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users.

⚠WARNING

Driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style.

⚠WARNING

Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to help avoid accidents.

⚠WARNING

Driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

Driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving.

⚠WARNING

The sensors and camera used by the driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected and may give false indications.

⚠WARNING

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windshield. Operation of the sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected, and may give false indications.

⚠WARNING

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could cause system miscalculations and increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

⚠WARNING

The performance of the lane aid systems is affected by tire pressures and steering alignment. Constant steering adjustment may be required if the tire pressures are low, or if the steering is out of alignment. Constant steering adjustment increases the risk of an accident. Check the tire pressures regularly. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if it is believed that the steering is out of alignment.

LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)

⚠WARNING

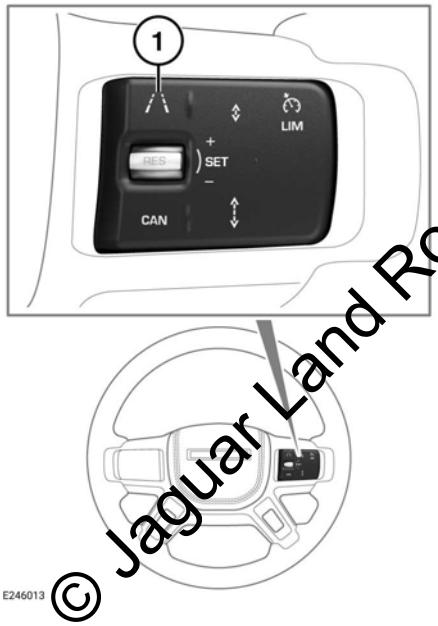
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the LKA system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) monitors the road lane markings in the event of an unintentional road lane departure. If the vehicle is about to cross a lane boundary, a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane boundary crossing. The instrument panel displays a warning icon when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel.

Note: *The LKA system does not assist the driver if road lane markings tracking is not available.*



The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system can be switched on and off via the driver assistance button (**1**). The button icon illuminates green when the LKA system is switched on.

Note: *The driver assistance button (**1**) also controls operation of the Blind Spot Assist (BSA) system. See **194, BLIND SPOT ASSIST**.*

Note: *The LKA system selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

The instrument panel displays an icon when the LKA system is switched on. The icon changes color as follows:

- Gray lines indicate:
  - The lane boundaries are not being tracked.
  - The driver is indicating on the same side.

    Note: *When indicating left, the left side only is grayed out. The same strategy applies when indicating right.*
  - One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **206, LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) LIMITATIONS**.
- Green lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- Red lines indicate when the LKA feature is intervening.

LKA status can also be viewed via the **Driver Assistance** instrument panel view. See **74, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

The **Driver Assistance** view displays a visual representation of the vehicle's position within a lane in the instrument panel. The lane boundaries change the same color as the icon:

- Gray
- Green
- Red

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.*

LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) LIMITATIONS

The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system is not active when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A turn signal is being used.
- The road lanes are not available or in poor condition.
- The road lane markings are not detected.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately below 40 mph (64 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 10 ft (3 m) or wider than approximately 13 ft (4 m).
- Turning in tight road bends.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- A fault occurs in the system.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.

The LKA system does not operate if:

- The windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, or debris.
- Adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the LKA system.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

Note: *If a system fault has been detected with the instrument panel or Head-Up Display (HUD), the LKA continues to operate as intended.*

EMERGENCY LANE KEEP ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

Note: *Make sure the Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system is disabled when connecting a trailer.*

Note: *Make sure the ELKA system is switched off before driving off-road.*

Note: *The ELKA system automatically switches on every time the vehicle's electrical system switched on.*

The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system attempts to provide corrective steering inputs if it determines the vehicle is getting too close to road edges. For example, grass, mud, and snow.

Note: *ELKA operates irrespective of the use of the turn signals.*

The ELKA system can be switched on or off via the touchscreen. To switch the system on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Collision avoidance**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. **Emergency lane keeping**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.



The instrument panel displays visual warnings to inform the driver of the ELKA system's status. The vehicle's speakers also provides audio warnings.

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) also displays a warning.*

EMERGENCY LANE KEEP ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The Emergency Lane Keep Assist (ELKA) system is not active when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The vehicle's speed is approximately below 40 mph (64 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h) when ELKA is detecting road edges.
- The road edges are not detected.
- Turning in tight road bends.
- The driver has applied excessive steering force.
- Driving in lanes narrower than approximately 10 ft (3 m) or wider than approximately 13 ft (4 m).
- A fault occurs in the system.

The ELKA system does not operate if:

- The windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, or debris.
- Adverse weather conditions exist. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is active.
- An Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- The driver has applied a counter steering input that is greater than the steering input from the ELKA system.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

Note: *If a system fault has been detected with the instrument panel or Head-Up Display (HUD), the ELKA continues to operate as intended.*

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

The driver condition monitor feature continuously evaluates driving technique for signs of fatigue. The feature determines fatigue in two levels:

1. Fatigued.
2. Highly fatigued.

In the event of the driver becoming fatigued:



The instrument panel displays a white icon. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

The driver condition monitor feature may warn the driver every five minutes if the driver continues to be fatigued.

Note: *After 30 seconds the fatigued white icon extinguishes automatically.*

In the event of the driver becoming highly fatigued:



The instrument panel displays an amber icon. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The driver condition monitor feature may warn the driver every five minutes if the driver continues to be highly fatigued.

Note: *The highly fatigued amber icon remains displayed until the driver has acknowledged the warning.*

The driver condition monitor feature can be switched on or off via the touchscreen. To switch the feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Driver condition monitor**.
5. **Driver fatigue alert**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Note: *The **Driver fatigue alert** setting always returns to its default state **ON**, after the vehicle is switched off, even if the driver disabled the feature.*

The driver condition monitor feature can also find nearby rest areas, if selected, for when the driver becomes fatigued.

The instrument panel notifies the driver that rest areas are available nearby. The rest areas display on the touchscreen.

To switch the feature on or off, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Driver condition monitor**.
5. **Find rest areas**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Note: *The **Find rest areas** feature selection is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.*

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR LIMITATIONS

The driver condition monitor is not active when the vehicle's speed is below 37 mph (60 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 204, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

The traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. The responsibility remains with the driver to follow the legal road speed limits.

Note: *The traffic sign recognition system default state is on and cannot be disabled.*

The traffic sign recognition system uses a forward-facing camera located in the rear-view mirror and the vehicle's navigation map data. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs.



The instrument panel displays symbols of recognized traffic signs. If no speed limit signs are visible, the instrument panel displays speed limit information taken from the navigation system.

The traffic sign recognition system also allows the driver to set an speed limit alert, e.g., when the vehicle speed goes past the speed limit set by the driver.

To access the speed limit alert menu, complete the following steps:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Cruise and speed assistance**.
5. **Speed limit warning**: Touch to select the required setting:
   - **Off**.
   - **At limit**.
   - **Limit + 3 mph (5 km/h)**.
   - **Limit + 5 mph (10 km/h)**.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

The traffic sign recognition system does not operate to the optimum performance, if the windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked. For example, by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc. The traffic sign recognition continues to operate using the vehicle's navigation map information. In the event that the traffic sign recognition system becomes unavailable, the speed limit alert feature also becomes unavailable.

The traffic sign recognition system:

- Does not perform to the best of its ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- May not perform, or may perform incorrectly, when the vehicle is traveling through an area not covered by the navigation system.
- May function incorrectly when driving toward bright lights.
- May not recognize concealed, covered, or non-conforming road signs.
- May not perform to the best of its ability if the navigation maps are out of date.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver if the forward facing camera is blocked.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4X4i OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Do not operate the touchscreen while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, leading to a loss of vehicle control. A loss of vehicle control could cause vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

4x4i allows the user to view off-road information via the touchscreen or the instrument panel.

To view off-road information:

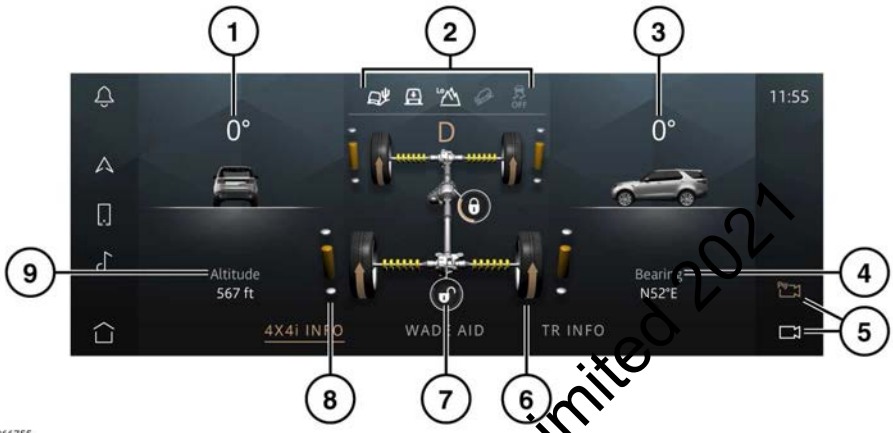
1. Touch the **apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **4x4i**.

4x4i comprises the following features:

- **4X4i INFO**. See **211, 4X4i INFO**.
- **WADE SENSING**. See **213, WADE SENSING**.
- **TR INFO**. See **214, TR INFO**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4X4i INFO



The **4X4i INFO** screen displays the following information:

1. Vehicle roll.
2. Active off-road driving systems.
3. Vehicle pitch.
4. Bearing.
5. **Camera** icons.
6. Wheel spin status.
7. Differential lock status.
8. Suspension movement.
9. Altitude.

Vehicle pitch and roll

⚠WARNING

Do not exceed the vehicle's limits and capabilities. Vehicle damage, serious injury, or death may result.

Camera

Touch the **camera** icon to display the off-road camera system on the touchscreen. See **274, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Note: *The parking aid sensors are disabled if Reverse (**R**) is selected.*

Wheel spin status

The wheel spin arrows change size according to the amount of traction being lost:

- A small arrow indicates a low level of wheel spin.
- A medium arrow indicates a medium level of wheel spin.
- A large arrow indicates a high level of wheel spin.

Differential lock status



The **differential lock** and **unlock** icons indicate if a differential is locked or unlocked. A status bar around the icon indicates the amount of lock being applied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Suspension movement

The central part of the **suspension movement** icons move up and down to represent suspension articulation. The end parts of the **suspension movement** icons change color from teal to orange to indicate when the maximum suspension cross articulation has been reached. See **146, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION OVERVIEW**.

WADE SENSING SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before wading. Failure to follow the guidance could result in vehicle damage, serious injury, or death.

⚠WARNING

Avoid driving in floodwater or any flowing water.

⚠WARNING

Do not assume that using the wade sensing feature makes wading any less dangerous. The wade sensing feature only detects the immediate level of water touching the vehicle. The wade sensing feature cannot detect or predict the depth of water surrounding the vehicle or rapid increases in water level. Hence, the wade sensing feature cannot predict if it is safe to continue driving. The driver is fully responsible for assessing the safety of the driving conditions, potential hazards, and the route through the water.

⚠WARNING

When entering the water from a steep slope, the water level may rise rapidly. The wade sensing feature may not be able to accurately warn the driver of the current water level.

⚠WARNING

The wade sensing feature cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow is present on the surface of the water.

⚠WARNING

The sensors for the wade sensing feature are located on the underside of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and clear of obstructions in order to operate correctly.

⚠WARNING

The wade sensing feature will display false readings if the door mirrors are in the folded position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WADE SENSING

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using the wade sensing feature. See 212, WADE SENSING SAFETY.



E266757

The wade sensing feature is designed to help the driver when driving through water. The wade sensing feature calculates the depth of water adjacent to the vehicle. The touchscreen displays the results along with the maximum wading depth.

To enable the wade sensing feature, select the **WADE SENSING** option (**1**) from the **4X4i INFO** screen. See **211, 4X4i INFO**.

The touchscreen and instrument panel display warning messages as the vehicle approaches its maximum wading depth. Warning tones accompany the warning messages.

If the wade sensing feature limitations are exceeded, the touchscreen image turns gray and the water level no longer displays.

Note: *The wade sensing feature disables the parking aid and auto stop/start systems.*

WADE SENSING LIMITATIONS

The wade sensing feature cannot be enabled if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is enabled.

Wade sensing operation is suspended if:

- The vehicle's speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The slope on which the vehicle is traveling exceeds 10°.

Wade sensing operation cancels if the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TR INFO

The **TR INFO** screen displays further information on the selected terrain response program. See **162, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH



Low traction launch enhances low speed maneuvering and pulling away from a standstill in adverse conditions.

To enable low traction launch:

1. Touch the **Apps** icon on the touchscreen driver side bar.
2. Select **Low Traction Launch**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. Select **Start Low Traction Launch**.

Note: *Low traction launch operation is further enhanced if the grass gravel snow driving program is selected. See* ***162, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW****.*

The touchscreen automatically displays a low traction launch pop-up screen if the grass gravel snow driving program is selected, and the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is either not active or is in descent control mode. See **200, DESCENT CONTROL MODE**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to enable low traction launch or to ignore the request.

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH LIMITATIONS

Low traction launch does not operate:

- At speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).
- If ATPC enters full function mode.
- The **ECO**, dynamic, mud ruts, or sand driving programs are selected.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed fully to the floor.
- A fault is detected in the low traction launch system.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any system issues.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using the touchscreen controls. Failure to use the touchscreen controls safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touchscreen. Using excessive pressure could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

NOTICE

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touchscreen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer, authorized repairer.

NOTICE

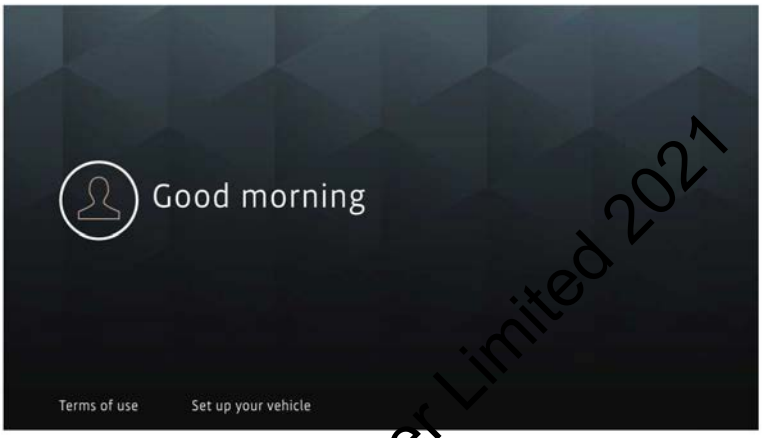
Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touchscreen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery, and prevent the engine from starting.

NOTICE

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WELCOME SCREEN



E261234

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *Creation of a profile can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary.*

The greetings screen is displayed upon screen start-up.

If a profile has not already been created, touch **Set up your vehicle**. Otherwise touch the stored profile to open the home screen.

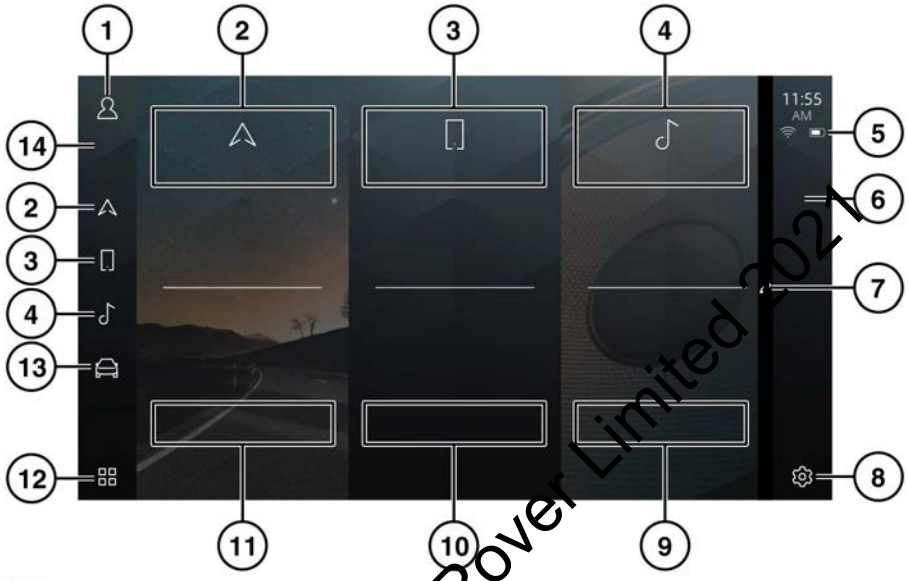
To **Set up your vehicle**:

1. Touch **Set up your vehicle**.
2. Select a language from the drop-down menu.
3. Touch **Confirm**.
4. A **Welcome** message is displayed. Touch **Get started** to continue with the set-up process.
5. Create a profile name and touch **Next**.
6. Complete the on-screen set-up option process.
7. On profile set-up completion, touch **Finish set up**.

For further information on profile settings, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **226, PROFILE SETTINGS**.

Touchscreen home

TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU



E266971

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.*

1. **Profile** icon: Touch to check for any received notifications. Notifications can only be received when the option has been activated. See **227, NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS**.
2. **Navigation** icon and tile: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
3. **Phone** icon and tile: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
4. **Media** icon and tile: Touch to select the media source select screen. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.
5. **Status** icons: Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **219, TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
6. Passenger side bar: The passenger side bar icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **220, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

7. **Edit** icon[1]: Swipe the home screen to the left or right to reveal the **edit** icon[1]. Touch the **edit** icon[1] to make changes to the home screen. The home screen can be edited to display a maximum of nine tiles. See **225, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
8. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen. Select **HOME SCREEN** for settings. The **QUICK**, **AUDIO** and **ALL** soft keys are permanent options. See **225, TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**, **232, AUDIO SETTINGS**, and **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
9. Media shortcut icons: The media shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **221, MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS**.
10. Phone shortcut icons: The phone shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **221, PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS**.
11. Navigation shortcut icons: The navigation shortcut icons displayed are dependent on the vehicle's market specification. See **221, NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS**.
12. **Apps** icon: Touch to select the apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
13. **Vehicle controls** icon: Touch to view the vehicle control screen options. See **219, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.
14. Driver side bar: The driver side bar can accommodate one permanent icon and three customizable shortcut icons. See **219, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.



Edit icon.[1]

TOUCHSCREEN STATUS ICONS

The status icons displayed on the passenger side bar provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Wi-Fi signal.



Connecting.



Network connection status.



No mobile network connection.



Wireless charging.

DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following icon is permanently displayed on the driver side bar on the touchscreen:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Vehicle controls icon: Touch to view the vehicle control screen options. See **140, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**, **156, BRAKE HOLD**, and **158, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OVERVIEW**.

The following icon options may be displayed on the driver side bar on the touchscreen:



Home icon: Touch to return to the home screen.

Note: *The* ***home*** *icon is replaced with the* ***apps*** *icon on the home screen.*



Apps icon: Touch to view the apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

Note: *The* ***apps*** *icon is only available when the home screen is displayed.*



Profile icon: Touch to check for any received notifications.

The following icons are default icons which can be customized:



Navigation icon: Touch to view the navigation screen. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.



Phone icon: Touch to view the phone screen. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.



Media icon: Touch to view the media source select screen. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

To customize the driver side bar icons:

1. Touch and hold the driver side bar icon to be customized.
2. An apps icon screen opens.
3. Touch and hold the desired replacement apps icon.
4. Drag the replacement apps icon to the driver side bar, and over the existing icon to be customized.
5. Release the icon to complete customization.
6. Touch the screen **exit** icon[1], on completion, to return to the home screen.



Exit icon.[1]

PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following icon options may be displayed on the passenger side bar on the touchscreen:



Settings icon: Touch to view the system settings options. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.



Park assist icon: Touch to open the parking assist screen. See **269, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.



Automatic parking aid icon: Touch to open the parking aid screen. See **268, SELECTING PARKING AID**.



Cameras icon without parking aid: Touch to open the cameras feature screen. See **274, CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NAVIGATION SHORTCUT ICONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following navigation shortcut icon options may be displayed in the navigation pane:



Take me home icon: Touch to activate a stored home destination, or input the home destination details.



Search navigation icon: Touch to activate a navigation search.



Cancel guidance icon: Touch to cancel destination guidance.



Recent destinations icon: Touch to view a list of recent destinations.

MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The following media shortcut icon options may be displayed in the media pane:



Search media icon: Touch to search for media within the current source.



Favorites icon: Touch to view the stored favorites list.



Playlist icon: Touch to view the stored playlist.



Play icon: Touch to play the selected media.



Pause icon: Touch to pause the selected media.



Mute icon: When displayed, the volume for the media device is muted. Touch to un-mute.

When any of the following media shortcut icons are displayed, touch the icon to open the source select options:



AM radio icon.



FM radio icon.



SIRIUS XM radio icon.



Phone media icon.



USB icon.

PHONE SHORTCUT ICONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *If a phone is not paired to the vehicle, then no icons are displayed on the touchscreen's home menu phone pane.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The following phone shortcut icon options may be displayed in the phone pane:



Swap phone icon: Touch to open and change the phone from the stored list. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.



Recent calls icon: Touch to view a list of recent calls.



Voicemail icon: When activated, touch to access received voicemails.



Mute icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.

TOUCHSCREEN USE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Definitions for the various button taps and touchscreen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- Drag: Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- Pinch: Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.

TOUCHSCREEN CARE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **336, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

APPS SCREEN

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Select the apps icon from the home screen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

The apps screen menu gives options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of available features. Scroll up or down to view the listed apps. Touch the apps feature to launch the required application or settings screen:

- **ACCOUNTS**.
- **CAMERAS**.
- **SEATS**.
- **CLIMATE**.
- **VALET MODE**.
- **LOW TRACTION LAUNCH**.
- **VOICE**.
- **4x4i**.
- **PARK ASSIST**.
- **WADE SENSING**.
- **VEHICLE DIMENSIONS**.
- **ANDROID AUTO**.
- **APPLE CARPLAY**.
- **TOWING & TRAILERS**.
- **NAVIGATION**.
- **PHONE**.
- **MEDIA**.

Note: *The number of listed apps varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

The order of the listed icons, in the apps screen, are able to be customized.

To customize the order of the listed icons:

1. Touch and hold the apps icon to be moved.
2. Drag the apps icon to the desired position in the list.
3. Release the icon to complete the move.
4. Touch the **exit** icon, on completion.



Exit icon.[1]

SELECTING VALET MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touchscreen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras and parking aid.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **VALET MODE** in the apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **back** icon.[1] If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, a prompt is displayed to re-enter the PIN.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *When set with the master PIN, only the master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the master PIN unlocks valet mode.*

3. The touchscreen displays **Valet Mode Enabled**, indicating that the PIN has been accepted. The touchscreen and loadspace are now securely locked in valet mode.

Access the master PIN update options via the **General** settings screen. See **227, GENERAL SETTINGS**.



Back icon.[1]

DESELECTING VALET MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touchscreen.
2. Enter the master PIN, or the temporary PIN if used to set.
3. The touchscreen opens at the previously displayed screen to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated. The touchscreen is enabled and the loadspace returns to the previously set security requirement.

Note: *If the master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorized repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TOUCHSCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

The touchscreen display settings can be adjusted via the quick settings screen.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **QUICK** soft key.

The quick menu screen gives options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of the following available features:

- **Brightness** soft key: Touch the slider bar and drag left or right to adjust the backlight setting of the touchscreen display.
- **Screen off** soft key: Touch to power off the touchscreen.
- **Light theme**, **Dark theme** or **Auto theme** soft key: Touching the relevant soft key should change the display to that setting.

  Note: *The screen remains in the selected mode, irrespective of the time of day.*
- **Home layout** soft key:
  - Touch the **Home layout** soft key.
  - Select either **App Tiles** or **App Icons** as the default home screen display.

Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

The home screen can be edited to display, a minimum of two, and up to, a maximum of nine tiles.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch the **Apps** soft key.
4. Touch the **Home Screen** soft key.
5. Touch the **Edit layout** soft key.
6. Touch and drag the desired app icon from the icon carousel to an empty home screen tile.

   Note: *The Navigation, Phone and Media tiles are default tiles but are also able to be edited.*



Settings icon.[1]

SYSTEM SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

System settings allows for the adjustment of the selected features settings.

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.

The ALL settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Profiles**.
- **Connectivity**.
- **Vehicle**.
- **General**.
- **Languages and keyboards**.
- **Apps**.
- **Notifications**.
- **Software Updates**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*



Settings icon.[1]

LANGUAGE AND KEYBOARD SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Languages and keyboard settings can be customized.

To customize the **Languages and keyboard** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Languages and keyboards**.

To change the system **Languages**:

1. Touch the displayed language box below System language.
2. Select the required language.
3. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.

To change the language box on **Keyboards**:

1. Touch the displayed language box below Keyboards.
2. Select the required language.

   Note: *A maximum of four languages can be selected and stored.*
3. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.

Keyboard Clicks can be toggled on or off.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

PROFILE SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Profiles gives the option to delete existing profiles or amend the detail of stored profiles.

To access the **Profile** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Profiles**.

All profile settings:

1. Touch the forward arrow to open the option to **Delete all profiles**.
2. Touch the **exit** icon[2] after selection.

Existing profile editing:

1. Touch the forward arrow of the existing profile to be edited.
2. Follow the on-screen options to edit or remove the profile.
3. Touch the **exit** icon[2] after selection.

To add a profile account:

1. Touch **ACCOUNTS** in the apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Touch **Create Profile**.
3. Follow the profile creation option steps.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. Touch the **Home** icon[3] to return to the home screen.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]



Home icon.[3]

GENERAL SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Accessing the touchscreen settings allows the adjustment of general system settings.

To access the **General** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **General**.

The **General** settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Voice Settings**.
- **Display**.
- **Master PIN**.
  Note: *Change the valet mode Master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.*
- **Time and Date**.
- **System restore**.
- **Legal information**.
- **Open Source License**.

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Notifications settings gives the options to allow and manage notifications.

To access the **Notifications** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Notifications**.

Allow Notifications: Toggle on or off.

Manage Notifications:

1. Touch the forward arrow to view all available settings options.
2. Touch the **back** icon[2] after selection.



Settings icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CUSTOMIZABLE BUTTON SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

To access the customizable button settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Touch **Apps**.
4. Touch **Favorite Steering Wheel Switches**.
5. Select from the two customizable steering wheel button options:
   - **Short press**.
   - **Long press**.
6. Touch the forward arrow in the box below **Short press** or **Long press** to open the options menu.

There are four main feature options with sub options to choose from:

- **Navigation**.
  - **Cancel guidance**.
- **Media**.
  - **Next media source**.
  - **Mute audio**.
  - **Play/pause**.
- **Phone**.
  - **Redial**.
  - **Voicemail**.
  - **Mute phone**.
  - **Hold**.
- **Other**.
  - **Upper screen off**.
  - **Traffic alerts**.

1. Select the main feature option.
2. Select the sub option.

Touch the **exit** icon[2] to return to the previously displayed screen.

A corresponding short press or long press of the steering wheel favorite button operates the stored feature. See **231, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MEDIA SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the media controls or features. Failure to use the media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the audio steering wheel controls when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

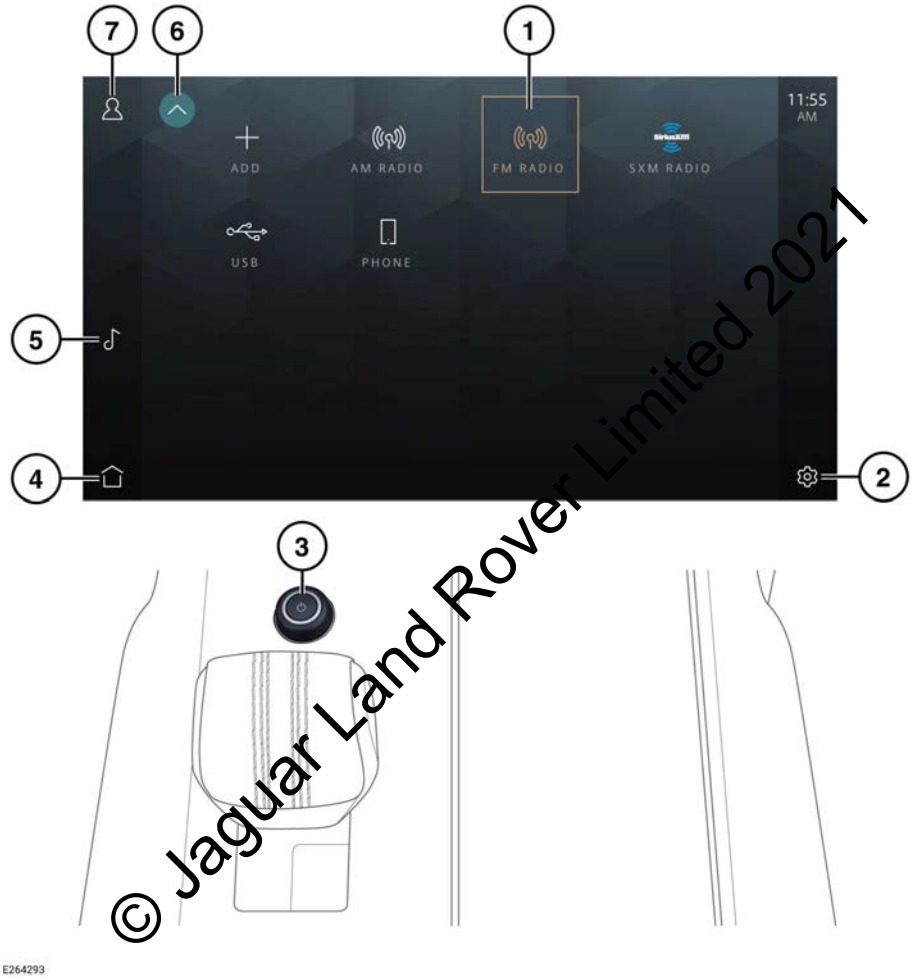
NOTICE

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Media

MEDIA CONTROLS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 229, MEDIA SAFETY.

From the home screen, select the **media** icon. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. Media source: The source select screen displays the available media sources. Touch the desired source soft key to select it. The source soft key highlights when selected.
2. **Settings** icon: Select **AUDIO**, or the specific media settings, via the settings menu. See **232, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
3. Power and volume control:
   - Press to switch the media system on or off.

     Note: *The media system operates with the ignition switched on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.*
   - Rotate to adjust the volume level. The touchscreen displays the volume level.

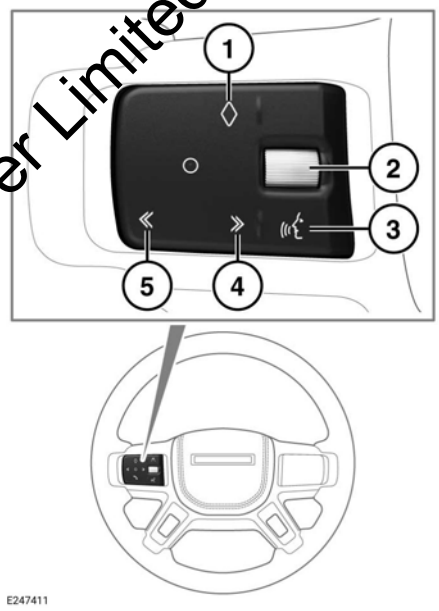
     Note: *If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.*
4. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
5. **Media** icon: Touch to select the media system.
6. Return arrow: Touch to return to the previous selected media screen.
7. **Profile** icon: Touch to select the stored profile settings. See **226, PROFILE SETTINGS**. If notifications have been activated, upon a notification being received, an indicator is visible next to the **profile** icon. See **227, NOTIFICATIONS SETTINGS**.

ONLINE MEDIA

The media system allows access to media content from various online streaming platforms.

To access associated content from an online streaming provider, the user must pair a streaming account with a valid InControl account. See **309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 229, MEDIA SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Customization of the audio steering wheel controls can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary and valet mode is exited.*

Note: *If valet mode has been selected, no customized audio steering wheel selections are available.*

Note: *When a customized audio steering wheel function is selected, the instrument panel and touchscreen display a notification message.*

Note: *The* ***favorites*** *icon is set to a factory default setting until a customized function has been stored.*

1. **Favorites** button: Press to operate the stored steering wheel button favorites. See **228, CUSTOMIZABLE BUTTON SETTINGS**.
2. Thumbwheel: Rotate upward to increase, or downward to decrease the volume level.
3. **Voice** button: Press to operate voice control. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.
4. **>>** icon:
   Press and release to:
   - Select the next radio favorite.
   - Seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Select the next track on the connected portable media source.
   - Scroll up lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.

   Press and hold to:
   - Fast forward the current playing track, on the connected portable media source.
5. **<<** icon:
   Press and release to:
   - Select the previous radio favorite.
   - Seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Select the previous track, or the start of the current track, on the connected portable media source.
   - Scroll down lists of calls or contact entries, when the phone is in use.

   Press and hold to:
   - Rewind the current playing track, on the connected portable media source.

AUDIO SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 229, MEDIA SAFETY.

To view or alter the audio settings, touch the **settings** icon[1] to access the settings menu and then select **AUDIO**.

To adjust the sound settings:

1. Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels.
2. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar, and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:


Front.


Left.


Right.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

 Rear.

 Home point.

 Sound focal point.

1. Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle.
2. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release.
3. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

If **Meridian Surround** is available, adjust the surround sound settings by touching **Meridian** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

Note: *Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.*

 **Settings** icon.[1]

GENRE ICONS

One of the following genre icons may be displayed on the FM radio **PLAYER** screen, when this media has been selected:

 **Default** icon.

 **Classical** icon.

 **Country** icon.

 **Easy listening** icon.

 **Folk** icon.

 **Hip Hop** icon.

 **Jazz** icon.

 **News** icon.

 **Oldies** icon.

 **Other** icon.

 **Pop** icon.

 **Rhythm and blues** icon.

 **Rock** icon.

 **Sport** icon.

 **Talk** icon.

 **Varied** icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Weather icon.

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will end if you violate these restrictions. If your license ends, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or extra data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

LICENSING

E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit **www.gracenote.com**.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

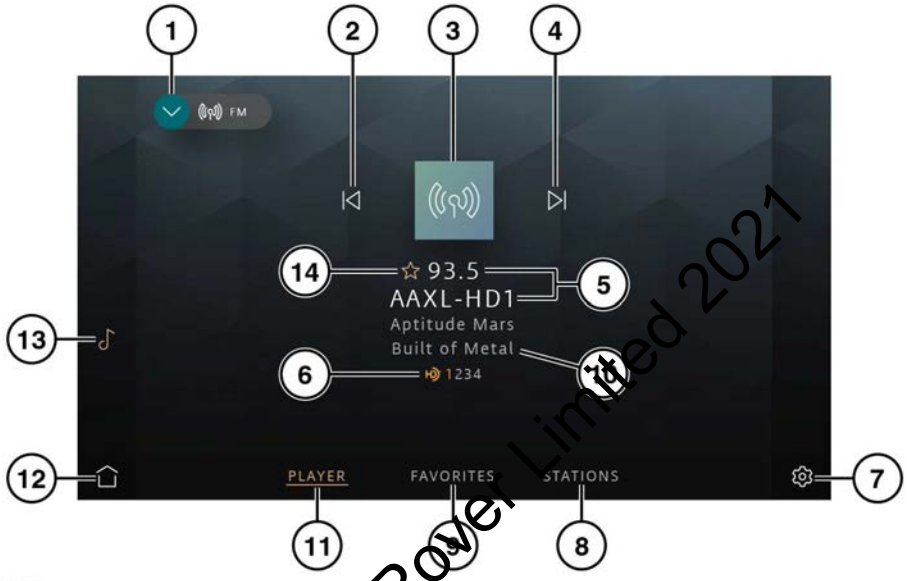
E258855

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see http://dts.com/patents. HD Radio, Artist Experience and the HD, HD Radio, and "ARC" logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



E261240

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, in excess of 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

From the source select screen, select the **AM RADIO** or **FM RADIO** soft key. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. Seek down: Touch to seek down to the previous radio station.
3. Station logo or station genre: Displays either a station logo or genre icon for the currently selected station.

   Note: *Only available on FM and HD Radio stations. A default logo is displayed if no station logo or current genre information is available*
4. Seek up: Touch to seek up to the next radio station.
5. Current station frequency, and station name/call letters display: Touch on the frequency to access the frequency input keypad.[1] Enter the required frequency.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. **HD** icon: Indicates if HD Radio™ is available on the current frequency. Indicates the number of available secondary services on the current frequency, with the currently tuned to service being highlighted.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **AM FM RADIO** soft key. Activate the **RBDS** toggle to access the features list. See **238, RADIO BROADCAST DATA SYSTEM (RBDS)**.
8. **STATIONS** soft key: Touch to display the stored station list. The **STATIONS** screen also gives the option to select a station from the frequency input keypad icon.[1]

   Note: *After a station has been selected from the **STATIONS** screen, the **STATIONS** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the AM/FM HD Radio PLAYER screen, touch the **PLAYER** soft key.*
9. **FAVORITES** soft key: Touch to display a carousel list of **AM** and **FM** favorite stations. Touch the **favorites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favorites list. Touch the station's icon to select that station and play it. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the required station icon, then drag and drop to the desired position.

   Note: *The favorites list can store up to a maximum of 50 radio stations.*

   Note: *After selection of a stored favorite station the favorites screen continues to be displayed. To return to the AM/FM HD Radio PLAYER screen, touch the **PLAYER** soft key.*
10. Station information display: Displays radio text when tuned to an analog station. If an FM HD Radio station is selected the song title and artist name are displayed.
11. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected radio PLAYER screen when in other radio screen modes.
12. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
13. **Media** icon: Touch to display all media in the source select screen.
14. **Favorites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favorites list. The icon highlights when the tuned station is stored as a favorite.



Frequency input keypad icon.[1]

RADIO BROADCAST DATA SYSTEM (RBDS)

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

The radio is equipped with a Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS), which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RBDS information.*

To view or alter the **RBDS** settings:

1. From the **AM** or **FM** radio screen, touch the **settings** icon.[1]
2. From the system settings screen, touch the **AM FM RADIO** soft key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. **RBDS**: Toggle on or off. Toggle on to activate and view the available options.

- RBDS station name display: The station name is only displayed if it is available from the broadcaster, or if HD Radio is unavailable due to a loss of reception.



Settings icon.[1]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HD RADIO™ CONTROLS

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

E258855

HD Radio™ systems provide digital radio broadcasts on AM/FM radio, alongside the analog radio signals. HD Radio technology is capable of providing improved audio quality, compared with the analog broadcast.

HD Radio technology operates in a very similar way to the standard AM/FM system. Further information on storing stations, waveband selection, etc. can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **23? AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS**.

When an HD Radio signal is detected and received, the tuner gradually blends automatically between the analog and the digital audio.

Areas of poor reception due to signal masking and transmitter strengths can affect the HD Radio broadcasts. The HD Radio system may frequently switch between the HD Radio primary signal and the corresponding analog broadcast. If tuned to a multicast service, the audio may mute more frequently.

Note: *During this process, a change in volume levels may be experienced. The volume matching between the analog and digital signal is dependent upon the broadcaster.*

Note: *If poor reception and auto switching becomes unacceptable it is recommended that HD is switched off. Alternatively, tune the radio to an HD Radio service with better coverage.*

The HD Radio digital signal is transmitted at the same frequency as the analog signal and can also provide extra multicast services, where available.

To view or alter the **HD** settings:

1. From the **AM** or **FM** radio screen, touch the **settings** icon.[1]
2. From the system settings screen, touch the **AM FM RADIO** soft key.
3. **HD**: Toggle on or off. Toggle on to activate and view the available options.

HD Radio technology is manufactured under license from Xperi Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of Xperi Corp.

The HD logo and numbers, underneath the broadcasting station information display, denote the availability of HD and which SPS, if any, is selected.

Tuning to Multicast services

Multicast services (extra supplemental program services) can be received on HD Radio™ channel broadcasts.

The availability is dependent upon the channel broadcaster.

To access any available multicast services, use one of the following options:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Touch the seek buttons on the touchscreen. The selected service, **HD2**, **HD3**, or **HD4**, is displayed.

  Note: *If the last of the multicast stations is passed when using the seek arrows, the next analog station is selected.*
- Touch the **STATIONS** soft key and select from the multicast services displayed.

Multicast channels can be stored as favorites and used as normal. When recalling multicast favorites, a short delay may be experienced, during which the audio is muted.

If the signal is lost when listening to a multicast service, the audio is muted.

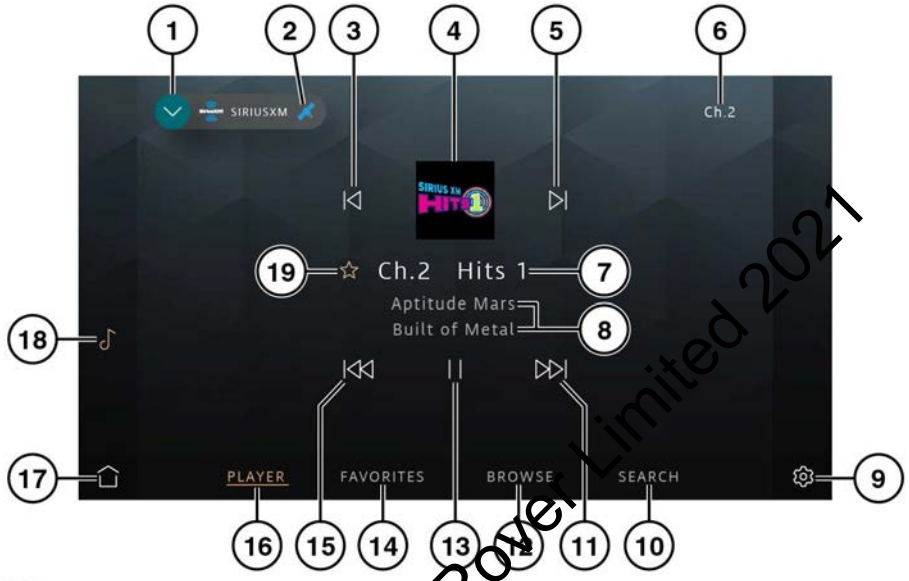


Settings icon.[1]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Satellite radio

SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS



⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, in excess of 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

From the source select screen, select the **SXM RADIO** icon. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. **Satellite** icon: Indicates reception of the satellite signal.
3. Seek down: Touch to view channels listed on the channel carousel. If a channel is not selected within the 10 second time-out period, the tuner automatically selects the centered channel tile.
4. Channel logo: Displays the logo of the current selected channel.

   Note: *If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. Seek up: Touch to view channels listed on the channel carousel. If a channel is not selected within the 10 second time-out period, the tuner automatically selects the centered channel tile.
6. Channel number: Touch to view the channel input keypad. Enter the channel using the numeric keypad. Press **OK** to confirm.

   Note: *The channel input screen continues to be displayed after a channel has been selected. To return to the* ***SIRIUS XM*** *screen, touch the* ***PLAYER*** *soft key.*

   Note: *The keypad is a smart keypad and only allows the input of valid channel numbers.*
7. Channel name: Displays the current selected channel.
8. Broadcasting channel display: Displays the artist and song or team name.

   Note: *If Notifications is enabled, in settings, touching the artist, song or team ID gives the option for these to be added to a favorites list.*
9. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **SIRIUSXM** soft key to display the SiriusXM settings menu:
   - **Subscription / No subscription**: Confirms if a valid subscription is active or a subscription is required.
   - **Notifications**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
   - **Tune Start**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
   - **Help & Support**: Touch to access the Customer Care contact details and XM Radio ID number.
10. **SEARCH** soft key: Touch to display the keyboard. Enter a keyword or number to search for a channel name or number. On selection touch the **exit** icon[1] to return to the **PLAYER** screen.
11. Skip or scan forward:
    - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
    - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.

    Note: *If a live broadcast is operating the* ***Skip forward*** *icon is replaced by* ***LIVE****.*
12. **BROWSE** soft key: Touch to view the channel categories list.
    There are four super categories:
    - **Music**.
    - **Sports**.
    - **News**.
    - **Talk**.

    In each category, touch the soft key to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list. Select the desired channel. Touch the **back** icon[2] to return to the browse screen. Additional categories available in Browse are:
    - **For You** soft key: Touch to display recommended channels. Touch the **back** icon[2] to return to the browse screen.
    - **Recents** soft key: Touch to display recent channels selected. Touch the **back** icon[2] to return to the browse screen.

    Note: *After selection, the* ***BROWSE*** *screen continues to be displayed. To return to the* ***SIRIUS XM*** *screen, touch the* ***PLAYER*** *soft key.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

13. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
14. **FAVORITES** soft key: Touch to display a list of favorite channels. Touch the **favorites** icon to add or delete the selected channel from the favorites list. The favorites icon is only highlighted when the selected channel tile is in the center of the screen. To rearrange the list order, touch and hold the required channel icon, then drag and drop to the desired position.

    Note: *The **SIRIUS XM** favorites list can store up to a maximum of 20 radio stations. **SIRIUS XM** favorites are independent of AM/FM radio favorites.*

    Note: *After selection of a stored favorite channel the **FAVORITES** screen continues to be displayed. To return to the **SIRIUS XM** screen, touch the **PLAYER** soft key.*
15. Skip or scan backward:
    - Touch and release to skip backward to the previous track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.
16. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected channel when in other channel modes.
17. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
18. **Media** icon: Touch to display all media in the source select screen.
19. **Favorites** icon: Touch to add a channel to the list of favorites.

Note: *If a selected favorite channel is unsubscribed or has become unsubscribed, the SiriusXM™ phone number and a message is displayed. See **244, SUBSCRIPTION SETUP**.*



Exit icon.[1]



Back icon.[2]

SUBSCRIPTION SETUP

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

A complimentary trial period is available with the vehicle if satellite radio is equipped. Channel 1 is the available **SiriusXM™** preview channel. Subscription to **SiriusXM** is required, once the trial period has ended.

To set up a subscription from inside the vehicle, call **SiriusXM**.

Contact details can be found in Help & Support:

1. From the Satellite radio screen, touch the **settings** icon.[1] See **242, SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS**.
2. Touch the **SIRIUSXM** soft key to display the SiriusXM settings menu.
3. **Help & Support**: Touch to access the Customer Care contact details and XM Radio ID number.

Details of a valid payment card are also required to complete the subscription process.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Settings icon.[1]

SATELLITE RADIO RECEPTION

Satellite radio reception is strongest when there are clear skies.

In urban areas, terrestrial transmitters are used to enhance the coverage.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using any of the portable media controls or features. Failure to use the portable media controls or features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury, death or damage to the vehicle and its components.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that any media devices are stored securely while the vehicle is in motion. Any loose objects are potential hazards during sudden maneuvers, emergency braking situations or accidents.

⚠WARNING

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

NOTICE

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.

NOTICE

When connecting a USB device, make sure to route cables so that they do not obstruct the cubby box lid as it is closed. Some vehicles have a recess that allows cables to pass through, with the lid closed, preventing crushing of the cables.

NOTICE

It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link. The devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

NOTICE

USB memory stick devices exceeding 70mm in length, must not be connected to the media hub. Using devices exceeding this length can result in damage to the media device or hub on closure of the cubby box lid on the center console.

NOTICE

If an iPod is connected, disconnect before leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

NOTICE

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen. The spilling or splashing of liquids could cause the touchscreen to malfunction or even lead to complete failure.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in front of the the center console's cubby box. See **114, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices, e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use NTFS or FAT32.

  Note: *External hard drives are not recommended for use. Doing so could reduce the life of the device.*

  Note: *It is recommended that the USB mass storage device does not exceed 128GB. USB mass storage devices exceeding the maximum recommendation could cause a malfunction of the infotainment system.*

  Note: *Depending on the memory size of the USB mass storage device, a time delay may be evident before the stored files can be accessed.*

- Apple iPod devices using a lightning connector: iPad, iPod Touch, iPod Mini iPhone Gen5 onward are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, Gen4, Gen5, Gen6; iPod Nano Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, Gen4, Gen5, Gen6, Gen7 and iPod Shuffle are not supported.

  Note: *Album artwork displays if the iPod device is fully supported. Some Generation level devices cannot recognize or support the album artwork.*

If connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touchscreen to operate and search the device.

Note: *The media system plays MP3, WMA, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.*

Note: *If a software update has been activated on the connected portable media device, it is necessary to restart the media device. Restarting the device makes sure the update is recognized by the media system.*

To maximize playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB mass storage devices. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilize a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

Note: *iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

Note: *Some MP3 players have a file system that is not supported by the system. To use an MP3 player, set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode.*

Bluetooth® connections

Information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER**.

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **291, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landroverusa.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Portable media

The **Bluetooth** devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by the device's manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

Note: *Dependent on the device being connected, certain functions, e.g.,* ***Bluetooth*** *pairing, may not be compatible.*

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.



E247415

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in front of the the center console cubby box. See **114, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

Connect the media device into one of the available USB sockets.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with the media device to connect to the USB socket.*

Note: *High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices as this enhances operation.*

Note: *A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB ports are charged, but devices that are fully discharged do not play. Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. The devices still charge without the indicator being displayed.*

Note: *Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.*

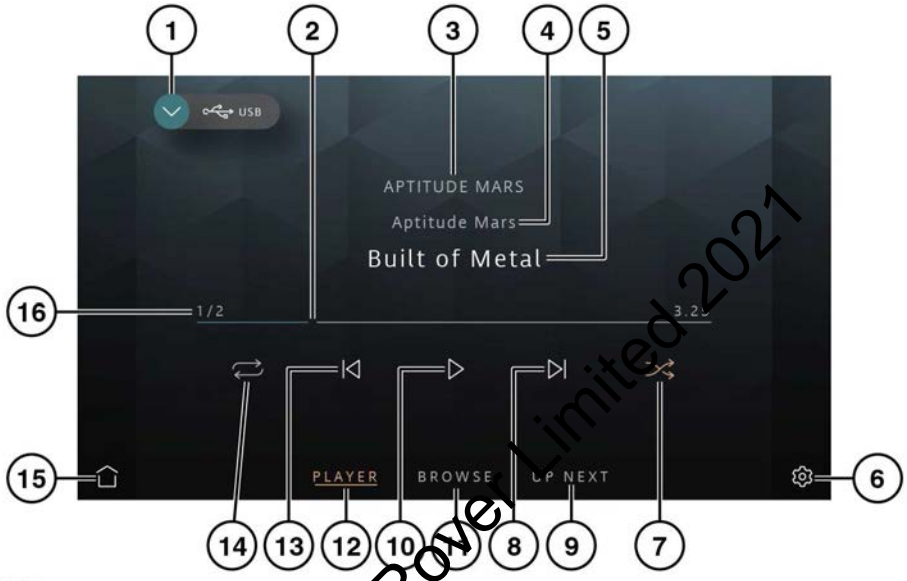
Note: *Voice commands is only available for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that are connected to the system via a lightning connector.*

Note: *Options, such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *selections are deactivated when a new queue is created.*

Note: *The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E261248

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Note: *The system software does not support video media playback and broadcasts.*

Note: *The screen shown is in PLAYER mode.*

Portable media includes iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, and **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices.

From the source select screen, select the connected portable media device icon. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

1. **Return** icon: Returns to the media source select screen.
2. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.

   Note: *Not operational on connected **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices.*
3. Artist information: Displays the current artist information.
4. Album information: Displays the current album information.
5. Track information display: Displays the current track information.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support ID3 tags have the information displayed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *The instrument panel also displays track information.*

6. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the system settings screen. Touch the **MEDIA PLAYER** soft key to view all available settings options. Touch the **exit** icon[1] to return to the previously displayed screen.
7. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. Touch again to cancel.
8. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
9. **UP NEXT** soft key: Touch to display the current queue list.
10. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
11. **BROWSE** soft key: Touch to display the **Browse Audio**, **Albums**, **Songs**, **Artists** or **Genres** soft key options. Select an option to view the contents of the connected device. The contents are displayed as dictated by the device's file structure.
12. **PLAYER** soft key: Touch to view the selected portable media screen when in other portable media screen modes.
13. Skip or scan backward:
   - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
   - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
14. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current track continuously. Touch again to cancel.

    Note: *Additional repeat functionality options may be available depending on the portable device connected.*
15. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.
16. Playlist counter: Shows the present track number playing and the total number of tracks in the current playlist.



Exit icon.[1]

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device.

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device. Some controls may be unavailable, depending on what the device and the media player system supports.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can be simultaneously connected to the portable media interface. Use the touchscreen to switch between the connected devices. Select **iPod**, **USB**, or **Bluetooth** to switch between inputs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *USB and iPod devices only: When switching back to a previous device, from another newly connected device, playback resumes from the point at which it was left. See* ***248, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE****.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.*

1. Switch on the ignition. Make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
3. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
4. Select **Connectivity**.
5. Select **Bluetooth**.
6. Select **Pair New Device**.
7. The vehicle's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.
8. Using the media device, search for devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
9. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing. Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed matches the vehicle's PIN.
10. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message is displayed. Select the **Exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.
11. Select the media device from the media shortcut icons. See **221, MEDIA SHORTCUT ICONS**.

Note: *If, when playing media through a* ***Bluetooth*** *wireless connected Apple device, the device is then also connected to a USB port, the* ***Bluetooth*** *wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via* ***Bluetooth*** *wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the connectivity screen.*

Note: *Apple devices containing a large quantity of media can take a considerable amount of time to synchronize. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 202

Note: *After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.*

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **291, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.



Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 246, PORTABLE MEDIA SAFETY.

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name.
6. Select **Connect** or **Disconnect**.
7. Select the **exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon[1] from any screen.
2. Touch the **ALL** soft key.
3. Select **Connectivity**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name.
6. Select **Disconnect**.
7. Select **Forget Device**.
8. Select **Yes** to confirm.
9. Select the **exit** icon[2] to return to the home screen.



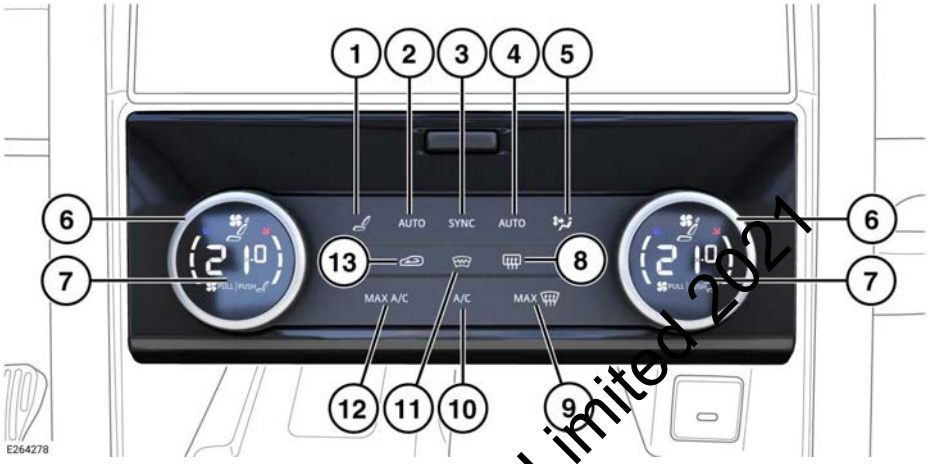
Settings icon.[1]



Exit icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL



⚠WARNING

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Make primary climate adjustments as follows:

1. **Seats** icon: Touch to access seat heating, cooling and massage functions. See **263, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
2. **AUTO** mode: Touch to switch automatic mode on or off.

Note: ***AUTO*** *mode is the recommended normal operating mode. In* ***AUTO*** *mode, the system regulates cabin climate based on feedback from the vehicle's sensors, helping maintain a stable and comfortable cabin environment.*

Note: *When a climate setting is adjusted manually the system exits full* ***AUTO*** *mode. Auto mode overrides automatic climate adjustment and delivers only the selected settings.*

3. **SYNC**: Select to synchronize the front passenger and rear passengers climate settings to the driver's settings.
4. **AUTO** mode: Touch to switch automatic mode on or off.
5. **Air distribution** icon: Touch to access the air distribution modes on the touchscreen. Select from air distribution to the windshield, face level, foot level, or a combination of the three.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. Rotary control: Push to adjust seat temperature and pull to adjust blower speed. Rotate to adjust the temperature. Pull to switch to manual blower speed adjustment. Rotate clockwise to increase manual blower speed, counter-clockwise to decrease manual blower speed.
7. Rotary control display: The center of the rotary control displays the current requested temperature. The top of the rotary control displays the current manual blower speed, or the icon **A** for automatic blower speed control.
8. **Heated rear screen** icon: Demists and defrosts the rear screen. Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
9. **Max demist and defrost** icon: Touch to switch maximum demist and defrost for the windshield on or off. The system directs dried air at the windshield for rapid windshield demisting and defrosting.
10. **A/C** icon: Touch to switch the Air Conditioning (A/C) system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions.
11. **Heated windshield** icon: Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
12. **MAX A/C** icon: Touch to switch the maximum A/C mode on or off. Maximum A/C mode adjusts the settings for rapid cabin cooling.
13. **Recirculation** icon: Select to recirculate air inside the vehicle:
    - Touch briefly to select timed recirculation. Timed recirculation switches off automatically after a set time, dependent on the outside temperature.
    - Touch and hold to select latched recirculation.

Note: *Prolonged use of the recirculation function at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*

Note: *Some of the icons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

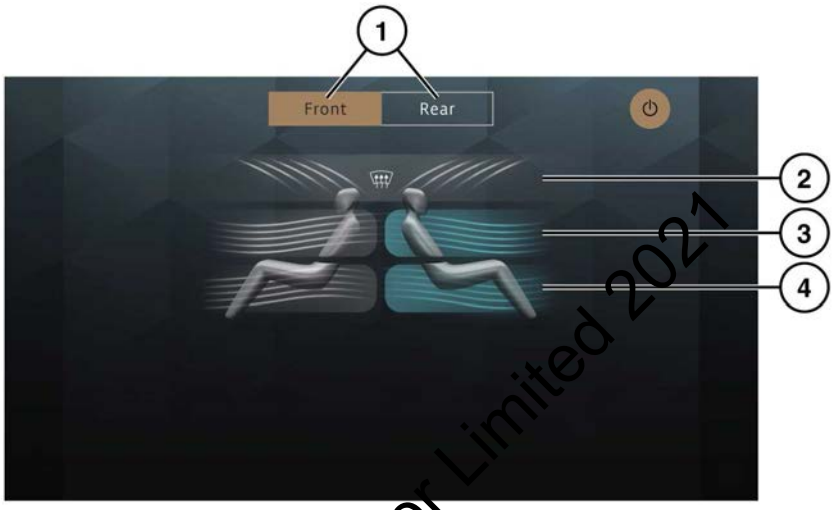
Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, touching an AUTO icon or the demist icon switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle when parked. Water under the vehicle is not a cause for concern.*

Access additional climate settings via the **Climate** menu from the **APPS** screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Climate menu



E265272

Access the climate menu via the climate control icon.

1. Touch to select **Front** or **Rear** climate control operation.
2. Touch to direct air distribution to the windshield.
3. Touch to direct air distribution to the face.
4. Touch to direct air distribution to the feet.

CLIMATE FEATURES

Operation of the relevant icons, buttons and switches are dependent on the vehicle's specification.

Note: *Some of the following features may appear on the upper screen of a vehicle, depending on vehicle specification.*

Unless specified otherwise, to switch on or off, touch or press the following screen icons, soft keys or menu setting options:



Power.



Air Ionisation.



AUTO: Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for AUTO mode can be set via the Climate Settings menu. See **257, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *AUTO mode is the recommended normal operating mode. In* ***AUTO*** *mode, the system regulates cabin climate based on feedback from the vehicle's sensors, helping maintain a stable and comfortable cabin environment.*

Note: *When a climate setting is adjusted manually the system exits full* ***AUTO*** *mode, this overrides automatic climate adjustment and delivers only the selected settings.*



SYNC: Aligns the front passenger's climate settings to the driver's settings.

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing the AUTO button or the defrost button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *Some of the buttons illuminate, or have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*



Heated windshield: If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

Note: *In cold ambient conditions, the windshield and rear screen heaters switch on automatically when the engine is started. The function can be switched on or off via Climate Settings. See* ***257, CLIMATE SETTINGS****.*



Maximum defrost: Touch and hold to switch maximum defrost for the windshield on or off.



Heated rear screen: If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

NOTICE

Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.

Note: *The heated windshield and rear screen operate only when the engine is running.*



Air distribution menu soft key.



Air distribution to the windshield.



Air to the upper body.



Air to the upper and lower body.



Air to the windshield and lower body.



A/C.

Note: *The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions. However, this will not work if MAX A/C, or Maximum defrost are active.*



MAX A/C: Touch and hold to switch maximum A/C mode on or off.



Recirculation.

- Touch briefly to select timed recirculation. Recirculation switches off automatically after a set time (dependent on the ambient temperature).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Touch and hold to select latched recirculation. Recirculation remains on until the button is pressed again.

Note: *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*

Note: *Some of the buttons illuminate, or have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the climate settings menu with touchscreen climate control: select the **Settings** icon, then select **Climate**.

For standard climate control, use the **CLIMATE** option on the Apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Automatic heated screens**: Automatic operation of the heated windshield and/or the rear heated screen can be enabled or disabled.
- **Air Purity**: The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **258, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.
- **Auto Air Flow**: The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Soft and Quiet**, **Balanced for Comfort**, or **Powerful and Fast**.
- **Auto sunroof blind**: The auto sunroof blind feature can be enabled or disabled. See **108, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

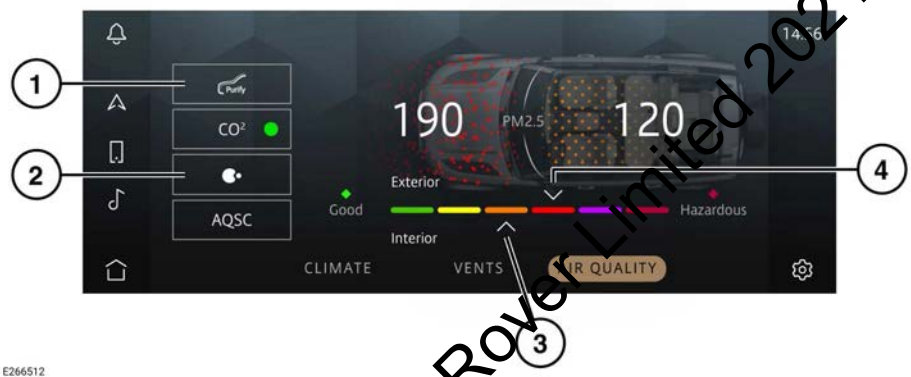
The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **Climate Settings** screen. See **258, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

Note: *It is recommended that automatic recirculation is enabled, to maintain the optimum air quality within the vehicle.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The air quality can be monitored and adjusted via the **AIR QUALITY** sub menu. Access the **AIR QUALITY** sub menu via **CLIMATE** within the Apps menu. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.



E266512

1. Air purify function.
2. Air ionizing: Toggle air ionising on or off. Air ionization improves the air quality in the cabin by removing unwanted particles.
3. The interior air quality level, based on particulate matter concentration. Ranges from green (excellent) to red (very poor).
4. The exterior air quality level, based on particulate matter concentration. Ranges from green (excellent) to red (very poor).

The following applies if this vehicle is fitted with an air ionizer.

United States of America, Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA):

This vehicle, which may be fitted with a regulated pesticide device (air ionizer) was produced at the following facility: **EPA Est. 93184-AUT-1**

California Air Resources Board (ARB), Air Cleaning Devices Regulation:

The following applies to the air ionizer device that may be fitted in this vehicle:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

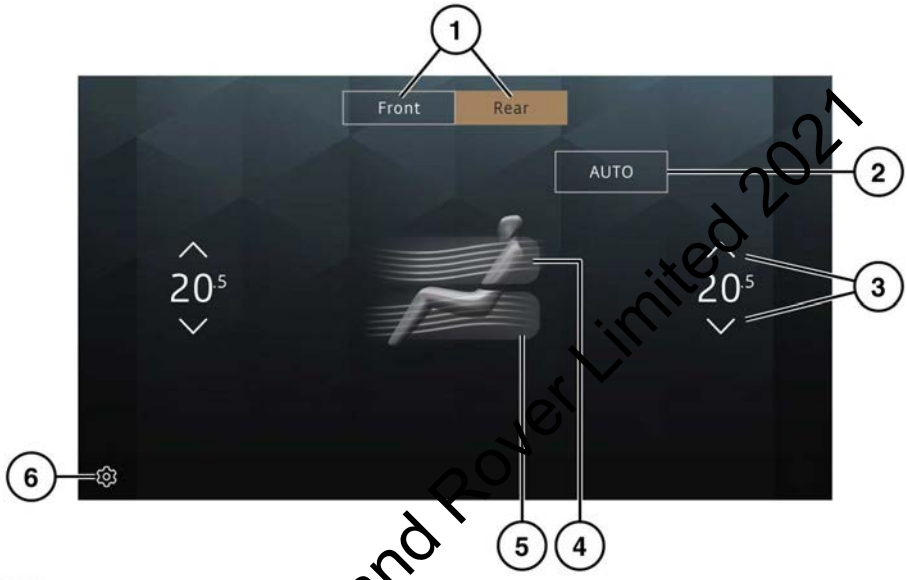


E213553

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REAR CLIMATE CONTROL

To access the rear climate screen, use the climate app and select **2nd Row** from the top of the screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To adjust the rear seat climate settings via the **Climate** app:

1. Cabin zone soft keys: Touch to select a cabin zone. Available cabin zones vary, dependent on vehicle specification.
2. **AUTO** mode: Touch to switch automatic operation on or off.
3. **Temperature adjustment** arrows: Select the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature. The temperature setting is displayed between the arrows.
4. **Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
5. **Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.

6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings screen and then select **Climate**. See **255, CLIMATE FEATURES**.



The rear climate can be adjusted with the controls located in the rear of the center console.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and rear seat temperature control. See **263, HEATED SEATS** and **264, CLIMATE SEATS**.
2. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature.
3. **AUTO** control button: Press to switch automatic operation on.
4. Blower speed: Rotate to the adjust blower speed.
5. **Air distribution to the face** button: Press to switch on or off.
6. **Air distribution to the feet** button: Press to switch on or off.
7. **Sync**: The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been synchronized to the driver's settings or that the controls are locked.

Note: *Some of the icons have an LED indicator backlight that illuminates to confirm selection.*

Note: *In addition to the selectable controls, the rear climate screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, selecting the rear **AUTO** icon switches the system on.*

Note: *If the system is in defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.*

AIR VENT OPERATION

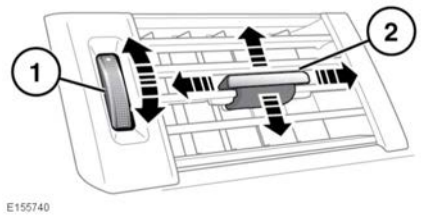
NOTICE

Do not insert or attach items to the vents, e.g., pens, or air fresheners, etc. Doing so could potentially cause damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Do not use excessive force while operating the vent control or the thumbwheel. Doing so could potentially cause damage to the vehicle.



The vents can be opened using the following procedure:

1. To open the vent, rotate the thumbwheel fully upwards, from the bottom (closed) position to the top (open) position.
2. After the vent has been opened using the thumbwheel, use the direction control to adjust the direction of air flow.

Note: *The vent can only be fully closed again using the thumbwheel. The vent can be closed regardless of the position of the directional control.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT



To access the seat control screen, select the **CLIMATE** menu from the **APPS** screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

1. Climate seating power icon: Touch to switch seat heating or cooling on or off.
2. **Front** seats control: Touch to choose front seat climate control.
3. **Rear** seats control: Touch to choose rear seat climate control.
4. **Massage** icon: Touch to switch the seat massage function on or off. See **264, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. Seat temperature control: A positive number and red seat color indicates seat heating. A negative number and blue color indicates seat cooling. Seat temperature intensity is available between 0 and 3 for heating and 0 and -3 for cooling. See **263, HEATED SEATS**.
6. **HEADREST** sub-menu: Not used.
7. **COMFORT** seats sub-menu: The current selected sub-menu for seat temperature adjustment.
8. **Settings** icon: Enables adjustment of the seat temperature control settings. See **264, SEAT SETTINGS**.

HEATED SEATS

Note: *Heated seats consume a large amount of battery power. They only operate when the engine is running.*

Note: *The heated rear seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the center console.*



Heated seat icon.

Touch the relevant heated seat icon to switch the required heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touch a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.

Touch a third time to set the heated seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.

Touch a fourth time to switch off.

Note: *The heated front seats are controlled via the lower touchscreen. See* ***264, CLIMATE SEATS****.*

Note: *On vehicles with rear climate seats, the rear heated seats are controlled in the same manner as climate seats. See* ***264, CLIMATE SEATS****.*

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: *The climate seats only operate when the engine is running.*

To access the **heated or climate seats** screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen. Touch the **heated or climate seats** icon. See **263, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

1. Touch the respective seat **power** icon to switch the selected climate seat on or off.
2. Touch to select, or deselect, the respective **seat zone** icon: Top, base or both icons.
3. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat temperature. See **263, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

   Note: *The temperature status of the selected seat zone is displayed on the touchscreen. The status range is red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.*

   Note: *The rotary control displays a numeric* ***+*** *or* ***-*** *status. The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.*

SEAT MASSAGE

Note: *Seat massage only operates when the engine is running.*

Note: *Seat massage does not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is below 0°C or above 50°C.*

To access the screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen, then touch the **massage** icon. See **263, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

To switch on or off, touch or press the following screen icons or menu setting options:

1. **Power** icon.
2. **Seat zone** icon.
3. **Wave**, **Up**, **Down**, **Shoulder** or **Lumbar** massage.
4. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat massage intensity. See **263, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

   Note: *The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display the level of seat massage intensity.*

Auto Massage can be set in **Seat Settings**. See **264, SEAT SETTINGS**.

Note: *The massage programs have a 10 minute cycle. Reselect for repeated use.*

SEAT SETTINGS

To view the seat settings menu: touch the **Settings** icon, then select **Seats**.

The following options can be selected:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Auto Massage**: Switch the automatic massage feature **On** or **Off**.
- **Time delay**: Touch to select the time delay options. A time delay for the seat massage can be set from the start of a journey.

TEMPERATURE DIFFERENTIATION

The temperatures selected via the climate control system are perceived values. The system operates to achieve these selected values. The selected value does not represent the output temperature from the air vents. Air vent output temperature varies as the system automatically adjusts the vent outputs to achieve the set temperatures.

The actual temperature in the cabin may differ from the set temperatures due to internal and external factors, including ambient temperature, sun load, and direction. The climate control system automatically adjusts the airflow level, direction, and temperature to compensate for these internal and external factors. Automatic adjustments in the air vent outputs may result in some temperature differentiation within the cabin.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PARKING FEATURES SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle.

Failure to use the parking system safely could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The sensors for the parking system do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until the objects are too close. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed maneuvers.

⚠WARNING

The parking system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed maneuvers.

⚠WARNING

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout low speed maneuvers.

⚠WARNING

All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

⚠WARNING

The parking system must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

⚠WARNING

The parking system must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a cycle rack, or stickers. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculations or false indications.

⚠WARNING

Although the park assist system controls the vehicle movement during a parking maneuver, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. When the maneuver is not as expected, take control of the steering and make any necessary adjustments.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

NOTICE

The parking system sensors may also be externally influenced by noise generated from air brakes, emergency vehicles, motorcycles, pneumatic drills, and high wind. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed maneuvers.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

The sensors for the parking system may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed may not be detected. Additionally, the parking system operation may be limited, when maneuvering the vehicle near wooden objects, e.g., a wooden post.

NOTICE

Do not aim a high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors when washing the vehicle. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in damage to the system or cause a system fault.

NOTICE

Particular care must be taken when using the parking system if accessories are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, a cycle rack mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of the parking sensor(s). If the affected sensor(s) is obstructed, the sensor(s) only indicates the distance from the bumper to the cycle rack. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touchscreen display.

NOTICE

Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.

NOTICE

Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

PARKING AID SYSTEM

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

NOTICE

At vehicle start-up, the parking sensors may not detect low or high objects, even if the objects were detected during the original parking maneuver.

Note: *When the parking aid system is active, the system only provides warning tones when a threat is detected.*

The parking aid system works in conjunction with the camera system. The parking aid system assists the driver while maneuvering the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces.

A 360° vehicle plan view displays detected objects along the front, rear, and sides of the vehicle, when active. Object tracking is also used along the sides of the vehicle to monitor the vehicle's blind spots. If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as a colored line over a black background. The distance from a collision threat is color coded: yellow to amber to red, with red being the closest. Other detected objects that are not a collision threat are displayed as gray lines.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Any detected objects considered a collision threat will trigger repeating warning tones. The warning tones increase in intensity as the collision threat becomes closer. The warning tones become continuous when the object is within 200 mm of the vehicle. Warning tones sound from the area in which a collision threat has been detected.

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its steering trajectory. The touchscreen displays the trajectory lines on the 360° vehicle plan view and the camera main screen. The steering trajectory lines indicate the projected path of the vehicle, based on the current steering wheel position. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

SELECTING PARKING AID

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

The parking aid system activates automatically when icon[1] is displayed on the touchscreen's passenger side bar. See **220, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

When a collision threat is detected, the touchscreen automatically displays a 360° vehicle plan view. A warning tone also sounds.

The parking aid system's automatic parking aid alerts default state is on. To switch off automatic parking aid, complete the following steps:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Driver Assistance**.
4. Select **Low speed maneuvering**.
5. **Automatic parking aid**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To activate the parking aid system manually, touch the **camera** icon[2]. See **220, PASSENGER SIDE BAR ICONS**.



Automatic parking aid icon.[1]



Camera icon without automatic parking aid.[2]

PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the media volume control while the tones are active. See **231, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.

Touch the **volume** icon on the 360° vehicle plan view, to mute the warning tones for that maneuver only. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is deactivated and cannot be reactivated if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
- Park (P) is selected.
- There is a system fault.

The parking aid system warning tones do not sound if:

- Any of the terrain response driving programs are selected. See **161, TERRAIN RESPONSE OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The off-road camera view is displayed. See **186, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY**.

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a parking aid system fault is detected, a red border displays on the 360° vehicle plan view. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer.

PARK ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

Note: *During any park assist maneuver, the parking aid system remains active and emits a warning tone when objects are detected as a collision threat. See* ***267, PARKING AID SYSTEM****.*

Note: *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.*

The park assist system is an aid that detects available parking spaces and maneuvers the vehicle in to parallel and perpendicular parking spaces. The park assist system controls the vehicle movement during a maneuver using the steering, acceleration, gear selection, and braking.

The park assist system comprises of two modes:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing or driving forward into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.

SELECTING PARK ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

To begin a parallel or a perpendicular parking maneuver:

1. Touch the **park assist** icon[1] to activate the system. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. The touchscreen displays a park assist screen with pre-detected parking spaces.
3. The park assist system automatically selects a parking space for the driver.
4. If the pre-selected space is okay, touch **Start** to begin the park assist maneuver.
5. Alternatively, if the pre-selected parking maneuver is not okay, select the alternative maneuver via the touchscreen. See **270, USING PARK ASSIST**.
6. The touchscreen displays all park assist instructions.
7. To cancel an active park assist manoeuvre, at any point, hold or turn the steering wheel. Alternatively, touch the **park assist** icon[1].

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Park assist icon.[1]

USING PARK ASSIST

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

For assistance when parking

Note: *For park assist to search effectively for a space, the park assist system must maintain a distance of 1.6 ft to 4.9 ft (0.5 m to 1.5 m). The distance of 1.6 ft to 4.9 ft (0.5 m to 1.5 m) is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.*

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

The park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 18 mph (30 km/h).

Note: *When park assist auto-searching is active, the instrument panel menu displays a* ***park assist auto-search*** *icon[1].*

The auto-searching feature detects parallel or perpendicular spaces before the **park assist** icon[2] is selected. The touchscreen displays a park assist screen with any pre-detected parking spaces in blue. An instruction message is also displayed.

When a pre-selected parking space is found, a short confirmation tone is given.

Note: *The park assist screen displays any detected parking spaces that are too small or non-maneuverable gray.*

If more than one valid space is displayed in the park assist screen, touch the preferred parking space to change from the pre-selected parking space.

The park assist system may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking maneuver. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the maneuver manually.

The park assist auto-search feature aids the driver by searching for any available parking spaces. In order to use park assist, the park assist system must still be activated via the touchscreen. See **269, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

The instrument panel only displays the **park assist auto-search** icon[1] when the vehicle is driven under 18 mph (30 km/h) and the park assist system is searching for spaces.

The following images display the different states of the **park assist auto-search** icons in the instrument panel:



No valid parking slots.



Valid parking space on the right.



Valid parking space on the left.



Valid parking spaces on both sides.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

All park assist features

Note: *During any park assist maneuver, the parking aid system remains active.*

For all park assist modes, follow the instructions on the touchscreen until the maneuver is complete.

A park assist maneuver maybe interrupted by the following:

- The parking aid system detects a potential collision risk.
- Driver input via the steering wheel.
- Vehicle pedals actuation. For example, the driver presses the brake pedal.
- Gear selection intervention.
- The vehicle doors or tailgate are open.

In the event of a park assist maneuver interruption the driver can resume the maneuver by selecting the **Resume** soft key. Alternatively, the driver can return to the start of the maneuver by selecting the **Return To Start** soft key.

Note: *If the park assist maneuver is interrupted for too long without any driver input, the park assist maneuver is automatically canceled and will have to begin the process again.*

A park assist maneuver cancels if:

- The **park assist** icon[2] is touched. See **269, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The displayed **Cancel** soft key is selected via the touchscreen.
- The parking aid system's warning tone sounds for longer than 10 seconds.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) is active.
- A parallel parking maneuver has exceeded the maximum of 9 shuffles.
- A perpendicular parking maneuver has exceeded the maximum of 7 shuffles.
- The park assist instructions are not followed.
- Park (**P**) is selected for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 4 mph (7 km/h).

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and the touchscreen displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.



Park assist auto-search icon.[1]



Park assist icon.[2]

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

Note: *If an approved tow bar is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

The park assist system is not available if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The suspension height is set to off-road.
- Wade sensing is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.

The park assist system may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular curb alongside the parking space, or the curb is covered with leaves or snow.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/ authorized repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tires.
- The vehicle's tire pressures are not set to the vehicle's recommended specification.
- The vehicle's tires have significant tire wear.
- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tires. After the normal running-in period, the system adapts to the replacement tires.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plow, or hoist.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A non-approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- The sensors are in close proximity to hot exhaust gases from nearby vehicles.
- The sensors are in close proximity to noise generated from emergency vehicles and motorcycles.
- The sensors have been damaged during vehicle cleaning.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the parking features. See 266, PARKING FEATURES SAFETY.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be traveling above 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system does not offer a certain parking space:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow.
- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the maneuver.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 5 ft (1.5 m) from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 16 in (41 cm) to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The park assist may not position the vehicle accurately within the space if one or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **271 PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cameras

CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle.

Failure to use the camera systems safely could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The camera feature is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention.

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when maneuvering the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g. ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not attach stickers or objects to the cameras. Failure to keep the cameras clear from obstructions may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the cameras.

CAMERA SYSTEM OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 274, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.

The camera system is available in three modes:

- On-road.
- Off-road.
- Towing.

The camera system consists of four cameras, located as follows:

- One is located in the center of the front lower grille.
- One is located underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.
- One is located below the rear number plate.

On-road camera mode

The on-road camera mode allows the user to select the following camera views:

- Front view.
- Front junction view.
- Rear view.
- Rear junction view.
- 3D surround views.
- Plan view.

Camera views are displayed on the touchscreen. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Off-road camera mode

The off-road camera mode uses the 3D surround cameras to display off-road camera views, to assist the driver during off-road driving.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cameras

Camera views are displayed on the touchscreen. See **278, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

Towing camera mode

The towing mode consists of the following camera views:

- Hitch assist. See **130, HITCH ASSIST**
- Tow assist. See **132, TOW ASSIST**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 274, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.



E268845

1. **Camera view** icon: Touch to select an alternative camera view.
2. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute warning tones for the current parking aid maneuver. See **268, PARKING AID VOLUME**.
3. Vehicle steering trajectory lines: Displays the projected path, based on the current steering wheel position.

Note: *The trajectories representation varies between images. For vehicles in a multi-camera display, e.g., 3D surround view, the image represents the trajectory of the vehicle body. For vehicles with a single camera image e.g., front or rear camera view, the image represents the steering wheel trajectory.*

4. Main camera display.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

5. **Camera** icon: If parking features are also active, a **P** symbol appears alongside the camera icon. See **268, SELECTING PARKING AID**.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the settings menu. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
7. **TOWING**: Touch to display the towing camera views. See **130, HITCH ASSIST** and **132, TOW ASSIST** .
8. **OFF ROAD**: Touch to display off-road camera views. See **278, OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.
9. **ON ROAD**: Touch to display on-road camera views. See **276, ON-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS**.

If an object is detected in close proximity to the vehicle, visual warnings appear on the plan view screen in the form of lines. The lines change color as the risk of a collision increases as follows:

- Blue lines indicate that an object has been detected outside of the vehicle's trajectory.
- Green lines indicate that an object has been detected within the vehicle's trajectory but there is not an imminent risk of collision.
- Amber lines indicate that an object has been detected within the vehicle's trajectory and there is a medium risk of collision.
- Red lines indicate that an object has been detected within the vehicle's trajectory and there is a high risk of collision.

The on-road camera system activates automatically when:

- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- The vehicle starts to roll backwards.
- An automatic collision threat is detected by the parking aid system.

Note: *The default setting for automatic collision alerts is on when the vehicle is maneuvering.*

Note: *If automatic collision alerts are disabled via the settings menu, the automatic camera views will no longer be displayed if a collision risk is detected.*

When the camera system is active, the camera views may automatically switch, under the following circumstances:

- A rear view displays when Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- A rear view displays if the vehicle rolls backwards.
- A front view displays when Drive (**D**) is selected.

To activate the on-road camera system manually:

1. From the home menu screen, touch the **camera** icon[1],[2]. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Select **ON ROAD**.



Camera icon with automatic collision alerts.[1]



Camera icon without automatic collision alerts.[2]

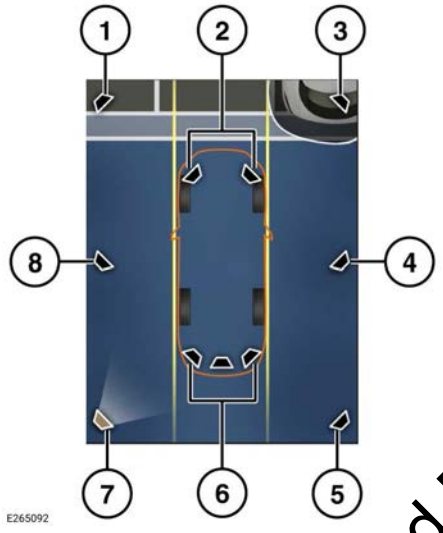
Note: *When manually activating the camera system, the default camera view displayed is dependent on the selected gear.*

Note: *The previously selected camera view is displayed, if the camera system has been re-enabled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Cameras

Depending on the user's requirement, alternative camera views can be manually selected. To select an alternative camera view, touch the **camera view** icons from the plan view area of the touchscreen.



1. Front left **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front left 3D surround view.
2. Front toggle **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front view. Touch again to display a front junction view.
3. Front right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a front right 3D surround view.
4. Right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a right curb 3D surround view.
5. Rear right **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear right 3D surround view.
6. Rear toggle **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear view. Touch again to display a rear junction view.
7. Rear left **camera view** icon: Touch to display a rear left 3D surround view.
8. Left **camera view** icon: Touch to display a left curb 3D surround view.

The selected **camera view** icon illuminates on the plan view area and an image displays on the main display. Alternatively, swipe the main camera screen left or right to move to the next 3D surround view, or touch the left and right arrows displayed.

OFF-ROAD CAMERA VIEWS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera system. See 274, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.



Touch the camera icon on the touchscreen in order to select the off-road camera mode. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Select **OFF ROAD** to activate the off-road camera mode.

Alternatively, the **4X4i** screen can be used to select and activate the off-road camera mode. See **210, 4X4i OVERVIEW**.

The off-road camera mode comprises the following views:

- The drive assist view uses the surround camera system to display forward vehicle images, to assist the driver during off-road driving.

  Note: *The touchscreen displays a message to confirm the images displayed are not live.*



Drive assist icon: Touch to display the drive assist view.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CAMERA SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the camera features. See 274, CAMERA FEATURES SAFETY.

The camera system is not active when a fault occurs in the camera system.

The camera system does not perform to the best of its ability if:

- Any of the cameras become blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- In adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- The system is operating in low ambient light levels. For example, from dark to bright ambient light conditions.

The following may be a reason why the camera system views are no longer displayed on the touchscreen:

- All automatic camera views deactivate when the vehicle speed is above 9 mph (16 km/h).
- Manually activated camera views deactivate when the vehicle speed is above 24 mph (40 km/h).
- Off-road views are deactivated if Reverse (R) is selected and the vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
- A door is open.

The touchscreen displays warning messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

If all of the cameras are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PHONE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the phone features.

Failure to use the phone features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, e.g., filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapor, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.

⚠WARNING

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

⚠WARNING

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

⚠WARNING

Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.

⚠WARNING

Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

⚠WARNING

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 8.7 in (22 cm) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The touchscreen displays the recent call list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the recent call list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*

Note: *The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.*

The phone system can be operated and viewed via the touchscreen or instrument panel. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** and **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

To access the phone features a phone must be paired with the vehicle. Further information on pairing a phone can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

To access the phone screen, touch the **phone** icon on the home screen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

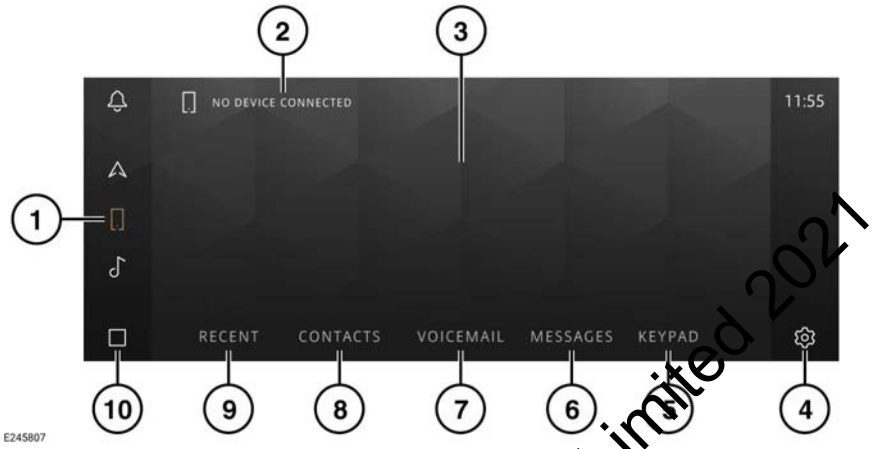
To access the phone screen in the instrument panel, press the **O** icon to display the instrument panel menu. Search **Phone** and press **O** icon. For further information, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

The phone system can also be operated via voice commands. Further information on voice control can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

A phone can also be charged using a wireless charger. For further information, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **115, WIRELESS CHARGER**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Touchscreen phone menu



1. **Phone** icon: Touch to select the phone screen. When the phone screen is selected, the icon (**1**) becomes illuminated.
2. Paired device: Displays the name of a paired device or a list of paired devices. Also contains a **Bluetooth** icon to allow pairing of a new device.
3. Feature display: The selected feature is displayed in this area.
4. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the phone settings screen.
5. **KEYPAD**: Touch to access the keypad dialing mode.
6. **MESSAGES**: Touch to display a list of received messages.

   Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

   Note: *The availability of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the handset used and settings on the mobile device.*
7. **VOICEMAIL**: Touch to display voicemail options.
8. **CONTACTS**: Touch to display the downloaded contacts.
9. **RECENT**: Touch to display a list of recently dialed, received, and missed calls.

   Note: *The touchscreen displays the recent call list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the paired phone, the recent call list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*
10. **Home** icon: Touch to return to the home screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com** for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the phone manufacturer, not by the vehicle manufacturer.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.*

Pairing and connecting a phone for the first time:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **ADD DEVICE** from the phone tile on the home screen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is now discoverable.
4. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
5. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
6. If there is a prompt for a phonebook, contacts, or messages download, accept it. See **286, CONTACTS** and **287, RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES**.
7. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **X** icon or the **phone** icon.

   Note: *Some phones require the* ***Bluetooth*** *device pairing to be set as authorized or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.*

To pair an additional phone:

1. Touch the **swap phone** icon from the home or phone screen. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.
2. Select **Bluetooth**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth** device is now discoverable.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. If there is a prompt for a **phonebook**, **contacts**, or **messages** download, accept it. See **286, CONTACTS** and **287, RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES**.
5. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **X** icon or the **phone** icon.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. To select a device type:

1. Select the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select the paired device name.
5. From the paired device screen, select either phone, device, or both.

MANAGING TWO CALLS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, the calls are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, i.e., on hold or incoming, are rejected.*

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialed from the displayed screen options. From the screen options:

1. Touch the **add call** icon. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.
2. Touch **CONTACTS** to display the list of saved contacts. Alternatively, touch **KEYPAD** to enter the number. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

When there are two separate calls, the **hold** icon changes to a **swap** icon. Touch the **swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

Touch and hold the **end call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch the **end call** icon to end both calls. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

MERGE CALLS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

If two calls are in progress on the same phone, both calls can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **merge call** icon. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

Note: *The vehicle cannot merge two calls from two different phones.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

While the calls are merged, touch the **hold** icon or the **mute** icon to mute both calls. Alternatively, touch the **end call** icon to end both calls. See **285, PHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.

The **merge call** icon cannot be deselected. If one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active.

PHONE SYSTEM ICONS

Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touchscreen:



Call icon: Touch to send or accept a call.



End call icon: Touch to end or reject a call.



Hold call icon: Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.



Add call icon: Touch to make a second phone call.



Swap call icon: Touch to swap between connected calls.



Merge call icon: Touch to merge two connected calls into a conference call.



Handset icon: Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.



Message icon: Touch to send or read message.



Bin icon: Touch to delete contact.



Mute icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Swap phone icon: Touch to change the phone.



Search contacts icon: Touch to search for contacts.



Recent icon: Touch to view a list of recent calls.



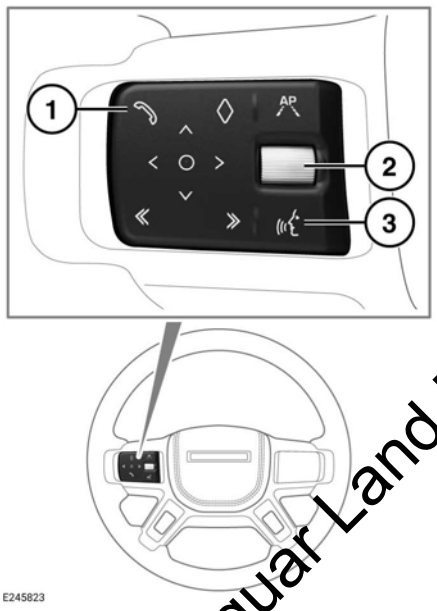
Voicemail icon: Touch for direct call to received voicemails.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.



1. Press to answer an incoming call. Press and hold to end a call.
2. Thumbwheel: Rotate up to increase, or down to decrease, the volume level during a call.
3. Press to make a call using voice control. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

Note: *The user must scroll through a contact list by using the touchscreen scroll bar.*

PHONE CALL VOLUME

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

While a phone call is active, rotate the media system's volume control to adjust the call volume. Alternatively, adjust via the steering wheel controls. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS** and **286, STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS**.

If the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

CONTACTS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's contacts list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts via the touchscreen:

1. From the phone screen, select **CONTACTS**. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *To display the entire list, use the scroll bar.*

To access contacts via the instrument panel:

1. Select **Phone** from the instrument panel menu. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.
2. Select **Recents**.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll through the displayed list. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Press **O** on the steering wheel controls to call.

If the phone supports contact details, contact information can be displayed in the vehicle's contacts list.

The order in which the contacts list is displayed can be changed as follows:

1. Select the **Settings** icon from the phone screen. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **First name** or **Last name** to change the display for the paired phone.

RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the phone features. See 280, PHONE SAFETY.

Note: *The message feature is not compatible with all phones. For further information, please refer to the Land Rover website at:* ***www.landrover.com****.*

Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***MESSAGES*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

Note: *The touchscreen only displays messages to the selected paired device.*

Note: *The touchscreen does not display the* ***MESSAGES*** *soft key if the user declines access via the mobile phone to download messages.*

To access text messages via the touchscreen a phone must be paired with the vehicle. For further information on pairing a phone, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

When receiving an incoming text message, the touchscreen displays a pop-up notification.

A pop-up notification displays the following options:



Call icon: Touch to call the sender of the text message.

Read Out soft key: Touch for the text message to be read out as an audio message.

To access the **MESSAGES** list on the touchscreen:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. From the phone screen, select **MESSAGES**. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Use the scroll bar to browse the list.
3. Identify the required text message from the displayed list and select.
4. The selected message allows for the following options:
   - **Call**.
   - **Read Out**.
   - **Reply**: Provides a list of templates that the user can reply with, e.g., **I will call you back** or **I will be there soon**. Select the required reply. Alternatively, the user can edit and create a message template to reply with.

Note: *The **Reply** option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.*

The user can access received messages and send replies via voice commands. For further information, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

To display the message settings:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the phone screen. See **281, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Messaging**.

The following options are available:

- **New Message Alert**: Touch toggle on or off.
- **Message Tones**: Touch toggle on or off.
- **Edit message templates**.
- **Reject call with Message**. Select the required entry from list displayed.

ANDROID AUTO

Note: Android Auto™ *is compatible with Android phones running v5.0 (Lollipop) and above.*

Note: *Google™, Android™, Android Auto™, Google Play™ and other related marks and logos are trademarks of Google LLC.*

Android Auto is a feature designed to give the user access to core phone features while driving, e.g., music, phone calls, Google voice support, messaging and navigation, with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimize distraction so that the user can remain focused on the road.

To access **Android Auto**, the user needs an Android phone running 5.0 (Lollipop) or higher. Connect a compatible device via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the vehicle's touchscreen. See **246, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **248, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Android Auto is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Google voice session can be started either from the **Android Auto** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

Note: *A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.*

For further information on **Android Auto** please visit **www.android.com/auto**.

APPLE CARPLAY

Note: Apple CarPlay® *is only compatible with an iPhone® 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Apple® and iPhone® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store® is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Apple CarPlay is a feature designed to give the user access to core iPhone features while driving, e.g., music, phone calls, Siri, messaging, and navigation with safety in mind. The feature is designed to minimise distraction so that the user can remain focussed on the road.

To access **Apple CarPlay**, the user needs an iPhone 5 and above running iOS 7.1 and above. Connect a compatible iPhone via the USB cable to the portable media interface. Follow the steps indicated on the touchscreen. See **246, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**. See **248, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Apple CarPlay is designed to work using voice control as much as possible. A Siri voice session can be started either from the **Apple CarPlay** screen or through a long press of the steering wheel voice button.

Note: *A short press of the voice button will start a vehicle native voice control session. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.*

For further information on **Apple CarPlay** please visit the Apple website at: **www.apple.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Export controls

The product contains commodities, technology, or software exported from the United States (US) in accordance with the Export Administration regulations. Diversion contrary to US or Canadian law is prohibited.

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

Canada

The device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC-RSS-210 and IC-RSS-251.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. this device may not cause interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Phone

The equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure rules. The equipment has very low levels of RF energy that is deemed to comply without Maximum Permissive Exposure evaluation (MPE).

But it is desirable that it should be fitted and operated with at least 8 in (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body, excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet, and ankles.

USA FCC ID: A269ZUA130.

Canada IC: 700BIAM2101.

Note: *Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

Note: *The equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. The equipment limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential fitment.*
The equipment generates, uses, and can radiate Radio Frequency (RF) energy. When not fitted and used in accordance with the instructions, the equipment may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular fitment.
If the equipment causes harmful interference to radio or television reception, which turning the equipment off and on. The user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the retailer/authorized repairer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® wireless technology is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

Note: *The **Bluetooth**® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under license.*

The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth** wireless technology Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note: *HFP, A2DP and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle, see **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The vehicle's system may take a few seconds to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

Note: *Some device's require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing feature to be set to authorized or trusted in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NAVIGATION SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the navigation system.

Failure to use the navigation system safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely with due care and attention. Road Traffic Regulations must always be observed. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving.

⚠WARNING

The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions have been read and understood before operating the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *During any map update, the vehicle's electrical system must not be switched off, before the update is complete. Doing so cancels the map update and potentially leaves the system without any available map data. See* ***301, MAP UPDATES****.*

Note: *The speed camera notifications are not available in certain markets.*

Note: *The speed camera notifications can be enabled or disabled via the navigation settings menu. See* ***299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

NAVIGATION OVERVIEW

The navigation system guides the driver to a selected destination using map and turn information displayed on the touchscreen, instrument panel, and in the Head-Up Display (HUD). Navigation instructions can also be complemented by voice guidance.

The touchscreen is used to control the navigation system via menus and map displays. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation system uses a selection of Pivi Pro features to enhance the navigation system. See **302, PIVI PRO FEATURES**.

The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to display navigation instructions and maps. See **301, INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW**.

The HUD can also be set up to display turn instructions. See **79, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

The navigation system can also be controlled via voice commands. See **301, NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL** .

NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE LIMITATIONS

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position displayed on the map screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised highways and tunnels.

NAVIGATION TILES

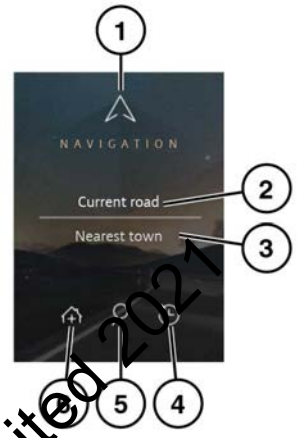
WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

The touchscreen home menu displays a navigation tile. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

Note: *Depending if a route has been set or not, the navigation tile may display differently.*

The following navigation tile displays when no route is set:

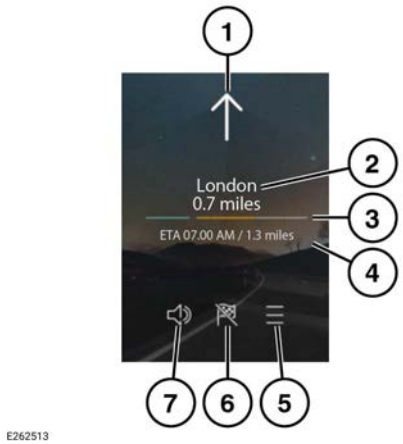


E262512

1. **Navigation** icon: Touch to access the navigation map screen. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Displays the current road name.
3. Displays the nearest town or city, depending on the vehicle's location.
4. **Recent destinations** icon: Touch to view a list of recent destinations.
5. **Search** icon: Touch to activate a navigation search. See **295, SETTING A DESTINATION**.
6. **Take me home** icon: Touch to activate a stored home destination, or input the home destination details.

The following navigation tile displays when a route is set:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E262513

1. **Turn by turn** icon: Displays the upcoming maneuver instruction.
2. Displays the remaining distance to the turn by turn instruction and road name for the next maneuver.
3. Progress bar: Displays a start to finish progress bar when a route has been set.
4. Arrival information: Displays the Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and remaining distance.
5. **Guidance pop-up** icon: Touch to display a pop-up menu displaying the following options to select:
   - **Traffic**: Displays traffic information when a route is set.
     Note: *Internet connection is required to receive traffic information. See* ***314, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*
   - **Rest areas**: Displays a list of rest areas during the set route guidance, should the user choose to stop.
   - **Fuel stations**: Displays a list of fuel stations in order of distance during an active route guidance.
6. **Cancel guidance** icon: Touch to cancel the current route guidance.
7. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute or un-mute the navigation voice guidance.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

To access the navigation system, touch the **navigation** icon via the navigation tile on the home screen. See **218, TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**.

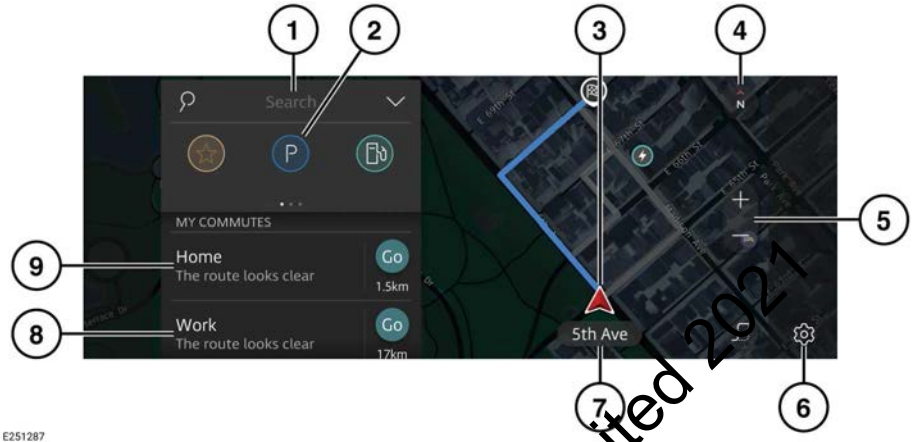
Alternatively, touch the **navigation** icon via the driver side bar. See **219, DRIVER SIDE BAR ICONS**.

Note: *The navigation tile displays various shortcuts depending if a route has been set or not. See* ***293, NAVIGATION TILES****.*

Note: *A first time user should set up personal preferences in the navigation settings menu. Personal preferences may include settings for managing which selected routing mode and route preferences are applied. See* ***299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

Touch the **navigation** icon to display a map view of the current vehicle position and search card.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



E251287

1. **Search** card: Touch to search for an address or a place name. See **295, SETTING A DESTINATION**.
2. Category list: Touch to search for Points of Interest (POIs) or a saved favorite from the category list displayed. Swipe left or right for further options. See **295, SETTING A DESTINATION** and **298, FAVORITES**.
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. View options toggle: Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, north facing, or a route overview map.
5. **Zoom** icons: Touch to zoom in or out.

   Note: *Zoom icons only display after the navigation map has been interacted with.*

   Note: *The map zoom setting can be altered by using a pinch or push motion. The map view can be panned using a swipe motion.*
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to display the navigation settings menu. See **299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .
7. Current road name.
8. **MY COMMUTE** suggestion: Based on regular used routes, the commute mode displays the route for the user to set up an active navigation route guidance for driving to work. See **304, COMMUTE MODE** .
9. **MY COMMUTE** suggestion: Based on regular used routes, the commute mode displays the route for the user to set up an active navigation route guidance for driving home. See **304, COMMUTE MODE** .

SETTING A DESTINATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

To set a destination:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Touch the **search** icon[1] located within the navigation tile on the touchscreen's home menu. See **293, NAVIGATION TILES**.
2. Alternatively, touch the **search** icon[1] located within the search card on the navigation map screen. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
3. Using the keyboard:
   - Input the required destination.
   - From the suggestion list located at the bottom of the keyboard, select the required destination.
   - If the selected destination is correct, please confirm.
4. The navigation system calculates the route. The touchscreen displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route. The touchscreen may also display alternative routes.
5. Select the required route from the available options.
6. Touch **Go** to begin navigation.

To search for Points of Interest (POIs) from the category list:

1. Select a category from the following list: See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
   - **EAT & DRINK**.
   - **FUEL STATIONS**.
   - **PARKING**.
   - **CAR DEALER/REPAIRER**.
   - **SHOPPING**.
   - **SIGHTS & MUSEUM**.
   - **LEISURE & OUTDOORS**.
   - **GOING OUT**.
   - **ACCOMMODATION**.
   - **POLICE/EMERGENCY**.
   - **HOSPITAL or HEALTHCARE FACILITY**.

   Note: *More options may be available.*
2. From the sub-category list, select the required destination.
3. The navigation system calculates the route. The touchscreen displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.
4. Select the required route from the available options.
5. Touch **Go** to begin navigation.

To edit the route:

1. Touch the **Routes** soft key.
2. Select the **route preferences** icon[2].
3. Select the required route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or avoiding tunnels.
4. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

Note: *Touch the* ***drop-down*** *icon[3],* ***suggestions*** *icon[4], or the* ***OK*** *soft key, to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.*

Note: *The navigation system calculates all routes, based on the selected routing mode and route preferences. See* ***299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *.*

Note: *An address, place name, or category can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See* ***298, EDIT ROUTE****.*



Search icon.[1]



Route preferences icon.[2]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Drop-down icon.[3]

Suggestions icon.[4]

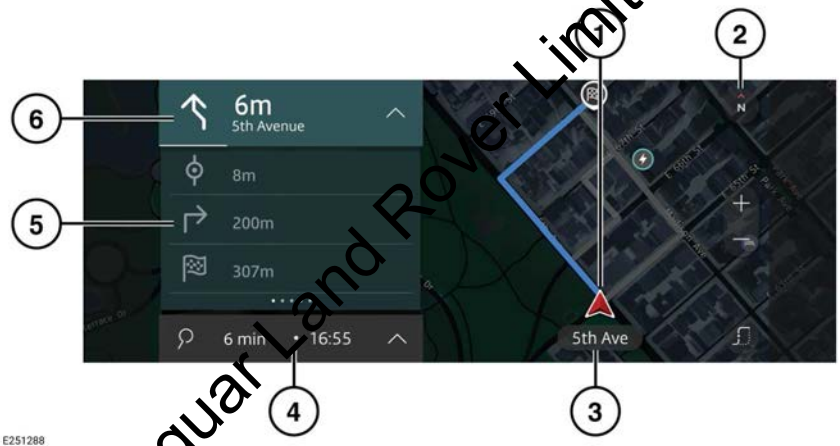
MAP SPLIT SCREEN

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When a route has been selected, depending on the navigation settings, the touchscreen displays a turn by turn guidance map.

Note: *The information panel can be edited to display other options. See* ***299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** .



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. The current vehicle position and direction.
2. View options toggle: Touch to select the **2D**, **3D**, north facing, or route overview map views.
3. Displays the current road name.
4. Information bar: Displays information including the remaining route distance and the ETA.
5. Information panel: The information panel can be edited to display alternative panels, e.g., maneuvers overview and intersection views.
6. Active route: Next turn by turn instruction display.

EDIT ROUTE

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When a route is selected, the user has the option to edit the route via the following:

- Route options: Select the preferred option from the fastest, shortest, or the most economic route.
- Route preferences: Select to remove or add route preferences such as, roads, tunnels, ferries, etc.

A waypoint can also be added, deleted, or a route rearranged for any active route guidance.

To add a waypoint:

1. During an active route, expand the search card on the navigation map screen. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Touch the **Add waypoint** soft key.
3. Search for a destination:
   - Input the required destination and select.
   - Alternatively, select a waypoint from any saved destinations or categories.
   - If the selected destination is correct, touch the **Add** soft key.
4. The waypoint is added to the active route guidance.

   Note: *Follow the same process if any additional waypoints are required.*

The following options can also be selected:

- Remove waypoint: Swipe the added waypoint to reveal the **trash can** icon[2]. Touch the icon[2] to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- Change the order of the waypoints: From the list of added waypoints, drag and drop to re-order the waypoints.



Trash can icon.[2]

NOTIFICATIONS

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

A range of notifications can be displayed via the navigation map screen, e.g., low fuel, safety cameras, traffic information, and maneuver details.

All navigation notifications can be edited via the navigation settings menu. See **299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

FAVORITES

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Detailed information about an address, place name, or category, can be saved as a favorite.

Also the navigation system can save the user's home and work address and use as a shortcut within the search card. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To add a destination as a favorite, touch the **favorite** icon[1]. The destination is added to the **Favorites** category. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

Note: *The* ***Favorites*** *category is located via the search card on the navigation map screen. See* ***294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM****.*

To remove a favorite, touch the **favorite** icon[1].

Note: *If no route is selected, select the required favorite to set it as a destination.*

Note: *If a route is selected, select the required favorite to add it as a waypoint.*



Favorite icon.[1]

NAVIGATION SETTINGS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY.

To view the navigation settings menu:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the navigation map screen. See **294, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. Select **NAVIGATION** from the settings screen.

The following options are available for the user to enable or disable:

General:

- **Show Qibla**: Displays direction to Qibla on compass: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Notifications**:
  - **Mute navigation guidance**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Safety zone warning**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Display a visual cue when approaching safety zone**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Play a sound when approaching a safety zone**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Display a visual cue when approaching a speed camera**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Low fuel alert**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Map:

- **Satellite**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Traffic displayed on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Favorites on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Auto zoom**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **3D buildings**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **POI Display on map**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Route and Guidance:

- **Dynamic Routing**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Routing mode**:
  - **Fastest**.
  - **Shortest**.
  - **ECO**.
- **Route Preferences**: Select from the available list to avoid certain road features.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **My commute**: Enable or disable from the following:
  - **Learn my routes**: Help's make day-to-day driving to go more smoothly by taking into account the current situation on routes the driver does regularly: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Auto-start commute**: Recognizes when the driver is going to frequent destinations and switches on My Commute automatically: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Fewer commands**: Less driver commands given when driving in areas known: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Delete driving history**: Removes stored driving history.
- **Suggestions along the routes**:

Instrument panel display:

- **Intersection view**:
  - **Picture of an intersection view**: Displays an intersection map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Show on main screen**: Displays an intersection map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Lane assistance**:
  - **Picture of a lane assistance**: Displays a lane assistance view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
  - **Show on main screen**: Displays an intersection map view in the instrument panel: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Abstract Route Overview**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Next Waypoint**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Rerouting Information**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
- **Satellite**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

Voice: Displays a list of voice settings.

About: Displays information such as, map information, GPS information, and legal information.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is traveling at slow speeds and zooms out when traveling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled via the navigation settings menu. See **299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **230, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Note: *The volume of the safety camera notification is linked to the voice guidance volume.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *The availability and functionality of navigation maps displayed on the instrument panel depends on the specification of the vehicle.*

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of a full navigation map or a mini navigation map, depending in the instrument panel setup.

Note: *In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, and range is displayed as an information bar.*

Navigation turn instructions are also available to the user and are displayed in the instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD).

Note: *Navigation turn instructions are only displayed if route guidance is active.*

To display navigation map views in the instrument panel or HUD, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **74, CONFIGURING A VIRTUAL INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

The instrument panel can be edited by the user to display alternative intersection and local assistance map views. See **299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

NAVIGATION VOICE CONTROL

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *Navigation voice control is not available in all markets.*

When using voice control for the navigation system, information is used from the on-board navigation database. Online features are not available.

The user can command the navigation system to:

- Navigate to a saved home location or work location.
- Navigate to a recent or previous destination.
- Enter an address.
- Navigate to a Point Of Interest (POI).
- Navigate to a zip code.

  Note: *The navigate to a zip code voice command is not available in all markets.*
- Cancel an active route guidance.

For assistance when operating the navigation system's voice control feature, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **306, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

MAP UPDATES

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *For user safety, the vehicle must be stationary for an online update process to avoid any distraction.*

The map data in the navigation system is automatically updated via an online update. The user is only prompted with a notification when the update was successfully updated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Online updates are only available if connected to the internet. See* ***316, SOFTWARE UPDATES****.*

For further information on navigation system updates, please contact an authorized retailer/authorized repairer.

PIVI PRO FEATURES

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Note: *In order to benefit from the full range of Pivi Pro features, the vehicle requires connection to the internet. See* ***314, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*

Pivi Pro uses a selection of features to enhance the navigation system.

Pivi Pro features include:

- Real-Time Traffic Information. See **302, REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION**.
- Online Routing. See **303, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- Planning Routes and Door to Door Routing. See **303, PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING** .
- Satellite Views. See **303, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- Fuel Price Service. See **303, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- Commute Mode. See **304, COMMUTE MODE** .
- Parking Service. See **304, PARKING SERVICE**.
- Safety Cameras. See **304, SAFETY CAMERAS**.

REAL TIME TRAFFIC INFORMATION

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Uses live traffic data feeds, allowing for better traffic information, planning, and rerouting, for the user to complete the journey more efficiently.

Note: *Historical and internet traffic information is not available in all markets.*

Traffic information is displayed as color coded on the navigation map. The color codes are:

- Red: Very heavy traffic or stationary traffic.
- Amber: Heavy traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

Real-time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

Note: *In some instances, the real time traffic information feature does not operate if the navigation map displays 3D buildings.*

Note: *Real-time traffic information does not automatically reroute journeys.*

A traffic-enabled route can be selected. A traffic-enabled route displays improved and updated routes to the destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. An option can also be enabled to possibly find a route to the destination, avoiding an alerted incident or traffic flow issues.

Note: *A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey. See* ***314, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ONLINE ROUTING

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

While on route to a destination, the navigation system monitors live traffic conditions and takes into account typical traffic patterns for that time of day, keeping the user on the optimum route.

Note: *Online routing can be used in conjunction with commute mode.*

PLANNING ROUTES AND DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Before starting a route, the user can use the **Route Planner** smartphone app to set a destination. The smartphone app sends the selected destination automatically to the vehicle's navigation screen.

Once parked, the **Route Planner** smartphone app guides the user to the selected destination, which includes public transport options.

Note: *The **Route Planner** smartphone app is only available in selected markets.*

Downloading and installing the **Route Planner** smartphone app:

1. Search for and download the **Route Planner** smartphone app from the Apple App Store® or Google Play™ store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Route Planner** smartphone app icon.

Note: *To sign in to the **Route Planner** smartphone app, use the same email address and password used to set up the InControl account. See **309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.*

Note: *Apple® and iPhone® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store® is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google™, Android™, and Google Play™ store is a registered trademark of Google LLC.*

SATELLITE VIEWS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

The satellite views feature provides an overhead map view of the vehicle's surroundings.

Note: *If the satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.*

FUEL PRICES SERVICE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When a fuel station is selected during a Points Of Interest (POI) search, the nearby fuel stations can be sorted according to the price of the fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

Note: *Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.*

Note: *In some markets, a relative price index is displayed instead of live fuel prices.*

COMMUTE MODE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

Commute mode allows for the navigation system to learn regular commutes and automatically advises the user of the expected journey time based on live and historical traffic movements without the user having to input a destination.

The navigation system learns the routes the user takes for a set destination and advises which of those is the quickest.

Note: *Commute mode can be enabled and disabled via the navigation settings menu. See* ***299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** .

Commute mode displays a highlighted route on the navigation map and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes become available for selection.

When the commute mode feature detects areas the driver regularly uses, the frequency of smart voice guidance reduces. See **299, NAVIGATION SETTINGS** .

PARKING SERVICE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

As the user approaches a destination, the navigation system displays available parking. Simply tap on the preferred car park. The navigation system updates to direct the user to it. Available parking and pricing information is also displayed for selected markets.

SAFETY CAMERAS

⚠WARNING

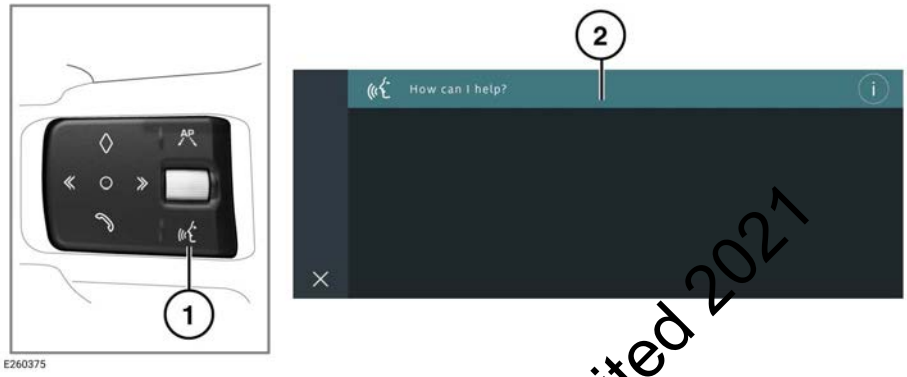
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the navigation system. See 292, NAVIGATION SAFETY .

The safety cameras feature provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras. Available in selected locations only.

Note: *Safety camera information is not available in all countries.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USING VOICE CONTROL



E260375

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

1. **Voice** button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.
   A voice session cancels, if:
   - A higher priority activity occurs.
   - The touchscreen displays a warning.
   - There is no user input for a sustained length of time.
2. Command list: Is displayed on the touchscreen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.

   The related screen is displayed, when the spoken instructions are understood. The voice session can then continue either manually or by voice. The command bar, at the top of the screen, displays available commands at each stage of the conversation.

Touch the **Exit** icon[2] to cancel and exit the current voice session and continue manually.

To assist the operation of the voice control, speak the following commands at any time:

- Help.
- Cancel.
- Go back.
- Replay.

Note: *The voice system has been designed to recognise multiple languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system is compatible with every accent group within those languages.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Exit icon.[2]

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

Alternatively:

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the **TUTORIAL** soft key.

The voice tutorial can be canceled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say cancel.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalize the voice system. A single name can be used to call up a phone number or radio station.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, or **store radio voicetag**.
3. For radio, the user must be listening to the station they wish to create a voicetag for.

To manage voicetags:

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the **VOICETAGS** soft key.
3. Touch an available option.
4. Touch the **Delete** icon[1] to delete a voicetag.
5. Touch the **Edit** icon[2] to edit a voicetag.
6. Touch the **Home** icon[3] to return to the Home Screen.

The voice commands to dial, tune, edit, and delete voicetags can be found in the voice command list. See **305, USING VOICE CONTROL**.



Delete icon.[1]



Edit icon.[2]



Home icon.[3]

VOICE SETTINGS

Voice settings gives the options for enabling, disabling or adjusting the settings of available features.

1. Touch the **VOICE** icon in the Apps screen. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Touch the **settings** icon.[1]
3. Touch the **VOICE SETTINGS** soft key.



Settings icon.[1]

The following settings options are displayed:

1. **Voice Feedback**: Toggle **On** or **Off**.

   Note: *Alternatively, briefly press the* ***voice*** *button and say* ***voice feedback on*** *or* ***voice feedback off****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. **Voice Interrupt**: Toggle **On** or **Off** to enable/disable interrupting the audible prompts from the voice system.
3. **Wake Word**: Toggle **On** or **Off** and adjust wake word options.

Wake word

With wake word activated it is possible to start a voice session with a spoken phrase. The default phrase is **Hey Land Rover**, it is also possible to set a custom wake word.

To set a custom wake word:

- Touch **My Wake Word** via the voice settings menu.
- A speech session is initiated, follow the on screen instructions to set a custom wake word.
- Upon successful completion the system will repeat the wake word back.
- If the wake word is unsuccessful, voice feedback will be provided and the settings screen is displayed.

Once a custom wake word is set additional options are available:

- **Remind Me**: touch to replay wake word.
- **Delete Wake Word**: touch to delete the custom wake word.

Media search

Preferences for media voice search results can be adjusted via the voice settings menu. Touch to toggle **Show Online** and **Show Embedded** search options on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

INCONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the InControl features on the vehicle or smartphone. Failing to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

⚠WARNING

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

⚠WARNING

Drivers should use the smartphone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle technology to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

InControl features include:

- **InControl Remote** smartphone app: The app features allow the user to remotely find information about the vehicle's health and status on the smartphone. The smartphone app also displays vehicle information, including the fuel level, range, and the odometer value. For further information on the available app features, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**. See **310, INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP**.
- **SOS Emergency Call**: If the vehicle is involved in an accident and the air bags deploy, SOS emergency call sends information to the emergency services, including location, as well as connecting the user by phone. See **312, SOS EMERGENCY CALL** .
- **Optimized Land Rover Assistance**: If the vehicle breaks down, the user can make a direct call to the Land Rover assistance team by pressing the **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** button. Alternatively, the user can make a direct call from the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. See **312, OPTIMIZED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE** .
- **Stolen Vehicle Locator**: Assists with locating the user's stolen vehicle. See **313, STOLEN VEHICLE LOCATOR** .
- **Pivi Pro**: A selection of features that are available to enhance the navigation system. For further information on **Pivi Pro**, please refer to the navigation section of the Owner's Handbook. See **302, PIVI PRO FEATURES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- **Online Pack**: Contains a range of embedded live applications that are displayed directly on the touchscreen. Online pack features do not require the physical connection of a smartphone to the vehicle. Online pack offers an expanding range of third party live applications, including online media, weather, and agenda information. See **313, ONLINE PACK** and **231, ONLINE MEDIA**.
- **Wi-Fi Enabled with Data Plan**: Provides in-vehicle access to cellular internet, enabling wireless devices in the vehicle. For further information, please refer to the connectivity section of the Owner's Handbook. See **315, HOTSPOT**.
- **Android Auto**: Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's Android phone. For further information on **Android Auto**, please refer to the phone section of the Owner's Handbook. See **288, ANDROID AUTO**.
- **Apple CarPlay**: Allows for the vehicle's multimedia system to display and control the user's iPhone. For further information on **Apple CarPlay**, please refer to the phone section of the Owner's Handbook. See **288, APPLE CARPLAY**.

INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP

InControl features, such as the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, **Optimized Land Rover Assistance**, and **Online Pack** require an InControl account.

Some InControl features are subscription services. The subscription for these features can be extended after the initial term has expired. For further information, please contact the retailer/authorized repairer.

An InControl account may have been registered by the retailer/authorized repairer. Please click on the link from the InControl email sent by the retailer/authorized repairer which takes the user to the InControl website and follow the on-screen instructions.

If no activation email has been received, please check the email spam folder. Alternatively, contact the retailer/authorized repairer.

To register, connect, and activate an InControl account, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: **https://incontrol.landrover.com**. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Note: *When an InControl account is set up, the user of the account creates a PIN. The PIN is required for certain InControl features.*

Note: *The owner is responsible for removing the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.*

For further information, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. For compatibility information on Apple or Android smartphones, please refer to the relevant app download page from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.*

InControl Remote smartphone app

To use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app, first download the app to a smartphone.

To download and install the launcher app:

1. Search for and download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **InControl Remote** smartphone app icon.
3. Sign in to the **InControl Remote** smartphone app using the InControl account details. See **309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

INCONTROL REMOTE SMARTPHONE APP

Note: *The availability and functionality of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

Note: *For further information, refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**.*

In order to use the **InControl Remote** smartphone app features, complete the following steps:

1. Create an InControl account. See **309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.
2. Download the **InControl Remote** smartphone app to a smartphone. See **310, DOWNLOADING AND INSTALLING SMARTPHONE APPS** .

Available features within the **InControl Remote** smartphone app:

Vehicle Location

A map display of the vehicle's parked location and the user's current location.

Vehicle Status

Displays the latest status of vehicle alerts such as a low engine oil level. Each status gives an indication of the health of each alert as well as offering advice on how to resolve any alerts.

Beep & Flash

Locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding an alert.

Note: *The driver is responsible for complying with all regulations in force for a specific country, regarding the use of vehicle horns.*

Vehicle Security

Displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows. **Vehicle Security** also displays the locked and unlocked status of the vehicle.

Vehicle Security allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message.

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *If any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely, unless the window is closed. In some markets, remote closing of the windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 40 seconds if no door or aperture is opened.

Note: *The driver is responsible for knowing the location of the vehicle and for making sure that the vehicle is secured.*

Remote Climate

Remote Climate allows the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle to be started remotely, and to run for up to 30 minutes. The **Remote Climate** feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **engine start** icon on the **Remote Climate** section of the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. A target temperature can be set.

Remote Climate does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked and alarmed.
- A window, door, hood, or the taildoor is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with a required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring center.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (**P**).
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed.

Note: *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. The driver is responsible for knowing if this function can legally be used.*

Remote Seats

The InControl Remote smartphone app allows the user to adjust the position of rear seats, arm-rest, and ski-hatch in advance of entering the vehicle.

Note: *The InControl Remote smartphone app only allows electric rear seat and head restraint movement if the vehicle is locked.*

Note: *The smartphone app operations depends on the vehicle specification.*

Journeys

Displays the most recently completed journeys over 1 mile in distance. Providing details of each journey from start to finish.

Note: *The* ***Journeys*** *feature can be enabled or disabled via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *section of the* ***InControl Remote*** *smartphone app, or on the My Land Rover InControl website at:* ***https://incontrol.landrover.com****.*

Note: *Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or exported as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.*

Assistance

Displays vehicle information such as the VIN number. Direct calls can be made to the **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center for breakdown assistance. In the event of a vehicle theft, direct calls can be made to the stolen vehicle monitoring call center.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *All calls are chargeable in accordance to mobile operator prices.*

Vehicle Settings

Provides the user access to specific vehicle settings and journey preferences.

SOS EMERGENCY CALL

There are two states of SOS emergency call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation, where the air bags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, owner details, vehicle details, and the problem are automatically sent to the call center. The appropriate emergency services are despatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the SOS emergency call button.



The SOS emergency call button is located in the overhead console, on the right side. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

To make a direct call to the emergency services:

1. Press and release the button's cover.
2. A red LED illuminates in the button.
3. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.
4. After use, push the button's cover back into place.

Note: *If the vehicle is traveling in a different country, the SOS emergency call may still connect. However, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent to the local provider.*

There is a single battery that maintains full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The battery is guaranteed for the vehicle's warranty period. If the battery requires replacement, the instrument panel displays a warning message. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for a replacement battery.

If a fault is detected with the SOS emergency call system, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

OPTIMIZED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE



The **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call button is located in the overhead console, on the left side. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown:

1. Press and release the button's cover.
2. A white LED illuminates in the button.
3. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center.
4. The button flashes until the call center answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow.
5. The vehicle's location, owner details, and vehicle details are automatically relayed to the call center.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

6. The **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center sends roadside assistance to the vehicle's location.
7. When the light flashes, push the button for 3 seconds to answer the call.
8. After use, push the button's cover back into place.

STOLEN VEHICLE LOCATOR

In the event that the vehicle is stolen:

1. First, contact the police and file a police report.
2. Contact the stolen vehicle monitoring center via the **InControl Remote** smartphone app. Alternatively, use the phone number on the InControl website, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com/incontrol**.
3. Provide the stolen vehicle monitoring center with the police report number.

The stolen vehicle monitoring center liaises with the police to pinpoint the exact location of the stolen vehicle. While tracking the vehicle, access to the **InControl Remote** smartphone app and the user's InControl account, is unavailable until the vehicle has been recovered.

ONLINE PACK

WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before operating the InControl features. See 308, INCONTROL SAFETY .

Note: *For applicable markets only,* ***Online Pack*** *offers a complimentary data plan during its subscription period to support unlimited use of third party live applications.*

Online Pack subscriptions provide access to a suite of live applications and can be accessed from the touchscreen apps menu. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.

Some live applications may require the user to link an existing InControl account from an associated service provider. To link an InControl account, complete the following steps:

1. Select **ACCOUNTS** from the apps screen menu. See **223, APPS SCREEN**.
2. Select the required user profile.
3. Select a provider from the available list.
4. Select **Email Me** to send a sign-in link to the user's email address.
5. Alternatively, scan the QR code on the screen, which leads to a page prompting login details.

Note: *The QR code can be scanned with the default camera app on iOS devices. On Android devices, an additional QR code reader application may need to be installed.*

Note: ***Online Pack*** *features require an active InControl account to log-in and manage preferences. See* ***309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP****.*

For further information about online media, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **231, ONLINE MEDIA**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW

Note: *The connectivity menu options may vary depending on the market and specification of the vehicle.*

The connectivity menu allows the user to connect a phone or audio device to the vehicle. The user can also connect the vehicle to the internet.

Note: *Internet connectivity requires a data-enabled embedded SIM card, or an in-range external Wi-Fi network.*

Note: *Only telematics features and software updates work over an external Wi-Fi network. Infotainment features do not operate over an external Wi-Fi network.*

The following methods allow for phone, audio, and internet connectivity:

- **Bluetooth**: Allows for pairing a device for phone and audio. See **283, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE** and **248, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.
- **Mobile Data**: Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network, or using a data-enabled embedded SIM card. See **314, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.
- **Hotspot**: Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle, to allow internet connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices, e.g., a tablet, laptop, or a smartphone. Also allows sharing of media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle. See **315, HOTSPOT**.
- **Wi-Fi**: Allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network. See **315, WI-FI CONNECTIVITY**.

Note: *The availability of **Mobile Data**, **Hotspot**, and **Wi-Fi** depends on the market and specification of the vehicle.*

Note: *Connectivity for **Online Pack with Data Plan** and **Wi-Fi Enabled with Data Plan** is provided by a third party provider. For more information go to: **www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms**.*

MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *Connected vehicles with no SIM card slot in the media hub have an embedded SIM card.*

Mobile data requires a vehicle with a data-enabled embedded SIM card.

To enable **Mobile Data**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Mobile Data**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.
4. When displayed, select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

Note: *Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See **316, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS**.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HOTSPOT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Note: *The availability of* ***Hotspot*** *depends on the market and the specification of the vehicle.*

Note: *The* ***Hotspot*** *feature requires a data-enabled embedded SIM card.*

Note: *Cellular connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.*

The **Hotspot** feature provides in-vehicle access to cellular internet, enabling wireless devices to be used in the vehicle. For details of the Fair Usage Policy associated with the **Hotspot** feature, please refer to the Land Rover website **www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms**.

To enable **Hotspot**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Hotspot**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To display and edit **Hotspot** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Touch **Hotspot**.

The **Hotspot** menu displays the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name, password, and frequency. The **Hotspot** name is computer generated by the vehicle and cannot be changed.

Note: *To enter a new password, touch the chevron next to the displayed password. Land Rover password strength standards will apply.*

To connect a device to the vehicle's **Hotspot**, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's **Hotspot** name on the device. Insert the password.

Note: *Some devices cannot receive 5GHz signals. To change the signal frequency between 2.4 and 5 GHz, use the selection buttons underneath the frequency header.*

WI-FI CONNECTIVITY

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings and cautions for touchscreen operation have been read and understood before using the touchscreen. See 216, TOUCHSCREEN SAFETY.

Wi-Fi allows for the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.

To enable **Wi-Fi**:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. **Wi-Fi**: Touch to switch the toggle on or off.

To display and edit **Wi-Fi** settings:

1. Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
2. Select **Connectivity**.
3. Touch **Wi-Fi**.

The **Wi-Fi** menu displays any Wi-Fi networks in range.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. If the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.

To connect to a known network, select the network from the list of known networks.

Note: *The vehicle will automatically connect to a known network with the best signal strength.*

To connect to a hidden network:

1. Select **Add network** from the network list.
2. Enter the **Network name**.
3. Enter the **Security type**.
4. Enter the **Password**.
5. Select **Connect**.

ABOUT CONNECTIVITY

About Connectivity displays information about the vehicles connections. The menu displays the vehicle's MAC Address, IMEI, ICCID, IMSI, MNO and APN.

Select **Reset Connectivity** to remove saved networks and restore default functionality.

CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

Note: *Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G and 4G connection is required.*

The following icons display the type of cellular and Wi-Fi connections:


Connecting.


E (edge) mobile network connectivity.


2G mobile network connectivity.


3G mobile network connectivity.


4G mobile network connectivity.


No mobile network connection.


Internet roaming.


When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **Cellular** icon.

The following icons display when software updates are available:


A software download is available.


To schedule a software download.


An important software download is required.

SOFTWARE UPDATES

Note: *In certain cases, the vehicle informs the user before an update, and outlines any preconditions the user must follow to make sure vehicle operation following the update. These can include requirements to drive the vehicle shortly after an update has been applied.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The vehicle may support the download and installation of over-the-air software updates. Over-the-air software allows certain components of the vehicle to be kept up to date without the need to visit a retailer/authorized repairer.

The ability to perform an update is simple and intuitive from within the vehicle's infotainment system.

When a new software update is available, and depending on internet connectivity, the vehicle automatically begins the download process with no interruption to the vehicle usage. On completion of the download, a notification displays on the touchscreen asking to begin the installation process.

Note: *Depending on the specification of the vehicle, software downloads may be requested to be done manually.*

Follow the on-screen prompt to start the installation process or schedule for a preferred time. A preferred time can be set via **Vehicle** and **Software Updates** menus in the touchscreen. See **225, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Note: *During installation the user can access the vehicle at any time, but it will not be able to start the vehicle.*

Upon successful completion of the update, an on-screen notification is displayed. Following the update, the current software version information is visible within the vehicle's infotainment system.

Note: *An update process can take up to an hour to complete.*

To complete a software update observe the following conditions:

- The vehicle has to be locked and alarmed to start the installation process.

  Note: *Once the installation is initiated, the vehicle may still be accessed, however it will not be possible to start the vehicle.*
- The vehicle has to be parked and stationary.
- The new software must be successfully downloaded to the vehicle.
- The vehicle needs cellular or Wi-Fi connectivity during the process of performing a software update. See **314, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**.
- The terms and conditions for the installation must be accepted.
- The vehicle update must not be interrupted, either by the vehicle owner or by loss of internet connectivity.
- The hazard warning lights, SOS emergency call, **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call, or stolen vehicle locator must not be active.
- The vehicle may need to be associated to an active InControl account. See **309, INCONTROL ACCOUNT SET UP**.

Note: *Availability of over-the-air updates may vary, depending on the market and vehicle specification. For further information go to:* ***www.landrover.com/pivi-pro-terms***.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuel and refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Make sure that following warnings have been read and understood. Failure to observe the warnings could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refueling.

⚠WARNING

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition.

⚠WARNING

Switch off the engine when refueling, as it is both a source of extreme temperature and electrical sparks.

⚠WARNING

When refueling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as cell phones or music players.

⚠WARNING

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠WARNING

The fuel system is designed to make sure that spillage does not occur. Do not attempt to fill the tank past its maximum capacity.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck. If the nozzle is inserted loosely, fuel spillage may occur.

⚠WARNING

When refueling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the panoramic roof are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel, and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them.

GASOLINE ENGINED VEHICLES

NOTICE

Use high quality fuel. Low quality fuel can damage the engine and reduce engine performance.

NOTICE

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based, or fuel additives. The vehicle's emission control systems can be adversely affected, which may affect the vehicle's warranty coverage.

NOTICE

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Inadequate cleaning agents may damage the fuel system.

OCTANE RATING

NOTICE

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI as severe engine damage may occur.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based or fuel additives. Doing so may adversely affect the vehicle's emission control systems and affect the vehicle's warranty.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (Anti-Knock Index). Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 87 AKI. Using a lower specification fuel may reduce the vehicle's performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and other driveability problems.

Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if engine knock is detected, while holding a steady speed on level roads. Also consult a retailer/authorized repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

Note: *An occasional, light engine knock when accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.*

Note: *Federal law requires that gasoline octane ratings be posted on the pumps.*

ETHANOL

NOTICE

Do not use fuels containing more than 15% ethanol. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause damage to engine components.

NOTICE

Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Fuels containing up to 15% ethanol may be used, e.g., E10 and E15.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers do not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If driveability issues are experienced, revert to using fuel containing no more than 10% ethanol. If the issues remain, use premium quality unleaded fuel instead.

METHANOL

NOTICE

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol. Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from gasoline. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

REFORMULATED GASOLINE

Reformulated gasoline is specially formulated to help further reduce the vehicle's exhaust emissions. The vehicle manufacturer fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain the ambient air quality, and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline, where available.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

NOTICE

Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel and emission control systems.

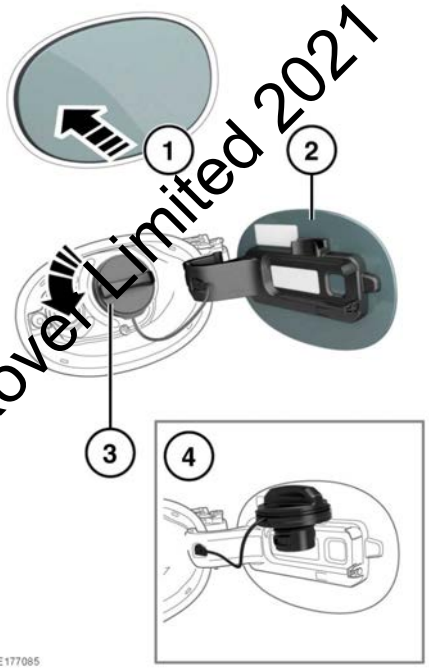
If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 1.1 U.S. gallons (4 L) is required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refueling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven 1 - 3 miles (1.6 - 5 km), in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

FUEL FILLER FLAP

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refueling the vehicle. See 318, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.



The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear. To operate, proceed as follows:

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the filler cap counter-clockwise to undo.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

4. Use the retaining clip to keep the filler cap out of the way while fueling.

When replacing the filler cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

FUEL FILLER

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before refueling the vehicle. See 318, SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.

NOTICE

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause permanent damage to engine components.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refueling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **404, CAPACITIES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BREAKING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still settle in relative to each other. The breaking-in process occurs mainly in the first 2 000 mi (3 000 km) of operation.

During the breaking-in period of 2 000 mi (3 000 km), observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not fully press the accelerator pedal.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid operating the engine in too high a gear at low engine speeds (laboring).
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid extended operation at high engine speeds with abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving. Where possible, allow the engine to reach operating temperature.
- Longer journeys are more helpful during the breaking-in period.
- Do not participate in off-road driving, competition driving, track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)

⚠WARNING

With reference to US legislation relating to Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerants, J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile Air Conditioning (A/C) Systems (HFO-1234yf) states that under no circumstances should any part of the A/C system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times. Failure to adhere to the above may result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠WARNING

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard (J2842). Contact a retailer/ authorized repairer for advice. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death.

The following symbols may be used on an under-hood label and are relevant to the refrigerant fluid:



A/C symbol.



Lubricant symbol.



Caution.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service A/C.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lights, horn, turn signals, wipers, washers, and warning lamps.
- Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Windshield washer fluid level.
- Tire pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C) system.

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 122°F (50°C).
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather down to -40°F (-40°C).
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

NOTICE

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction, which increases the risk of theft.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

AIR BAG SYSTEM

⚠WARNING

The components that make up the air bag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference. Electrical and/or physical interference could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the air bag module. Air bags should only be repaired by an authorized repairer. If the air bags are not repaired correctly, they may not operate correctly during a collision, which may lead to serious injury or death.

To prevent malfunction of the air bag system, always consult a retailer/ authorized repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio, or in-vehicle entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the air bag system components. The components include the steering wheel, steering column and instrument and dashboard panels.
- Any modification to the dashboard panels or steering wheel.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

⚠WARNING

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous. Doing so could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

⚠WARNING

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE standards. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice. Failure to adhere to the above may lead to serious injury or death.



The extremely flammable symbol may be used on an under-bonnet label. The symbol is relevant to the Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerant fluid.

The symbol identifies flammable chemicals that have low flash and boiling points, and gases that catch fire when exposed to air.

Jaguar Land Rover Limited accepts no liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, occurring as a direct result of non-approved modifications. These modifications include but are not limited to: fitment of non-approved accessories, and the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practiced by retailers/ authorized repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

⚠WARNING

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, or cooling system components until the engine has cooled. Handling any of these components when hot may cause personal injury.

⚠WARNING

Never leave the engine running when the vehicle is in a garage. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

⚠WARNING

Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support. The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. To avoid injury, always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped. Always pay attention to fans in operation to avoid personal injury.

⚠WARNING

Remove metal wristbands and jewelry, before working in the engine compartment. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition turned on. Doing so may result in electric shock.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals. Such contacts may result in serious personal injury or death.

POISONOUS FLUIDS

⚠WARNING

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. Vehicle fluids may cause serious injuries or infection, which can result in death.

For safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USED ENGINE OIL

⚠WARNING

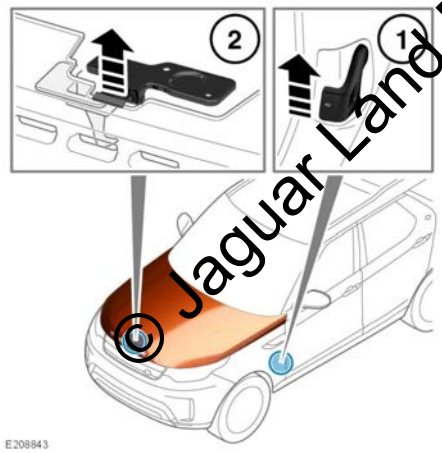
Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

Pollution of drains, waterways, or soil is illegal. Use authorized waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

OPENING THE HOOD

⚠WARNING

Before opening the hood, make sure that the ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle. Failure to do so can potentially result in serious injury or death.



E208843

To open the hood:

1. Pull the hood release handle, located in the driver's side front footwell.
2. Lift the hood safety catch, located underneath the center of the hood. Raise the hood.

CLOSING THE HOOD

⚠WARNING

Before closing the hood, make sure that no-one is obstructing the closing area and that hands and clothes are clear. The closing hood may cause serious injuries.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive with the hood secured by the safety catch alone. If the hood opens while driving, it may lead to a collision, which may cause serious injuries or death.

⚠WARNING

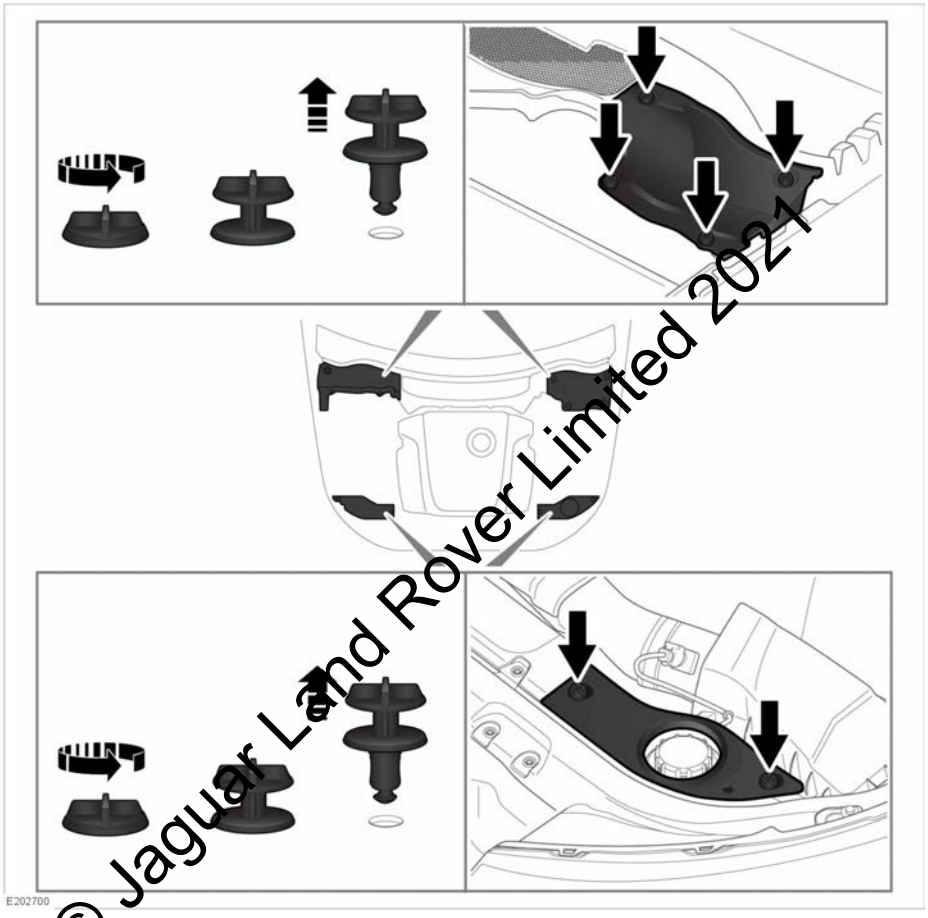
When closing the hood, make sure to stand in front of the vehicle. Do not attempt to close the hood while standing at the side of the vehicle. Doing so may result in incorrect latching of the hood, which may cause serious injuries or death.

To close the hood:

1. Using both hands, lower the hood and let it drop from a height of between 8 to 20 in (20 to 50 cm).
2. Try to lift the front edge of the hood, near both corners, to check that it is securely engaged.
3. If the hood lifts slightly, it is not properly latched. Open the hood again, and with a little more force, try again to close it.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Release and remove the turnbuckle clips securing the cover.
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide forwards to remove.

UNDER-HOOD COVERS REFITTING

NOTICE

Before refitting the under-bonnet covers, make sure that no pipes, cables, or other items have been trapped between the cover and the casing.

To refit the under-bonnet covers:

1. Place the cover over the casing. Make sure that the holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly. Rotate the turnbuckle clips clockwise to fasten.

FUEL SYSTEM

⚠WARNING

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician. If any parts are replaced by an unqualified person, this may cause interference in the operation of the vehicle, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment. A spark may cause an explosion, which may lead to serious injuries or death.

⚠WARNING

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

If fuel odor is detected, switch off the vehicle and exit as soon as possible. Contact a suitably qualified vehicle technician. Failure to do so could lead to serious injuries or death.

CHANGING A BULB

⚠WARNING

Do not attempt to change any bulb with the lighting switched on. If the lighting has just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool down. Handling them in a hot condition may cause personal injury.

NOTICE

All lights that are either LED or xenon units must only be replaced by a retailer/ authorized repairer.

NOTICE

Before attempting to replace a bulb, make sure that both the affected light and the vehicle's ignition are switched off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

NOTICE

Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice.

Note: *In certain places it is a legal requirement to carry spare bulbs. A replacement bulb kit is available as an approved accessory from a retailer/ authorized repairer.*

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the hood, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

Note: *The smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being replaced.*

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.*

Note: *Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the vehicle's ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the vehicle's ignition again. The wipers move to the service position. See **97, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the vehicle's ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET

The fixed panoramic roof blinds need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or power supply is interrupted.

1. Switch on the engine.
2. With the blinds closed, press the front of the front blind switch and hold it for 10 seconds. See **108, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
3. After 10 seconds, the front and rear blinds fully close. If already in the closed position, an audible click is heard. Release the switch. Within 5 seconds, re-press and hold the front of the front blind switch until the blinds complete a full open and close cycle.
4. Once the rear blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The blinds can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

SUNROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted while the sunroof is partially open, it may need to be recalibrated.

Once the battery is reconnected or the power supply is restored, recalibrate the sunroof as follows:

1. Switch on the engine.
2. With the roof and blinds closed, press the front of the roof switch and hold for 10 seconds. See **108, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. After 10 seconds, the sunroof and blinds fully close. If already in the closed position, an audible click is heard. Release the switch. Within 5 seconds, press and hold the front of the roof switch until the blinds and roof complete a full open and close cycle.

   Note: *The front blind opens first and the rear blind closes last.*

4. Once the rear blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof can now be operated as normal.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

THE EXTERIOR

⚠WARNING

Make sure the tail pipe is cool before polishing the tail pipe finishers. Failure to do so may result in personal injury.

NOTICE

After cleaning the vehicle's exterior, particularly with a pressure washer, the vehicle should be taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes. A short drive, in order to dry out the brakes, is especially recommended if a pressure washer is used. Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down which may result in damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a detailing service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

NOTICE

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints, door/window seals and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at any cameras, the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals (doors, sunroof, windows, etc.) or at any components which may be damaged (lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc.). Make sure the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 12 ins (300 mm) from any component of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area as it may cause damage.

NOTICE

Make sure you read and comply with all warnings and product instructions supplied with any cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

NOTICE

Never use cleaning products that are not approved for use on vehicles. Using unapproved cleaning products may cause damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

NOTICE

*When lifting the wiper blades for cleaning, use the Winter park position to avoid damage to the vehicle. See **100, WINTER PARK POSITION**.*

After washing the vehicle, it is recommended to use a suitable metal polish on stainless steel or chrome finishers to restore the surface appearance.

Make sure that the sunroof channels are kept clean to allow continued smooth operation of the mechanism.

Satin matte paint

NOTICE

The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of specialized satin paint products when cleaning the vehicle's exterior. Any other cleaning or paint protection product may have an adverse effect on the paint finish.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Never polish vehicles that have a satin matte paint finish. Polishing causes the finish to shine and may reduce the matte effect.

NOTICE

Do not use an automated car wash. Using unapproved cleaning equipment can cause damage to the vehicle's exterior.

NOTICE

Stickers, films, magnetic plates, or similar should not be affixed to the vehicle's exterior. Removing such objects can cause damage to the vehicle's paint work.

Additional care is required when cleaning the exterior of vehicles with a satin matte paint finish. It is recommended to wash the vehicle by hand, using a soft sponge, making sure not to apply high pressure to the paint surface. Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.

Remove any of the following substances immediately, where possible:

- Insect remains.
- Bird droppings.
- Fingerprints.
- Tree resin.
- Oils, grease, and fuels.
- Wax.
- Tar spots.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

NOTICE

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Using unapproved cleaning equipment or method can cause damage to the sensors and cameras.

Park assist and parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

Operate the rear screen wash to clean the rear camera lens. See **97, WIPER OPERATION**.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

NOTICE

Commercially-operated, automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops are not recommended. Using such cleaning equipment can cause damage to the vehicle.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the under body with plain, clean water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a Retailer/ Authorized Repairer as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

NOTICE

Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment. Using unapproved cleaning equipment can cause damage to certain engine components.

NOTICE

Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir. Using unapproved cleaning methods can cause damage to the vehicle.

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

⚠WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with damaged wheels. Driving with damaged wheels can lead to the loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

If any damage is found, or suspected, to any of the brake components or wheels, have the vehicle checked by a retailer or authorized repairer as soon as possible. Driving with damaged wheels can lead to the loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Blocked, displaced, or damaged brake cooling ducts will reduce the on-road braking performance. Have the vehicle checked by a retailer or authorized repairer as soon as possible. Not doing so may result in accidents potentially causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille, radiator pack, and intercoolers. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Make sure the vehicle, including the underbody, is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

For vehicles fitted with air suspension, raise the suspension to **Off-Road 2** to improve cleaning access. See **148, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT**.

NOTICE

Make sure all mud and debris is removed from the rear air spring. Failure to do so may lead to permanent damage to the air spring sleeve.

Make sure that the areas around the wheel and brake assemblies are clean and clear of debris. Inspect the wheel rims for signs of damage or scoring, and check for unusual brake noise when driving and applying the brakes.

ALLOY WHEELS

NOTICE

Use only approved wheel cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

THE INTERIOR

⚠CAUTION

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly. Some cleaning products may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a detailing service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

NOTICE

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.

NOTICE

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls. Liquids leaking into the gaps around switches and controls can damage the electronics of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

NOTICE

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components. Using unapproved cleaning equipment may damage the vehicle.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

⚠WARNING

Do not polish the Instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view. Driving with an obstructed view may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

Clean plastic or cloth-faced surfaces with warm water and non-detergent soap, and then wipe clean with a soft cloth.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

NOTICE

Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products, which are not approved, will invalidate the warranty. If in any doubt as to which products to use, consult an retailer/ authorized repairer.

NOTICE

Some materials or fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discoloration of lighter colored leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.

Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every 6 months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly, and clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-colored cloth. Avoid over-wetting the leather.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Land Rover leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturize and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects, such as belts, zippers, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather's surface.
- Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a detailing service is used, make sure that the detailer is aware of and follows, these instructions precisely.

SEAT BELTS

⚠WARNING

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

Note: *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by a retailer/authorized repairer.*

AIR BAG MODULE COVERS

⚠WARNING

Air bag covers should be cleaned using only a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner. Some cleaning products may cause damage to air bag covers and air bags which can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow the air bag covers, or surrounding areas, to become contaminated with liquids. Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an air bag during an impact and may cause serious injury or death.

CARPET AND MATS

⚠WARNING

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal, which can result in accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

⚠WARNING

Do not polish the instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view. An obstructed view can lead to an accident, potentially causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as buttons, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim. Liquids leaking into the gaps around electrical equipment can damage the electronics of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as facia buttons. Using unapproved cleaning products can cause damage to electrical equipment.

- Clean with the cloth provided with the vehicle.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

WIPER BLADES

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm. Not doing so may result in damage to the wiper blade.

NOTICE

Do not use excessive pressure. Excessive pressure on the wiper blades can damage the blades.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed, using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

BLOCKED WASHER JETS

⚠CAUTION

Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windshield washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet, by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly, and, if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

⚠WARNING

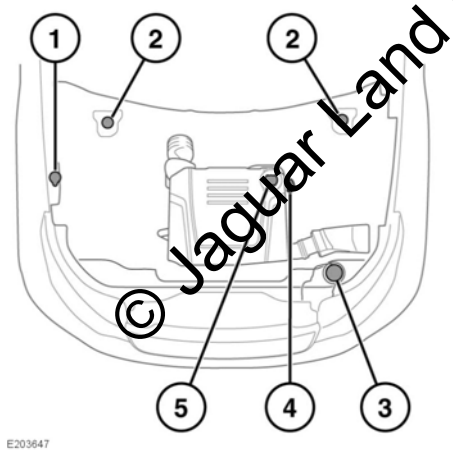
While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 325, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE.

⚠WARNING

Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if leaked fluid could possibly make contact with a hot surface. Any leaked fluid coming into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust, could result in combustion. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

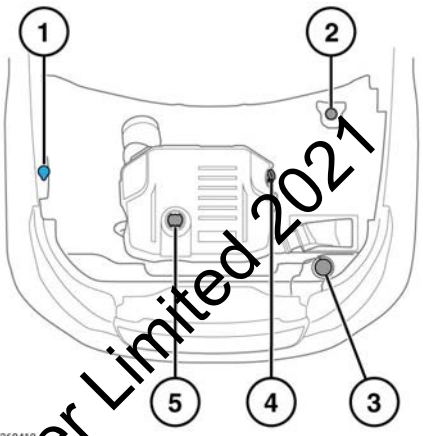
A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See **323, WEEKLY CHECKS**.

2.0L gasoline engine



1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.

3.0L gasoline engine



1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

NOTICE

Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

NOTICE

Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick or the oil level indicator.

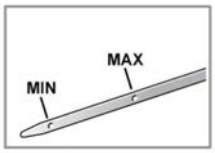
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

If the instrument panel displays the message ***ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW****, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allowing the engine to continue running with low oil pressure may cause the engine to seize. Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.*

Check the engine oil level frequently. Top up, as required, using the correct grade for the engine.

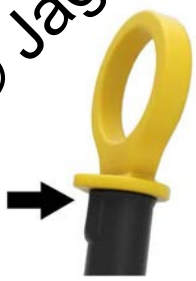
Engines with a dipstick



E181178

Note: *The graphic shown above is for illustrative purposes only.*

The dipstick features minimum and maximum marks in order to enable determine the oil level present in the engine. The marks can take the form of holes, lines or a hatched area.



E268652

NOTICE

The dipstick on 2.0L gasoline and diesel engines features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

  Note: *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine. Let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully reinsert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.



E268653

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If the oil level lies within the hatched portion on the dipstick blade, do not add any more oil.

There is no requirement to top-up the oil unless the oil is at or below the lower mark.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1 L of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

Engine without a dipstick

Engines without a dipstick features an electronic engine oil monitoring system. The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running, or when the vehicle is in motion.

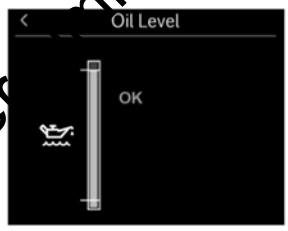
Before checking the oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil has reached its normal working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes, as the system does not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilized.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

- Switch on the ignition. Do not start the engine. See **137, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
- Select **Oil Level** from the **Vehicle Info** menu. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

The instrument panel displays the engine oil level indicator.



The indicator displays an indication of the oil level. Messages to the right of the indicator advise of any action to be taken.

Message	Action
OK	No action required.
Overfilled	Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle as this will cause serious damage to the engine.
Low	Add 1.6 U.S. quarts (1.5 liters) of oil. Recheck the level.
Critically Low	Seek qualified assistance immediately.
Add XX Quarts	Add the advised quantity of oil to the engine. Recheck the level.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Message	Action
Not Available	The oil level is stabilizing. Switch off the ignition. Wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.
ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT	Seek qualified assistance immediately.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

NOTICE

The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification. See ***403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

NOTICE

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. A resultant cause, could be engine failure.

NOTICE

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

NOTICE

Use of the correct oil specification is essential. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. Add oil, as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the instrument panel.
3. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
4. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
5. To refit the oil filler cap, turn the cap clockwise until a resistance is felt.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

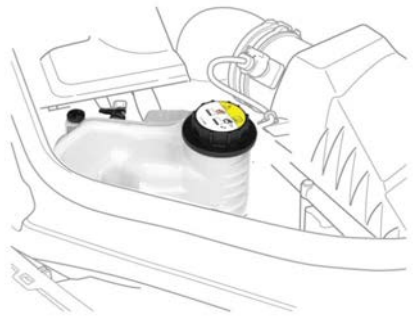
NOTICE

Running the engine without coolant causes serious engine damage.

NOTICE

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Check the coolant reservoir level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.



E151133

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks, located on the side of the expansion tank.

If steam is expelled from the pressure cap, the vehicle must be examined by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

If the coolant level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

⚠WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury. Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

⚠WARNING

Antifreeze is highly flammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition, e.g., a hot engine. A fire may result.

⚠WARNING

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

⚠WARNING

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

NOTICE

When traveling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

NOTICE

*The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability. See **403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

NOTICE

Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

NOTICE

Do not use any anti-leak products in the cooling system, as it causes damage to the vehicle.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% to 60% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. The antifreeze should be completely replaced every 10 years, regardless of the distance traveled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 68°F (20°C) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°F (-40°C).

To top up the coolant:

1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

NOTICE

*Make sure that the correct mixture of water and antifreeze is used. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle. See **403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

***Note:** In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*

3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

⚠WARNING

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

⚠WARNING

Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

⚠WARNING

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

⚠WARNING

Brake fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames, a hot engine, or other sources of ignition. A fire may result.

⚠WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.

***Note:** If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits, by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.



The driver's side under-bonnet cover must be removed to check the brake fluid level. See **338, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **327, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL**. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note: *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.*

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

NOTICE

*Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **403, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

NOTICE

Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

NOTICE

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

NOTICE

Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake fluid:

1. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
3. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
4. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.
5. Refit the under-hood cover. See **327, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REFITTING**.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

⚠WARNING

Some windshield washer products are flammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windshield washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 40°F (4°C), use a windshield washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windshield washer fluid with frost protection could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

NOTICE

Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windshield washer pump.

NOTICE

Body panels may suffer discoloration as a result of windshield washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

NOTICE

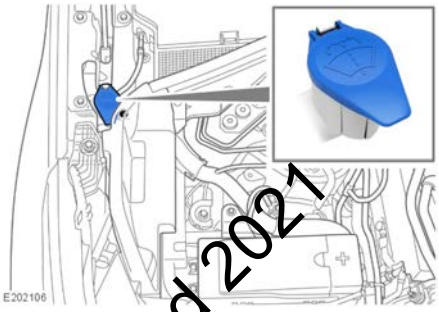
Only use approved windshield washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windshield, rear window and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with windshield washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID



To top up the washer fluid reservoir, remove the relevant filler cap. The washer fluid reservoir is located under-hood on the right side of the vehicle. See **338, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

The washer reservoir supplies the windshield, rear window and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with windshield washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer buttons periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

Cold climate vehicles also feature a supplemental washer reservoir. The same care points, described above, should be applied to vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fluid level checks

Note: *On vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir, always check and top up the main reservoir first.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, that suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information, before handling the battery.

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 SECOND WARNING STATEMENT

⚠WARNING

Batteries, Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

BATTERY CARE

⚠DANGER

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with skin, eyes or clothes. Battery electrolyte is both toxic and corrosive, which can result in severe injuries. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with skin, eyes or clothes, remove the affected clothing. Flush the skin or eyes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance immediately. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Do not connect any 12V equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. A spark or an explosion may cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle battery

⚠WARNING

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas. An open flame or sparks may cause a fire or explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so may result in an explosion, potentially leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion. A spark or an explosion may cause serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. The posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery. Excessive exposure to lead may cause long-term illness.

NOTICE

Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with plenty of clean water. Failure to do so may result in damage to the affected surface.

An Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery is fitted to the vehicle.

NOTICE

AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance. Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery. Doing so can cause damage to the battery.

***Note:** If the vehicle is not being used regularly, make sure that the 12V battery remains connected, and in a sufficiently charged state, during the storage period.*

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

⚠WARNING

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

⚠WARNING

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash the hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

⚠WARNING

Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on the vehicle. Doing so can cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. Doing so will also result in damage to the charging system.

⚠WARNING

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

⚠WARNING

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

⚠WARNING

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) is selected. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery. Battery acid can cause serious injury to eyes.

⚠WARNING

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

NOTICE

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

NOTICE

Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device. Unapproved devices can cause damage to the vehicle.

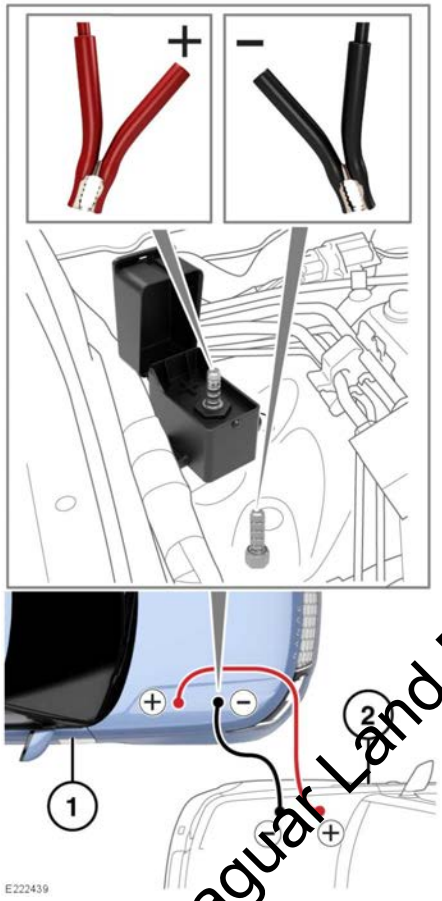
NOTICE

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

Note: *Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle battery



1. Disabled vehicle.
2. Donor vehicle.

To connect the jumper cables:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the recommended positive (**+**) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.*

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (**+**) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.
3. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the recommended negative (**-**) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.*

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the negative (**-**) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

   Note: *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all jour connections are secure.*

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

   Note: *Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.*

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a booster battery, carry out the following:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the vehicle's positive (+) boost point terminal.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

NOTICE

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/ authorized repairer.

Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

⚠WARNING

Make sure to use the correct type and rating of charger. Using an unsuitable charger may damage the battery, and could cause the battery to explode. An explosion may lead to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Charging the battery can produce a highly explosive and flammable gas. Always charge the battery in a well ventilated area away from any open flames, sparks or other ignition sources. Failure to do so may lead to an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

NOTICE

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/ authorized repairer. An unqualified person may cause damage to the vehicle.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorized repairer.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

⚠WARNING

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

⚠WARNING

Only fit a battery of the same type and rating. Fitting an incorrect battery may result in a fire and injury, or damage to the electrical system. If in doubt when fitting a battery, seek qualified assistance.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle battery

⚠WARNING

When refitting the battery make sure that no metal objects, or vehicle components, come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.

⚠WARNING

Switch the ignition off before disconnecting the battery terminals. Failure to do so may lead to an electrical shock or an explosion, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/ authorized repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorized repairer or the local authority.

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key, in the normal way, to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

⚠WARNING

Only start the engine if it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may lead to a collision, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touchscreen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the instrument panel.

- **Energy Management**: Is displayed in the instrument panel if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

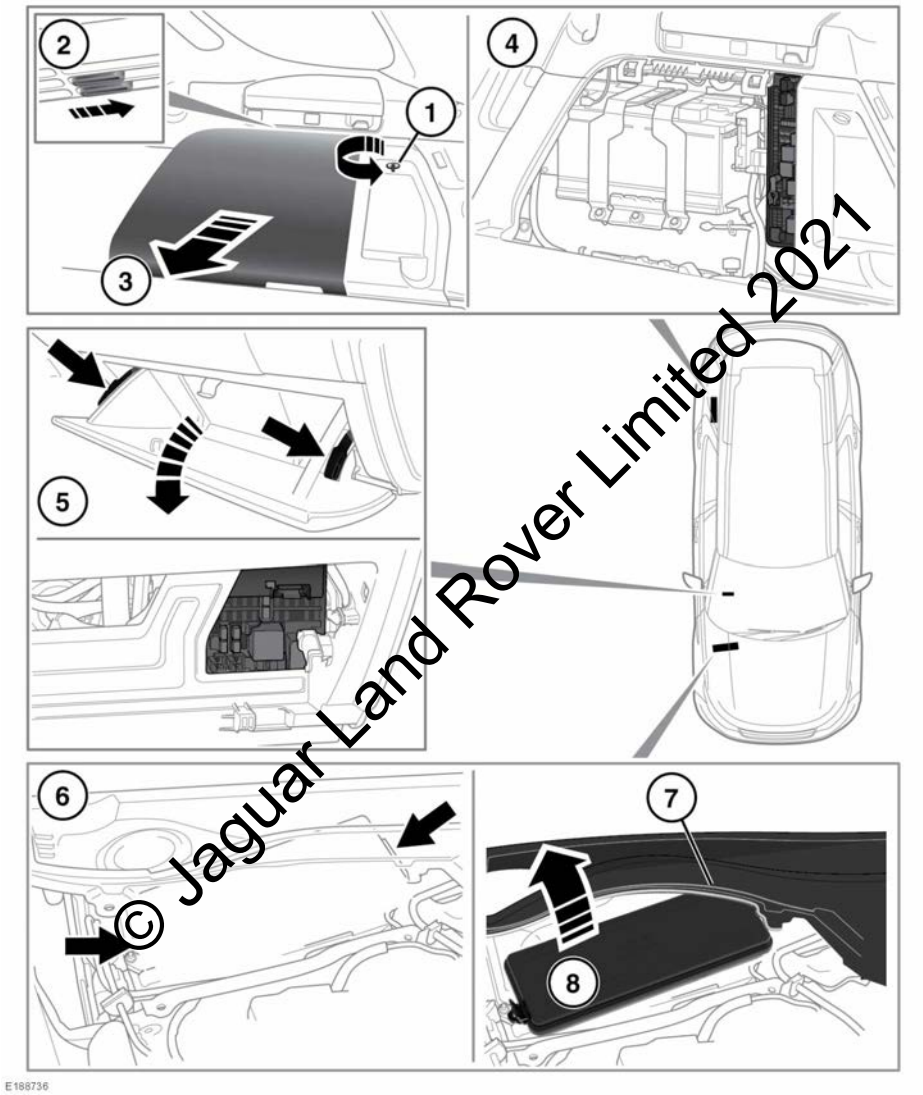
- **Low battery - Please start engine**: Is displayed on the touchscreen and in the instrument panel, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

Note: *If the instrument panel displays* ***Low Battery - Please Start Engine****, drive the vehicle to allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. Drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 32°F (0°C), or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 32°F (0°C). If normal system operation does not resume when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

Access can be gained to the fuses, as follows:

1. Loadspace fuse box: Turn the catch 90° counter-clockwise and remove the rear access panel.
2. Slide the top catch rearward.
3. Grasp the top of the forward access panel, and remove by pulling sharply.
   - When refitting the access panel, make sure the securing pegs are aligned with the respective holes before pushing the panel fully home. The refit procedure is the reverse of the removal procedure.
4. A label, located to the side of the fuse box, shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
5. Passenger compartment fuse box: Open the glovebox. See **101, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**. Firmly press the top of the support stay at each end and lower the glovebox into the footwell. A label on the front of the fuse access panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations. Remove the panel to gain access to the fuses.
6. Engine compartment fuse box: Remove the under-hood cover. See **327, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL**.
7. Lift up the edge of the leaf screen panel just enough to allow removal of the fuse box cover.
8. Remove the fuse box cover, by releasing the clips on each end. A label on the inside of the cover shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.

REPLACING A FUSE

NOTICE

Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit before replacing a fuse. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

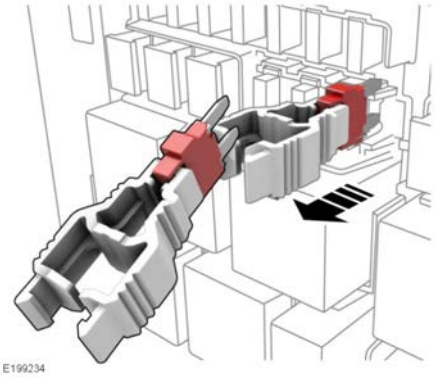
NOTICE

Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

NOTICE

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer. Further damage could be caused to the vehicle if ignored.

Note: *Relays and fuses not detailed in the Owner's Handbook should only be replaced by qualified persons.*



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

If an electrical system has stopped operating, the cause may be a blown fuse. The easiest way to check if a fuse has blown is to first remove it.

To check for a blown fuse:

1. Refer to the fuse box tables shown in this section to identify the correct fuse.
2. Gain access to the appropriate fuse box. See **354, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
3. Refer to the fuse box label to locate the correct fuse. Depending on the fuse box, the label is located on the underside of the lid.
4. Use the fuse removal tool to remove the fuse. See **354, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
5. Check for a break in the wire within the fuse. If the wire within the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown and needs replacing. If the wire is still intact, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.
6. Refit or replace the fuse, as appropriate. Make sure the fuse is pushed fully into its correct position.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	10	Red.	Hybrid system.
2	-	-	-
3	-	-	-
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	-	-	-
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	25	Clear.	Rear screen washer.
10	-	-	-
11	15	Blue.	Horn.
12	30	Green.	Right-side headlight washer pump.
13	30	Green.	Left-side headlight washer pump.
14	15	Blue.	Auto stop/start.
15	15	Blue.	Supercharger cooling.
16	25	Clear.	Windshield washer jets.
17	10	Red.	Engine management system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
18	20	Yellow.	Engine management system.
19	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
20	25	Clear.	Engine management system.
21	20	Yellow.	Engine management system.
22	10	Red.	Engine cooling fan.
23	10	Red.	Engine management system.
24	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
25	-	-	-
26	-	-	-
27	-	-	-
28	-	-	-
29	5	Tan.	Engine management system. Starter motor. Electrical power management.
30	-	-	-
31	20	Yellow.	Driveline module.
32	10	Red.	Steering wheel module.
33	5	Tan.	Transfer case.
34	5	Tan.	Hybrid system
35	5	Tan.	Headlight levelling.
36	10	Red.	Driver assistance systems module.
37	-	-	-
38	-	-	-
39	-	-	-
40	15	Blue.	Transmission. Terrain response switch. Gear selector.
41	-	-	-
42	25	Clear.	Left-side headlight.
43	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
44	25	Clear.	Right-side headlight.
45	-	-	-
46	-	-	-
47	-	-	-
48	-	-	-
49	5	Tan.	Engine management system.
50	-	-	-
51	10	Red.	Engine management system.
52	-	-	-
53	-	-	-
54	-	-	-
55	-	-	-
56	-	-	-
57	-	-	-
58	-	-	-
59	-	-	-
60	-	-	-

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	20	Yellow.	Front cigar lighter.
2	20	Yellow.	Front accessory socket.
3	20	Yellow.	Rear accessory socket.
4	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket.
5	5	Tan.	Phone signal compensor.
6	10	Red.	Third row climate and comfort systems.
7	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.
8	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
9	-	-	-
10	20	Yellow.	Glovebox accessory.
11	5	Tan.	Wireless charger.
12	20	Yellow.	Panoramic roof.
13	20	Yellow.	Panoramic roof.
14	5	Tan.	All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).
15	-	-	-
16	-	-	-
17	-	-	-
18	30	Green.	Passenger electric seat.
19	30	Green.	Left-side rear electric seat.
20	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door.
21	10	Red.	Cool box.
22	5	Tan.	Cooling fan.
23	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's electric seat.
24	25	Clear.	Driver's door switches. Driver's door soft-close.
25	-	-	-
26	10	Red.	Passenger's seat switches.
27	25	Clear.	Passenger's door switches. Passenger's door soft-close.
28	20	Yellow.	Driver's seat.
29	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door switches.
30	30	Green.	Panoramic roof.
31	5	Tan.	Auxiliary heater. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Radio Frequency (RF) receiver. Overhead console.
32	10	Red.	Rear USB socket.
33	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
34	-	-	-
35	5	Tan.	Brake pedal switch.
36	-	-	-
37	-	-	-
38	10	Red.	Driver assistance systems module.
39	10	Red.	Near Field Sensing Module (NFSM).
40	-	-	-
41	5	Tan.	Telematics.
42	-	-	-
43	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
44	5	Tan.	Steering wheel module.
45	10	Red.	Auxiliary roof lights.
46	15	Blue.	Climate control.
47	-	-	-
48	10	Red.	Driver facing camera.
49	5	Tan.	Vehicle immobilizer.
50	10	Red.	Head-Up Display (HUD).
51	-	-	-
52	5	Tan.	Air ionizer.
53	10	Red.	Driver's electric seat.
54	5	Tan.	Diagnostic socket.
55	-	-	-
56	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Cooling fan.
2	25	Clear.	Third row heated seats.
3	15	Blue.	Third row seat switches.
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	-	-	-
7	5	Tan.	Blind spot monitoring. Rear exit detection system.
8	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated seat.
9	15	Blue.	Driver's seat switches. Front passenger's seat switches.
10	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's heated seat.
11	20	Yellow.	Right-side rear heated seat.
12	15	Blue.	Rear seat switches.
13	20	Yellow.	Left-side rear heated seat.
14	20	Yellow.	Rear wiper.
15	30	Green.	Fuel system.
16	15	Blue.	Trailer socket.
17	-	-	-
18	20	Yellow.	Loadspace accessory power socket. Third row USB socket.
19	20	Yellow.	Auxiliary power socket.
20	20	Yellow.	Cubby box accessory socket.
21	10	Red.	USB floor console.
22	-	-	-
23	-	-	-
24	-	-	-
25	5	Tan.	Electronic air suspension.
26	2	Grey.	Electronic toll collection.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuses

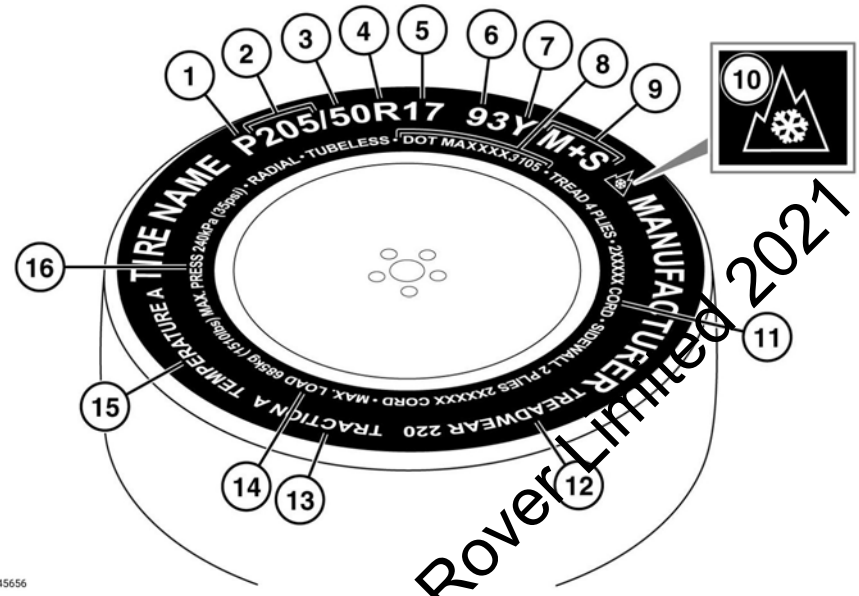
Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
27	10	Red.	Parking aid. Rear-view mirror. Cameras.
28	-	-	-
29	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
30	30	Green.	Heated rear screen.
31	10	Red.	Rear USB socket.
32	5	Tan.	Headphones.
33	-	-	-
34	5	Tan.	48v battery.
35	-	-	-
36	-	-	-
37	30	Green.	Driver's seat.
38	5	Tan.	Rear climate control switch pack.
39	30	Green.	Deployable side steps.
40	-	-	-
41	-	-	-
42	30	Green.	Rear right seat power.
43	20	Yellow.	Keyless locking.
44	15	Blue.	Trailer socket.
45	-	-	-
46	-	-	-
47	5	Tan.	Rear infotainment control.
48	10	Red.	Rear console.
49	10	Red.	Gesture tailgate.
50	15	Blue.	Entertainment and information systems.
51	15	Blue.	Entertainment and information systems.
52	10	Red.	Portable media.
53	10	Red.	Portable media.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
54	-	-	-
55	15	Blue.	Electronic air suspension.
56	10	Red.	Electronic air suspension. Continuous variable dampers.
57	5	Tan.	Keyless locking.
58	30	Green.	Front passenger's seat.
59	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TIRE MARKINGS



Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before replacing a tire. See **369, REPLACEMENT TIRES**.

⚠WARNING

All replacement tires must be the same specification as the original equipment tires, except for approved winter tires, off-road tires, and Professional Off-Road (POR) tires. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer. Failing to comply with these rules can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

1. **P** indicates that the tire is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, given in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. For example, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tire is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tire. The load index specifies the maximum load the tire can carry at the speed indicated by the tire's speed rating. The index is not always shown.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tire should be used for extended periods. See **365, SPEED RATINGS**.
8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): The TIN begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where the tire was manufactured. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number is 3109, the tire was made in the 31st week of 2009. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. The information can be used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tire has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The winter tires symbol identifies dedicated winter tires. See **371, USING WINTER TIRES**.
11. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area. The number of plies indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tire. Information is also provided on the type of material used.
12. Wear rate indicator: A tire rated at 400, e.g., lasts longer than a tire rated at 200.
13. The traction rating grades a tire's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest, are: **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.
14. The maximum load which can be carried by the tire.
15. Heat resistance grading: The tire's resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B**, or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tire which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
16. The maximum inflation pressure for the tire. The maximum inflation pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **370, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

Note: *Approved tires are generally identified by the brand mark J, LR, or J LR. Brand markings are specifically excluded for winter and POR tires.*

SPEED RATINGS

Rating	Speed mph (km/h)
Q	99 (160)
R	106 (170)
S	112 (180)
T	118 (190)
U	124 (200)
H	130 (210)
V	149 (240)
W	168 (270)
Y	186 (300)

TIRE CARE

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle if a tire is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated. A tire in such a condition may catastrophically fail and cause an accident.

⚠WARNING

Avoid contaminating the tires with vehicle fluids. Vehicle fluids may cause damage to the tire and cause a tire failure.

⚠WARNING

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tire and cause it to fail.

⚠WARNING

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction, e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed the 30 mph (50 km/h) point on the speedometer. Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly behind a tire that might spin.

⚠WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tire.

Note: *Tire condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard road surface, stop and check for damage to the tires.*

Check all of the vehicle's tires, including the spare, regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tire, have it checked immediately by a tire repair center or a retailer/authorized repairer.

TIRE PRESSURE SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Check the tires, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

⚠WARNING

All tire pressures, including the spare, should be checked. Failure to properly maintain the tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure.

⚠WARNING

The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting the tire pressures. Failure to do so may lead to a loss of control, potentially causing serious injury or death. See 368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL.

⚠WARNING

Always use a calibrated tire pressure gauge. Using an un-calibrated tire pressure gauge may result in tires with incorrect pressures. Incorrect tire pressure can lead to vehicle instability.

⚠WARNING

Never drive the vehicle if the tire pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tire wear, which can lead to sudden tire failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tire wear and poor handling.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

⚠WARNING

If the tire pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected, covered area, e.g., a garage, and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tire under-inflation could occur.

⚠WARNING

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 2 psi (0.14 bar, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

⚠WARNING

Pressure checks should be carried out ideally when the tires are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tire at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated. Tires can be hot after driving, if the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures. Do not reduce the tire pressures. Recheck the pressures when cold.

⚠WARNING

If the tire pressures are checked when the tires are warm, expect the pressures to have increased by up to 4 to 6 psi (0.3 to 0.4 bar, 30 to 40 kPa). If Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) advised pressures are not available in the instrument panel, allow the tires to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

For vehicles with TPMS it is possible to adjust the pressures of a warm tire, providing the advised pressures are used. See **380, TIRE PRESSURE CHECK**.

TIRE PRESSURES

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before checking and adjusting the tire pressures. See **366, TIRE PRESSURE SAFETY**.

For vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), inflate the tires to the advised pressures displayed in the instrument panel. The advised tire pressures are displayed in brackets in instrument panel. See **380, TIRE PRESSURE CHECK**.

Confirm that the TPMS loading setting is correct. See **381, VEHICLE LOADING**.

If the advised tire pressures are not available in the instrument panel, or if TPMS is not fitted, when the tires are cold, inflate to the recommended cold tire pressures. See the table below or the tire pressure label. See **368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

Tire inflation procedure

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways pressure on the gauge and/or inflator.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. Rigid tire inflation wands increase the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

The following procedure should be used to adjust the tire pressures:

1. Remove the tire valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tire pressure gauge and/or inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tire pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tire via a manual gauge, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. Refit the valve cap.

Tire pressures - All vehicles				
Tire size	**Light load**		**Normal load**	
	Front psi (bar, kPa)	**Rear psi (bar, kPa)**	**Front psi (bar, kPa)**	**Rear psi (bar, kPa)**
255/ 55R20 110W	34 (2.3, 230)	37 (2.5, 250)	44 (3.0, 300)	50 (3.4, 340)
275/ 45R21 110W	34 (2.3, 230)	37 (2.5, 250)	44 (3.0, 300)	50 (3.4, 340)
285/40R22 110Y	34 (2.3, 230)	37 (2.5, 250)	44 (3.0, 300)	50 (3.4, 340)
T195/ 70R20 116M	60 (4.2, 420)	60 (4.2, 420)	60 (4.2, 420)	60 (4.2, 420)

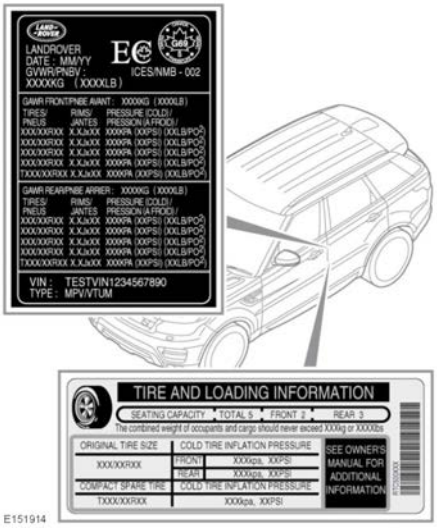
For the latest available information on the tire pressures visit: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

TIRE PRESSURE LABEL

The recommended tire pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

The pressures provide optimum ride and handling characteristics for all normal operating conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



The label contains the following information:

- The maximum number of occupants, divided between the front and rear of the vehicle.
- The vehicle capacity weight, which includes the weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo.
- Cold inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.
- The size of the tires with which the vehicle was originally equipped.

Note: *The labels must not be changed, even if different wheels and tires are fitted at a later stage.*

TIRE VALVES

⚠WARNING

Do not twist or bend the tire valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge. Doing so may cause damage, leading to tire failure. Death or serious injury may result.

Keep the tire valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tire pressures.

Do not use metal valve caps, as these can corrode onto the valve threads and be difficult or impossible to remove.

REPLACEMENT TIRES

Make sure the following warnings and notices have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in damage to the vehicle, or an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Always fit replacement tires of the same type and, wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern as the original. Failure to comply may reduce vehicle stability, efficiency, and range.

⚠WARNING

The load index and speed ratings on all replacement tires must be at least the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

If the use of tires not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable make sure to read and fully comply with, the tire manufacturer's instructions. Failure to do so may lead to tire failure due to incorrect fitting or use.

⚠WARNING

Drive within the speed limitations for the tires if lower speed-rated tires are fitted, e.g., winter tires, off-road, or Professional Off-Road (POR) tires. In markets that require a tire's maximum speed label to be fitted, the label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Tire maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tire retailer. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for further information.

⚠WARNING

Tire removal and fitting should only be carried out by a retailer/authorized repairer.

NOTICE

Make sure that the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tire change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 0.07 in (2 mm), wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. Wear indicators produce a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

It is recommended that tires should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tires in pairs, both front or both rear. When tires are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

Use the correct tire specification and pressures. Alternatively, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice. See **367, TIRE PRESSURES** or **368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR AMBIENT TEMPERATURE CHANGES

Daily ambient temperature variations may cause intermittent, minor tire pressure changes, which is normal and should not indicate a tire failure.

To mitigate this condition, check and adjust the tire pressures to the recommended cold inflation pressures before vehicle use.

Note: *Make sure that the correct tire pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature. See **367, TIRE PRESSURES** and **368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.*

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tires can be affected by a softening of the tire's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the tire deforms at the point where the standing surface meets the tire.

The tire deformation described is known as a flat spot and is normal tire behavior.

When the vehicle is subsequently driven, a vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition steadily improves with extra mileage.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

In order to minimize flat spotting, increase the tire pressures to the maximum, as stated on the tire's sidewall. The tires must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **367, TIRE PRESSURES** and **364, TIRE MARKINGS**.

TIRE DEGRADATION

Tires degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that all tires, including the spare, are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture. However, the tires may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TIRES

WARNING

A dedicated winter tire often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tire. Consequently, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitation of the winter tire. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for further information. In markets that require a tire's maximum speed label to be fitted, make sure to place the label within the driver's field of vision. Maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tire retailer. Failure to adhere to the winter tire's speed limit may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *M+S tires have a recognized level of winter performance. However, the M+S marking on the sidewall of the tire does not necessarily indicate that the tire is a dedicated winter tire. The M+S marking on an all-season tire indicates that it is designed for use all year round, including in cold temperatures, snow, and ice. The performance of all-season tires is generally inferior to a dedicated winter tire in conditions specific to winter.*

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tires during specified periods of the year.



The winter tires symbol identifies dedicated winter tires. Dedicated winter tires are recommended if optimum winter traction is required or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

The tire pressures indicated on the tire information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tires. If a reduced speed-rating tire is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable up to the tire's maximum speed, with a light vehicle load. Vehicle speed should be restricted to below 100 mph (160 km/h) when normally loaded.

Winter tires must be fitted to all four wheels.

For optimum traction, winter tires should be run in for at least 100 miles (160 km) on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tires may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tires

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The instrument panel also displays **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tires are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Recommended winter tires					
Wheel size	**Tire size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**	**Rim Width / Profile / Offset**	**Type**
19 in	255/ 60R19 113V.	Continental.	WinterContact TS 850P SUV.	7.5J / EH2+ / 39.5	Alpine.
	255/ 60R19 113T.	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV.		Studded.
	275/ 55R19 115R.	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV.		Studless.
	275/ 55R19 111T.	Bridgestone.	Blizzak DM-V2.		Studless.
20 in	255/ 55R20 110V.	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.	8.5J / EH2+ / 47.0	Alpine.
	255/ 55R20 110T.	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2 & 2+.		Studded.
		Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV and 9 SUV.		Studded.
	255/ 55R20 110Q T.	Bridgestone.	Blizzak DM-V2.		Studless.
	255/ 55R20 110R.	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV.		Studless.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Recommended winter tires					
Wheel size	**Tire size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**	**Rim Width / Profile / Offset**	**Type**
21 in	275/ 45R21 110V.	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.	9.5J / EH2+ / 49.0	Alpine.
		Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.		Alpine.
		Continental.	CrossContactWinter.		Alpine.
	275/ 45R21 110T.	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2.		Studded.
		Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 9 SUV.		Studded.
		Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV.		Studless.

Note: *Studded tires are market dependent. If in doubt, or for further information, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

Note: *For information about the latest approved winter tires, contact a retailer/ authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

PROFESSIONAL OFF-ROAD (POR) TIRES

Recommended Professional Off-Road (POR) tires					
Wheel size	**Tire size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**	**Rim Width / Profile / Offset**	**Type**
20 in	255/ 55R20 110Q	Goodyear	Wrangler Duratrac	8.5J / EH2+ / 47.0	All Terrain

Note: *For information about the latest recommended POR tires, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit:* ***www.ownerinfo.landrover.com****.*

USING SNOW CHAINS

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using snow chains. Failure to use the snow chains safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

⚠WARNING

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.

⚠WARNING

Never exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) when traction devices are fitted.

⚠WARNING

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions where there is no compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only use vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that the devices do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for information.
- The wheels and tires fitted to the vehicle must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. Doing so helps to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **364, TIRE MARKINGS**.
- Half chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles with the following tire sizes:
  - 255/60R19.
  - 235/60R20.
  - 255/55R20.
  - 275/45R21.
- Full chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles with the following tire sizes:
  - 235/70R18.
  - 235/65R19.
  - 255/60R19.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle only.
- Remove the traction devices, as soon as the conditions allow, to avoid tire and/or vehicle damage.

Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

Note: *When using snow chains, select the grass gravel snow driving mode and switch DSC off. See* ***162, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW*** *and* ***158, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance.

Note: *Tires that have deep tread, and winter tires, are exempt from these marking requirements.*

UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

In addition to the marking requirements, passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements.

TREADWEAR

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

The vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible if treadwear is uneven across the tire, or a tire wears excessively.



When the tread has worn down to approximately 0.07 in (2 mm), wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. Wear indicators produce a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual indicator.

⚠ WARNING

Wear indicators show the minimum tread depth recommended by the manufacturers. Tires which have worn to this point will have reduced grip and poor water displacement characteristics. Worn tires can lead to accidents, with the potential to cause serious injury or death.

Note: *Local legislation may determine a greater minimum tread depth to that shown by the tire wear indicators. Making sure that the tread depth meets the local legal requirements remains the responsibility of the driver. Do not rely on the tread depth indicators alone.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TRACTION

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠WARNING

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

TEMPERATURE

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠WARNING

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

TIRE GLOSSARY

lbf/in² or **psi**: Pounds per square inch, an imperial unit of measure for pressure.

kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of measure for pressure.

Cold tire pressure: The air pressure in a tire which has been standing in excess of 3 hours, or driven for less than 1 mile.

Maximum permissible inflation pressure: The maximum pressure to which the tire should be inflated. The pressure is given on the tire's sidewall in lbf/in² (psi) and kPa.

Note: *The pressure is the maximum allowed by the tire manufacturer, not the pressure recommended for use.*

Curb weight: The weight of a standard vehicle, including:

- A full tank of fuel, if applicable.
- Any optional equipment fitted.
- The correct level of coolant and oils.

Accessory weight: The combined weight, in excess of those items replaced, of items available as factory fitted equipment.

Production options weight: The combined weight of options fitted which weigh in excess of 5 lbs (2.3 kg) more than the standard items that they replaced.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Not to include items already considered in curb or accessory weights. Such items include: heavy duty brakes, high capacity battery, special trim, etc.*

Vehicle capacity weight: The number of seats multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg), plus the rated amount of load and luggage.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight: The sum of the curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, plus any production option weights.

Rim: The metal support for a tire, or tire and tube, upon which the tire beads are seated.

Bead: The inner edge of a tire that is shaped to fit to the rim and form an airtight seal. The bead is constructed of steel wires which are wrapped, or reinforced, by the ply cords.

Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW): The maximum permissible weight of a vehicle with driver, passengers, load, luggage and equipment.

STEPS FOR DETERMINING CORRECT LOAD LIMIT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the warnings in this topic have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Exceeding the specified load limits could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

   If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The number and weight of passengers affect the cargo and luggage capacity. In the example above, the cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. However, if fewer passengers ride in the vehicle, the luggage load capacity increases. If this vehicle carries three 150 lb passengers, the cargo and luggage load capacity increases to 950 lb:

(3 x 150 = 450 lb, and 1400 - 450 = 950 lb).

If the passengers weigh more, the cargo and luggage load capacity decreases.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Do not exceed the vehicle capacity weight (the total weight of driver, passengers, and cargo) given on the tire information label.

⚠WARNING

The weight of accessories must also be subtracted from the cargo and luggage load capacity. If unsure of the weight of any accessories fitted to the vehicle, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

⚠WARNING

Overloading the vehicle will have an adverse effect on braking and handling characteristics, which could compromise safety. Overloading a vehicle may also cause tire damage or failure. Never overload the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

⚠WARNING

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tires. Tire pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tires are cold. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

The TPMS cannot register damage to a tire. Regularly check the condition of the tires, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road. Failure to do so could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

NOTICE

When inflating tires, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head is correctly aligned to the valve stem.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. Using rigid inflation wands increases the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

The tire pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the recommended inflation pressures for the vehicle's loading condition. See **86, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)** and **367, TIRE PRESSURES**.

The tire pressure warning lamp illuminates if a temporary-use spare wheel is used as a road wheel. See **382, TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE**.

The TPMS constantly monitors the tire pressure in each road wheel. The spare wheel tire pressure is not monitored.

To confirm if TPMS is fitted to the vehicle: Switch on the vehicle's ignition and check for the presence of a TPMS lamp in the instrument panel. Vehicles with a TPMS lamp have TPMS.



TPMS lamp.

Note: *A special service kit is required when changing a tire fitted with a TPMS valve.*

Note: *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the TPMS. If this occurs, the instrument panel displays the message* ***Tire pressure monitoring system fault****.*

Note: *Different types of tires may affect the performance of the TPMS. Always replace the tires in accordance with recommendations.*

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle starts as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

TIRE PRESSURE CHECK

The vehicle's current tire pressures can be displayed via the **Vehicle** and **Tire information** menus. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

When selected, the instrument panel displays two tire pressure values for each tire. One value shows the actual tire pressure, the other (in brackets) is the advised inflation pressure.

The advised inflation pressures change, based on ambient conditions and as air temperature within the tires fluctuates during use.

Note: *The advised inflation pressures do not necessarily align with the vehicle's pressure label due to warming of the tires through driving and changes in ambient conditions.*

Note: *Always inflate the tires to the advised inflation pressures displayed in the* ***Tire Pressures*** *menu.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Note: *If any of the wheels or tires have been removed, the displayed tire pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.*

Note: *The tire pressure units can be configured to display as either psi, bar, or kPa via the* ***Vehicle*** *and* ***Units*** *menus. See* ***225, SYSTEM SETTINGS****.*

VEHICLE LOADING

When the vehicle is delivered, the tire pressures are set to those displayed on the tire pressure label. See **368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted for **Light** (comfort) load and **Normal** load conditions. Adjust the TPMS settings via the **Vehicle**, **Tire information** and **TPM load setting** instrument panel menus. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

Note: *The vehicle's ignition must be switched on and the vehicle stationary.*

Note: *When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the* ***Light*** *load setting is selected. No message is displayed if the* ***Normal*** *load setting is selected.*

Adjust the TPMS to suit the vehicle's load.

Number of seats in the vehicle	Light load	Normal load
Up to 5 seats	up to 3 occupants	4 occupants and above
6 seats and above	up to 4 occupants	5 occupants and above

Note: *The TPMS setting and tire pressures must correspond with the vehicle's current load. See* ***367, TIRE PRESSURES****.*

The vehicle's current tire pressures can be displayed via the **Vehicle** and **Tire information** menus. See **76, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU OPERATION**.

FULL-SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) automatically recognizes any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tire change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 16 mph (25 km/h), any warning should update within approximately 5 minutes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Re-inflate the tire, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full-size spare wheel fitted with tire pressure monitoring. The TPMS warning lamp may illuminate if tire inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tire within 5 m of the vehicle. See* ***86, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)*** *and* ***367, TIRE PRESSURES****.*

Note: *The full-size spare tire's pressure should always be maintained at the highest recommended cold inflation pressure for that tire size, displayed on the tire pressure label.*

For information on the tire pressures, refer to the label located at the base of the driver's door opening. See **368, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

Alternatively, visit **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognizes the change in wheel position after approximately 10 minutes of driving above 16 mph (25 km/h) and the instrument panel displays the **Front(rear) Right(left) tire pressure not monitored** message. The message is accompanied by illumination of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp. See **86, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (AMBER)**.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminates continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel triggers the message **Tire pressure monitoring system fault**.

The TPMS display sequence activates at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

The TPMS automatically re-calibrates when a full size wheel is fitted to the vehicle, and the vehicle is driven above 16 mph (25 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.

Contacting a retailer/authorized repairer is not required unless the TPMS lamp remains illuminated after the vehicle has been driven, with a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted, above 16 mph (25 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.

Note: *Illumination of the TPMS lamp is normal behavior for the vehicle when a temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, and is not a cause for concern.*

TYRE APPROVAL NUMBERS

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS):

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Note: *Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, could void the user's authority to use the equipment.*

Type approval numbers

The 433 MHz TPMS Radio Frequency (RF) approval numbers for the USA and Canada are:

USA FCC ID:	KR5S180052020A
	5WK49096
Canada IC:	7812D-S180020A
	267T-5WK49096

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

Note: *If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or comply with warnings, seek assistance.*

⚠WARNING

Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic. Switch on the hazard warning lights to alert all traffic of the obstruction. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage Park (P). Switch the engine off and remove the smart key from the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic.

Note: *Different countries have different traffic laws. Carrying and/or using warning triangles may be required by law when stopping at the side of a highway. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations and for complying with local traffic laws.*

⚠WARNING

In an emergency or a breakdown situation, wear a reflective jacket if stopped at the side of the road and working around the vehicle.

Note: *Different countries have different traffic laws. Carrying and/or wearing reflective jackets may be required by law. The driver is responsible for staying informed about road regulations, and for complying with local traffic laws.*

⚠WARNING

Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place, away from the highway.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.

⚠WARNING

Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the wheel changing process, to minimize any chance of accidental injury. Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle.

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

⚠WARNING

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. As an additional precaution, it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle are chocked.

⚠WARNING

When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, the transmission Park (P) position does not prevent the vehicle from moving. The vehicle can potentially slip off the jack, as the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) operates only on the rear wheels. Use a wheel chock when jacking the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Chock the front of a front wheel or the rear of a rear wheel.

⚠WARNING

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. Two chocks must be used if this is the case.

⚠WARNING

Take care when loosening the lug nuts. The lug wrench may slip off if not properly attached, and the lug nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.

⚠WARNING

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

⚠WARNING

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised. Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

⚠WARNING

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover.

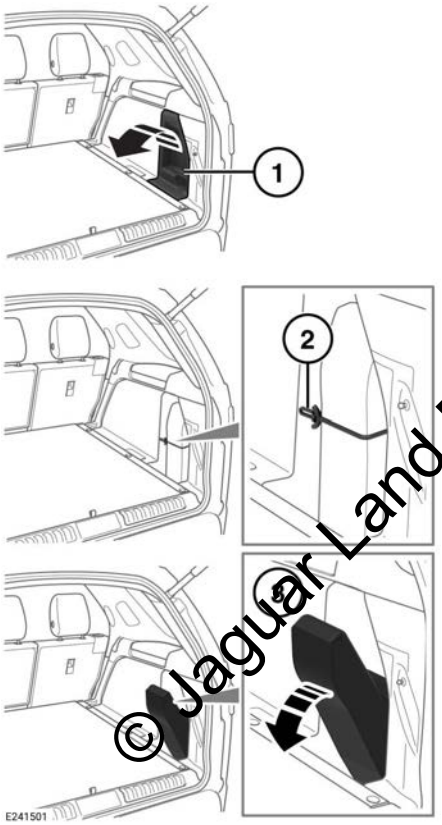
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing

TOOL KIT

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using the tool kit. See 384, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.



The tool kit is stored behind an access cover in the right side of the loadspace.

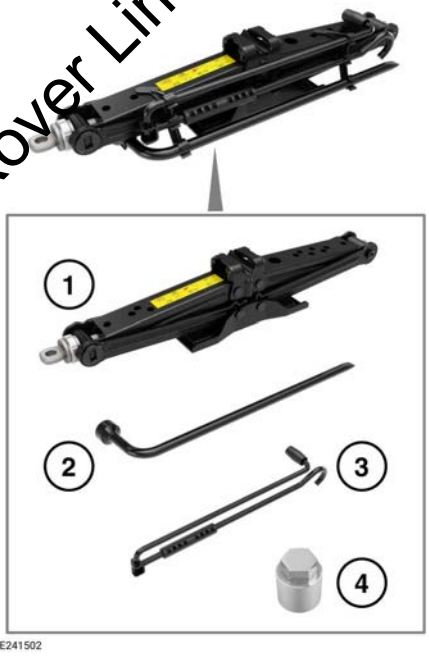
To remove the tool kit:

1. Rotate the locking tab 90 degrees counter-clockwise. Pull the panel forward and lift up.
2. Release the tool kit's securing strap.
3. Carefully release the top of the tool kit from the aperture and remove the tool kit.

NOTICE

Do not use excessive force when removing the tool kit. The use of excessive force may cause damage to the vehicle.

To fit the tool kit, reverse the removal procedure.



The tool kit consists of:

1. Jack.
2. Lug wrench.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. Winch tool.
4. Locking lug nut adapter.

Note: *The winch tool (**3**) is also used to raise and lower the jack.*

Note: *Tool types and positions may vary from the illustration.*

Note: *Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.*

Note: *Take careful note of the storage position for each tool, as it is important to return the tools to their correct positions after use.*

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

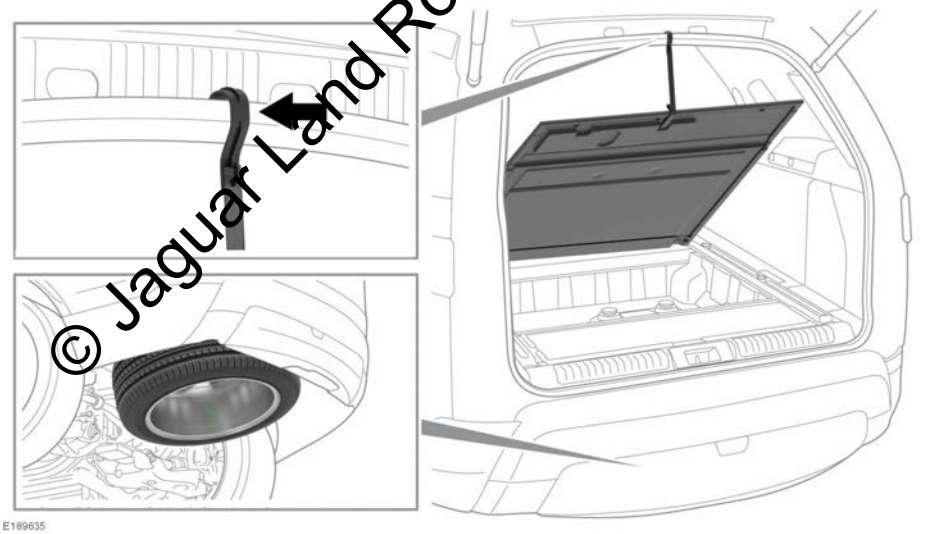
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before removing the spare wheel. See 384, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Do not store the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

⚠WARNING

When tensioning the winch cable by hand, take care not to trap any fingers.



E189635

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing

The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle and is released by operating the spare wheel winch.

To access the spare wheel winch:

- On 7 seat vehicles: Fold the loadspace floor panel forward.
- On 5 seat vehicles: Lift the loadspace floor panel. Secure the loadspace floor panel in the upright position using the strap, as illustrated.

NOTICE

Do not use power tools to lower the spare wheel. Doing so may damage the mechanism.

NOTICE

Do not operate the winch, retracting or extracting the cable, without pre-tensioning the cable. Doing so may cause damage to the winch. Pre-tensioning can be achieved, either with the weight of a spare wheel or a road wheel, or by maintaining a tension using a hand.

Note: *Remove any tools stored above the winch to allow access.*

Note: *Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in this place.*

Note: *It is recommended that the road wheel is always stored underneath the vehicle following a puncture.*

Note: *Always store a road wheel and the spare wheel with the outer face of the wheel facing upward.*



1. Remove the grommet for access to the spare wheel winch.

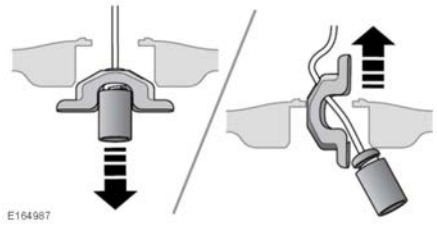
   Note: *Make sure to refit the grommet after the wheel change is complete.*
2. Fit the winch tool to the spare wheel winch and rotate counter-clockwise to lower the spare wheel.
3. Rotate the winch tool until the spare wheel is on the ground and the winch cable is slack.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to turn the winch beyond the physical stop.

To release the wheel from the winch:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021



Lift the spare wheel, and pass the winch cable through the center of the wheel to release it, as shown in the above graphic.

To store the removed road wheel:

1. Remove the center cap from the road wheel and store it in a safe place.
2. Position the road wheel underneath the rear of the vehicle, with the outer face of the road wheel facing upward.
3. Pass the winch cable through the center of the wheel.
4. Start to turn the winch handle clockwise to take the slack out of the cable. Make sure the cable end is seated correctly before continuing to raise the wheel.
5. Continue to rotate the winch handle until the road wheel is in the stored position.
6. Remove the winch handle and store all of the tools and the jack in their original positions.

Operating the winch without a road wheel attached

When extracting the winch cable after the winch cable has been retracted without a road wheel attached, operate the winch as follows:

Fit the winch handle to the spare wheel winch and rotate counter-clockwise to extract the cable. While rotating the winch, apply tension by pulling on the end of the winch cable.

Note: *If, while the cable is being extracted, the winch feels tight or locks up, stop winding and wind back, at least one full turn. Apply a tension on the cable to release any cable slack if necessary, giving it a sharp tug. Try the winch again and continue if the mechanism is free to operate. Repeat if the winch feels tight or locks up again.*

NOTICE

If the winch feels tight or locks up, stop winding and wind back, at least one full turn. If this fails to free the winch mechanism, do not continue, as damage may be caused to the winch.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TIRE

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare wheel's warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tire failure.

⚠WARNING

Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is for temporary use only.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

⚠WARNING

Make sure that an original size wheel and tire are fitted as soon as possible.

⚠WARNING

Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

⚠WARNING

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

⚠WARNING

The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 60 psi (4.2 bar, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.

⚠WARNING

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

⚠WARNING

Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

Note: *Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in its place.*

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before using wheel chocks. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death. See 384, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

A wheel chock is stored in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit. See **392, WHEEL CHANGING**.

Note: *Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit. Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit.*

LOCKING LUG NUTS

Note: *When the vehicle is first supplied, the locking lug nut adapter may be stored in the glovebox. If this is the case, the locking lug nut adapter must be moved to its correct storage position in the loadspace, as soon as possible. See **386, TOOL KIT**.*

Note: *Not all vehicles have locking lug nuts as standard parts.*

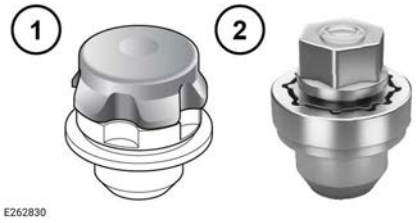
NOTICE

The locking lug nut adapter must be correctly aligned and fully fitted to the locking lug nut before usage. Incorrect fitment can result in permanent damage to the locking lug nut adapter. Incorrect fitment can cause the locking lug nut's anti-tamper device to rotate, preventing removal of the locking lug nut. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

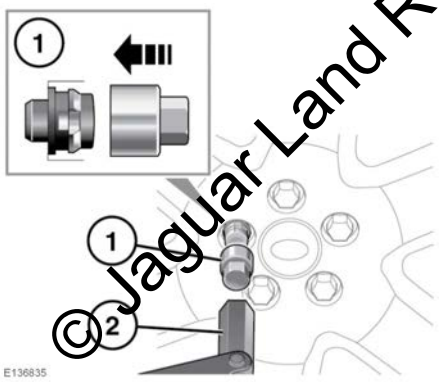
NOTICE

Do not use air tools or power tools to remove or to refit the locking lug nut. Doing so may damage the locking lug nut or the locking lug nut adapter.



Depending on the vehicle specification, two different locking lug nuts, (**1**) and (**2**), are fitted to the vehicle.

Locking lug nuts can be removed and fitted using only the special locking lug nut adapter provided. See **386, TOOL KIT**.



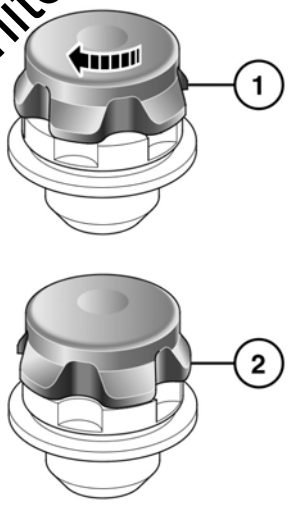
To release the locking lug nut:

1. Insert the adapter into the locking lug nut, making sure that it is fully engaged.
2. Using the lug wrench, unscrew the lug nut and adapter.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking lug nut.

The locking lug nut, shown below, and locking lug nut adapter contain two anti-tamper features.

If the locking lug nut adapter is forced onto the locking lug nut, the adapter may be damaged beyond repair.

If the locking lug nut adapter is not fully engaged, the cap on the locking lug nut rotates. To allow the locking lug nut to be fully tightened or removed, the locking lug nut cap must be reset.



The locking lug nut cap can be reset as follows:

1. Carefully fit the locking lug nut adapter on to the locking lug nut cap and rotate the cap counter-clockwise.
2. Rotate the locking lug nut cap counter-clockwise until all of the grooves on the cap align exactly with the locking lug nut grooves.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Should a replacement locking lug nut adapter be required, consult an authorized retailer. For your convenience and future reference, record the locking lug nut adapter code within the space provided below. Depending on the specification of the locking lug nut adapter, the code may be stamped on the locking lug nut adapter or supplied on a separate card*

Locking lug nut adapter code number	

WHEEL CHANGING

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

⚠WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before changing a wheel. See 384, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

⚠WARNING

Disconnect any trailer or caravan from the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

The standard vehicle jacking points should be used to raise the vehicle. Do not raise the vehicle by jacking under the side steps, or side tubes.

NOTICE

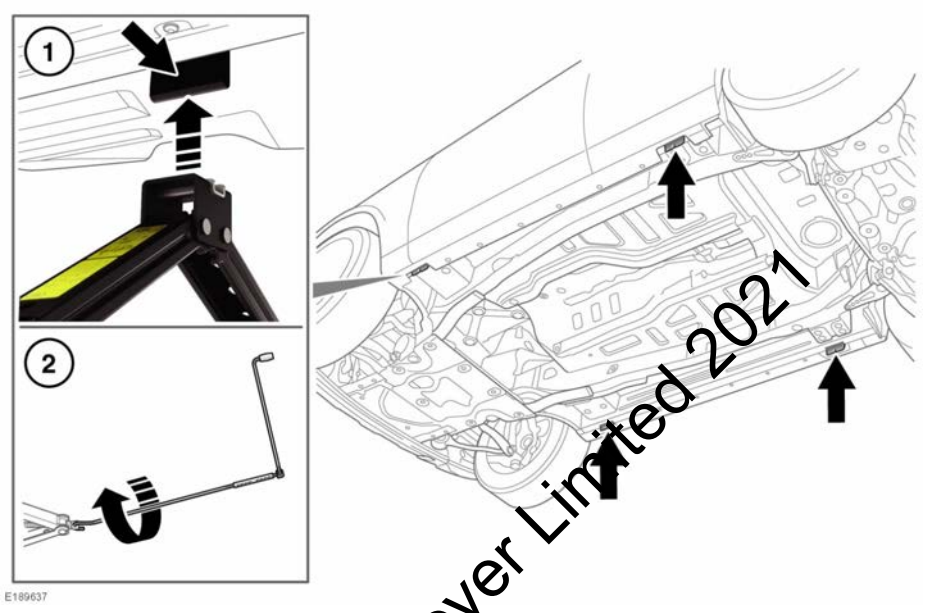
Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Before raising the vehicle:

1. Remove the required tools from the vehicle. See **386, TOOL KIT**.
2. Remove the spare wheel. See **387, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.
3. Correctly position the wheel chocks. See **384, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Wheel changing



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To change a wheel:

1. Use the lug wrench to loosen the lug nuts of the wheel to be replaced. Turn half a turn counter-clockwise.
2. Locate the jack under the relevant jacking point (**1**).

NOTICE

Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.

3. Rotate the jack handle (**2**) clockwise until the jack locates into the jacking point.
4. Raise the vehicle until the wheel is clear of the ground.

⚠WARNING

Avoid rapid, jerky actions. Rapid, jerky actions may cause the vehicle and jack to become unstable, which may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

5. Remove the lug nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
6. Remove the wheel and place to one side.

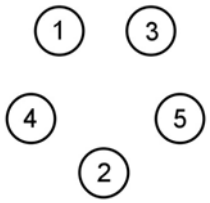
NOTICE

Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.

7. Fit the spare wheel to the hub.
8. Refit the lug nuts and lightly tighten them. Make sure that the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.

Wheel changing

9. Make sure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
10. With all of the wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the lug nuts. The lug nuts must be tightened in sequence, as illustrated, to the correct torque of 103 lb.ft (140 Nm).



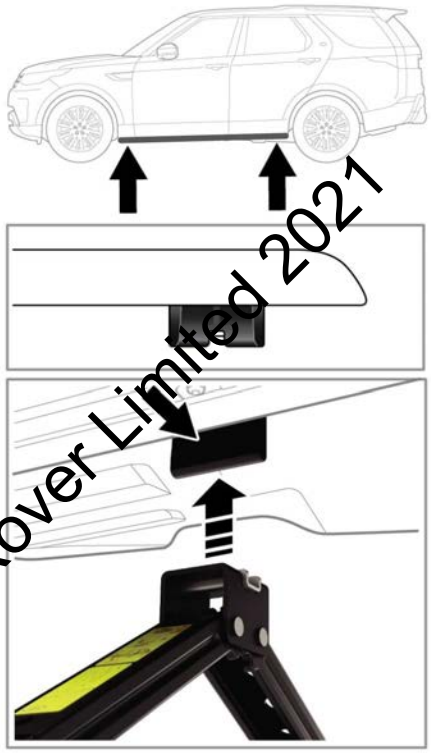
E132675

Note: *If it is not possible to torque the lug nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the center cap out of the removed wheel. Using hand pressure only, press the center cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tire pressure as soon as possible.

Vehicles with fixed side steps, deployable side steps, or side tubes



E189638

⚠WARNING

The deployable side steps must be in the stored position and the system switched off when raising the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

⚠WARNING

Do not raise the vehicle with the deployable side steps in the deployed position. Doing so may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

If the vehicle is fitted with deployable side steps, fixed side steps, or side tubes, the standard vehicle jacking points are obscured.

To raise the vehicle, use the jacking points located at the front and rear of the side tubes, fixed side steps, or deployable side steps to raise the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

FRONT TOWING EYE

⚠WARNING

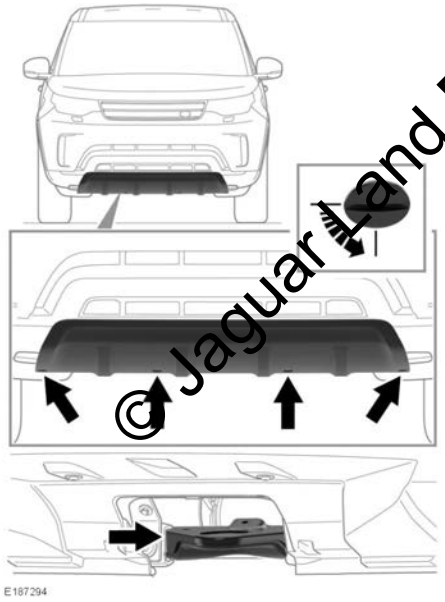
The towing eye at the front of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

NOTICE

Remove the front towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.



The front towing point is located behind a removable cover in the lower front bumper.

To remove the cover:

1. Rotate each of the fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin or similar.
2. Pull the cover forward from the back lower edge to release the two lower tabs and eight tags on the top edge of the cover.

To refit the cover:

1. Offer up the cover and make sure the eight lugs at the top edge and the two tabs in the bottom edge engage with the holes in the bumper.
2. Secure the cover in position by rotating each of the fasteners 90 degrees clockwise.

REAR TOWING EYE

⚠WARNING

The towing eye at the rear of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

⚠WARNING

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

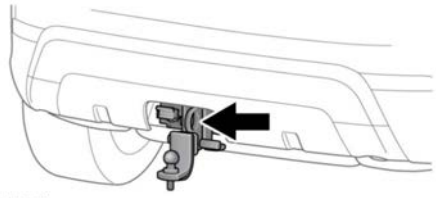
NOTICE

Remove the rear towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.

Note: *The rear towing eye may be used to tow another vehicle, if required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicles with a tow hitch or multi-height tow bar

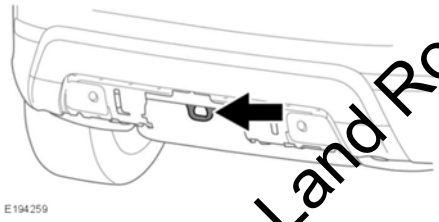


The vehicle towing eye is located in the following positions:

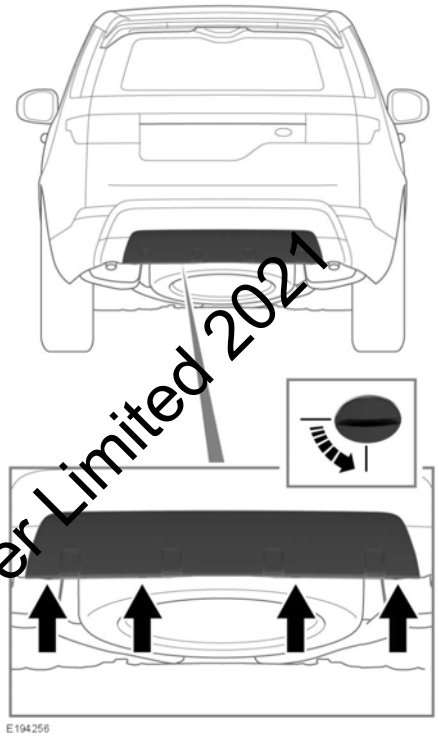
1. Vehicles with trailer hitch tow ball.

Vehicles with no tow ball

Note: *Note the fitted position of the towing eye cover before removal.*



The rear towing eye is located behind a cover in the rear bumper.



To remove the cover:

1. Rotate the four fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a suitable coin, or a similar object.
2. Release the eight upper tabs.

To fit the cover:

1. Make sure all the clips are correctly aligned.
2. Turn the fasteners a quarter-turn clockwise.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

⚠WARNING

If the towing points are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at: **www.landroverexperience.com**.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE

⚠WARNING

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

⚠WARNING

The front and rear tie down points must be used only for securing the vehicle during transportation. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

The recommended method for recovery/transporting the vehicle is by a trailer designed for that purpose.

Always use qualified persons to perform recovery and to make sure that the vehicle is secured correctly.

NOTICE

If the vehicle's electronics are operational, the air suspension must be set to access height, before securing the vehicle to a recovery vehicle or trailer. Failure to do so can result in damage to the vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

The vehicle should be recovered with all four wheels clear of the ground, i.e., on a trailer. However, if the vehicle cannot be recovered by using the correct method, in an emergency, the vehicle can be towed on all four wheels for a short distance. Please adhere to the following guidelines.

⚠WARNING

The recovery agent MUST activate the Emergency park release before towing commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel.

⚠WARNING

If transmission Neutral (N) is selected and the engine is then switched off, the transmission will automatically select Park (P) after 10 minutes has elapsed . At this point, if the Emergency park release has not been activated and the vehicle is being towed, serious damage to the transmission will result. There is also a danger to personal safety.

⚠WARNING

If the engine cannot be used during towing, there will be no power assistance to the braking or steering systems. This will result in much greater effort to steer and stop the vehicle and in a greatly increased stopping distance.

NOTICE

Only tow the vehicle in a forward direction with all four wheels on the ground. Towing in a reverse direction or with only two wheels on the ground, can cause serious damage to the transmission.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE

Do not tow the vehicle for more than 30 miles (50 km). Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Towing for a greater distance, or at a higher speed, may result in serious damage to the transmission.

NOTICE

*Do not tow the vehicle if the transmission cannot be set in Neutral (**N**), or if the rear electronic differential has failed in the locked position. Doing so can cause serious damage to the transmission.*

The following procedure must be carried out carefully to prevent damage to the vehicle:

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing eye. See **396, FRONT TOWING EYE**.
2. With the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied, switch on the ignition.
3. Apply the brake pedal and rotate the selector to Neutral (**N**).
4. Activate the Emergency park release.
5. Switch off the ignition and leave the Smart key in a secure place inside the vehicle.
6. The ignition may be switched on to allow operation of the turn signals, brake lamps, etc.
7. Release the EPB before towing the vehicle.

NOTICE

Leaving the ignition switched on for extended periods will drain the vehicle's battery.

AFTER TOWING ON FOUR WHEELS

1. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
2. Switch on the ignition and apply the brake pedal.
3. Rotate the gear selector to Park (**P**).
4. Deactivate the Emergency Park Release.
5. Switch off the ignition and remove the Smart key from the vehicle.
6. Remove the recovery vehicle's towing attachment from the front towing eye and refit the cover.

WARNING

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

⚠WARNING

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/ authorized repairer, or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving. A collision can damage the vehicle and its systems, making the vehicle unsafe, which may lead to serious injury or death.

Note: *The vehicle may have an SOS emergency call button and an optimized assistance call button. See* ***312, OPTIMIZED LAND ROVER ASSISTANCE*** *.*

Note: *Some vehicles have a Post Crash Braking function that will in certain circumstances apply the vehicle brakes following a collision. The brakes are released when the ignition is cycled.*

EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/ fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle. Such systems and modules are the engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

After a collision

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorized repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information. To access the information, a direct connection to the vehicle is required.

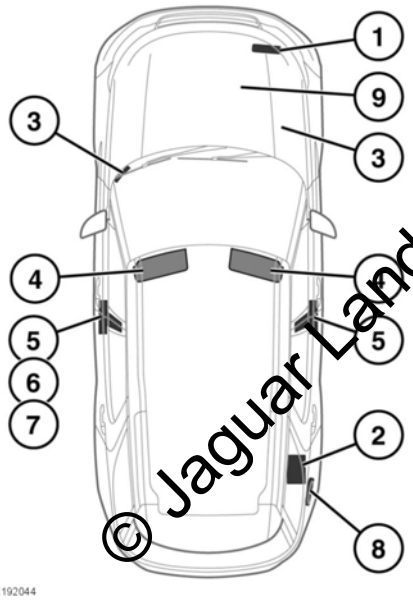
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Vehicle labels

LABEL LOCATIONS

Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.

Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilizes very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is switched on.



E192044

1. Hood locking platform: Air Conditioning (A/C) label.
2. Top of the battery: Battery warning symbols.
3. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windshield. The number is also stamped into the right-side suspension tower.

   Note: *The VIN number may be requested by the retailer/authorised repairer.*

   Note: *The vehicle's built-date is shown on the VIN plate. This is the calendar month and year in which the body and powertrain assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line. The vehicle's built-date is also shown on the tire pressure label attached to the right side B pillar.*
4. Sun visor: Air bag label, vehicle handling label.
5. Base of B pillar: VIN number.
6. Base of B pillar, or inside base of front door: Tire pressure label and placard, air bag warning label.
7. Mid-way up B pillar: Side air bag warning label.
8. Inside fuel filler flap: Fuel label.
9. Engine number:
   - 3.0L gasoline: The number is located on the right-side camshaft cover.
   - 3.0L diesel: The number is located on the front of the left-side camshaft cover.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects, to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Some technical specification information in the Owner's Handbook is not available at the time of print, or is subject to updates after printing. Please visit the online Owner's Handbook at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**, or contact a retailer/authorized repairer, for the latest data.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine variant	Capacity - cubic inch (cc)	Number of cylinders.
2.0L Gasoline	122 (1 997)	4
3.0L Gasoline	183 (2 995)	6

Note: *For further information, contact a retailer/authorized repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See* ***402, LABEL LOCATIONS****.*

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil.	Gasoline vehicles.	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5006.
Brake fluid.	All vehicles.	It is recommended to use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable, then a non-petroleum based brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Windshield washer fluid.	All vehicles.	Windshield wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water as specified on the bottle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Technical specifications

Part	Variant	Specification
Coolant fluid.	All vehicles.	Mixture of 50% water and 50% Havoline XLC anti-freeze, meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.
Air conditioning refrigerant	All vehicles.	R1234yf
Air conditioning compressor oil	All vehicles.	ND-12

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a retailer/authorized repairer.

E176576

Castrol EDGE Professional exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank (usable).	Gasoline.	23.8 U.S. gallons (90 liters)
Engine oil refill and filter change.	2.0L gasoline.	7.4 U.S. quart (7 liters)
	3.0L gasoline.	9.3 U.S. quart (8.8 liters)
Washer fluid reservoir.	All vehicles.	12.7 U.S. pints (6 liters)
Refrigerant charge weight.	2 and 3 zone	1.8 pounds (800 grams)
	4 zone	2.2 pounds (1 000 grams)
Air conditioning compressor oil.	2 and 3 zone.	3.4 ounces (100 millilitres)
	4 zone.	5.4 ounces (160 millilitres)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks or information displayed on the vehicle, as applicable.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WEIGHTS

Variant	Curb weight lb (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)* lb (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)** lb (kg)
2.0L gasoline - 5 seat vehicles.	4 755 (2 157)	6 480 (2 940)	13 095 (5 940)
2.0L gasoline - 7 seat vehicles.	4 865 (2 209)	6 875 (3 120)	13 490 (6 120)
3.0L gasoline - 5 seat vehicles.	5 050 (2 291)	6 655 (3 020)	14 855 (6 740)
3.0L gasoline - 7 seat vehicles.	5 160 (2 342)	7 075 (3 210)	15 275 (6 930)

* The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

** The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

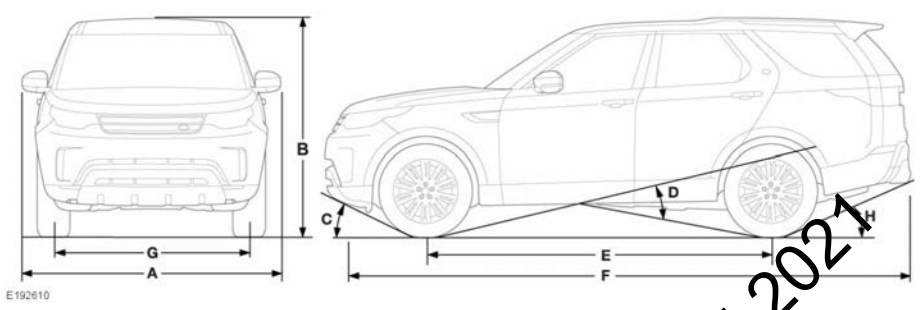
Variant	Maximum front axle load* lb (kg)	Maximum rear axle load* lb (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load** lb (kg)
5 seat vehicles.	3 305 (1 500)	3 910 (1 775)	176 (80)
7 seat vehicles.	3 305 (1 500)	4 185 (1 900)	

* The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously, as this will exceed the GVW limit.

** This is the permitted roof load, including the weight of the roof bars.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	Variant	Inches (mm)	Degrees
A	Width (including mirrors).	All vehicles.	87.4 (2 220)	-
	Body width.	All vehicles.	78.7 (2 000)	-
B	Height.	All vehicles.	72.7 (1 846)	-
	Height (with roof antenna module).	All vehicles.	74.5 (1 893)	-
C	Approach angle.	Air suspension.	-	25.9
	Approach angle.	Coil suspension.	-	26.3
D	Ramp breakover angle.	Air suspension.	-	21.2
		Coil suspension.	-	22.2
E	Wheelbase.	Air suspension.	115 (2 923)	-
		Coil suspension.	115 (2 922)	-
F	Overall length.	All vehicles.	196.1 (4 981)	-
G	Track - front.	All vehicles.	67 (1 703)	-
	Track - rear.	All vehicles.	66.9 (1 698)	-
H	Departure angle.	Air suspension.	-	22.1
		Coil suspension.	-	25.9
-	Wading depth (off road height).*	Air suspension.	35.4 (900)	-
		Coil suspension.	33.4 (850)	-

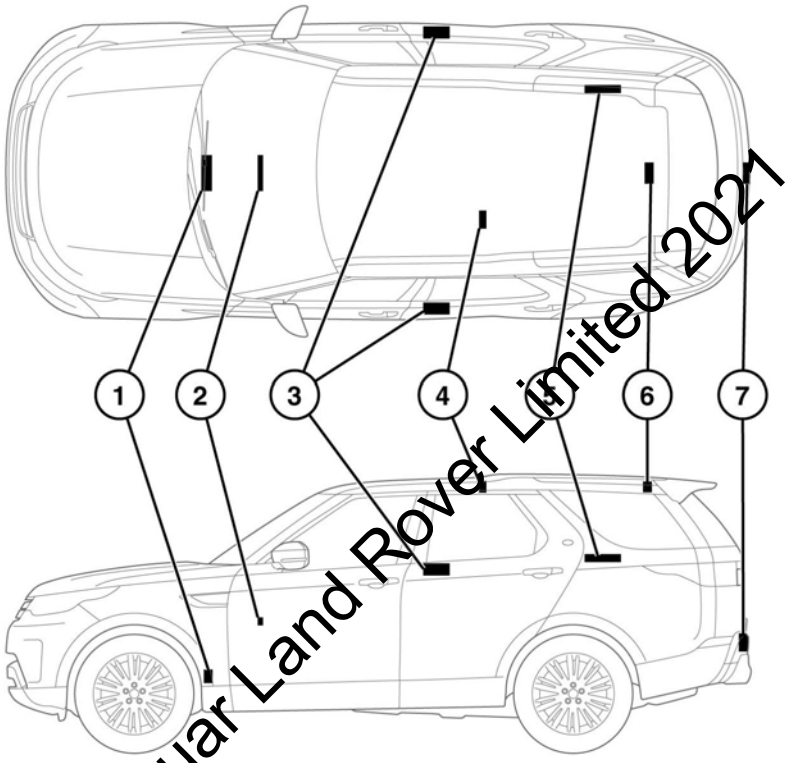
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Item	Description	Variant	Inches (mm)	Degrees
-	Minimum ground clearance - standard height.	Air suspension.	8.2 (208)	-
		Coil suspension.	8.4 (215)	-
-	Minimum ground clearance - off road height.	Air suspension.	11.1 (283)	-
-	Turning circle (wall to wall).	All vehicles.	42.13 feet (12.84 m)	

*Maximum wading speed is 4 mph (7 km/h).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

1. Satellite transceiver.
2. Cabin front transmitter.
3. Door transmitters.
4. External receiver.
5. Control module.
6. Satellite transceiver.
7. Loadspace exterior transmitter.

⚠WARNING

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 8.7 inches (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

USA

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210: Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The key system transmitter radio frequency approval numbers for the USA and Canada are shown below:

USA FCC ID:	KOBJBG18A
	KOBJTF18A
	KOBJXF18A
	KOBJXU18A
Canada IC:	KOBJBG18A
	KOBJTF18A
	KOBJXF18A
	KOBJXU18A

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

NOTICE

The Smart key may suffer interference from other legal users on this radio frequency band, such as radio amateurs, medical equipment, remote controls or alarm systems. To lock or unlock the vehicle in such a situation, either use a key or operate the key transmitter as close to the security antenna as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USING THE PASSPORT TO SERVICE

YOUR PASSPORT TO SERVICE

This section of the Owner's Handbook contains information essential for the understanding of your vehicle warranties, and for the implementation of any necessary warranty rectification. It is recommended that you read the contents with care to familiarize yourself with the benefits available under the various warranties.

Note: *When Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) is referenced, this includes either or both Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) and Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) as applicable.*

VEHICLE REGISTRATION; OWNER INFORMATION

At the time of original delivery, your Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer will have placed your vehicle, your name, and your complete address in a vehicle registration file. Once registered, you are entitled to the benefits of the various applicable warranties as described herein.

In the event that the vehicle is transferred to a new owner or the current owner's name or address should change, contact the Customer Relationship Center.

SCHEDULED VEHICLE MAINTENANCE

Because of the need for specialized equipment and skills, it is strongly recommended that all service work be entrusted to a Land Rover retailer/ authorized repairer.

Maintenance must be carried out at the specified intervals. Should the vehicle have a high proportion of short journeys or operate in severe conditions, JLR recommends that the maintenance procedures be performed at intervals not to exceed six (6) months.

It is normal for the vehicle to consume some engine oil during normal use. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that the engine oil is maintained at the proper level in between the scheduled vehicle maintenance intervals.

Additionally, more frequent checks of under-hood fluids and tire pressures can help minimize your chance of being inconvenienced while on the road, and may extend the life of certain wear and tear components.

Land Rover retailer/authorized repairers may offer supplemental maintenance services as a convenience to those owners who do not wish to perform these services themselves.

JLR may publish updates to your retailer/ authorized repairer for any changes to the maintenance schedules.

FOREWORD

LAND ROVER ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

We are committed to providing high levels of owner satisfaction and to offering you the highest standard of owner care. Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) is pleased to welcome you to the Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program, an ownership program designed to enhance the satisfaction and security of owning a Land Rover automobile.

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance program includes the following:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- 24-hour roadside emergency assistance, plus trip interruption benefits, all available through a 24-hour toll-free Assistance Line.
- A 24-hour toll-free Assistance Line for questions about any elements of the Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program.

To contact the Roadside Assistance Line, dial:

- **USA**: 1-800-637-6837
- **Canada**: 1-800-461-2325

The Land Rover Assistance Program is only available to vehicles with a valid New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers your vehicle for:

- **USA**: 4 years / 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first
- **Canada**: 4 years / 80,000 kilometres, whichever occurs first

If your New Vehicle Limited Warranty is canceled or voided for any reason (including, but not limited to, an unauthorized modification or alteration to the vehicle, or if the vehicle's title is reported as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, salvaged, totaled, or stolen), your Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program privileges and services detailed herein are also canceled and voided.

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program does not apply beyond a valid New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For more information on the Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program, see **438, LAND ROVER ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM**.

COMMUNICATION WITH JLR

Please direct all communication with JLR using one of the following options:

Write to:

USA:

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC
ATTN: Customer Relationship Center
100 Jaguar Land Rover Way
Mahwah, New Jersey 07495

Canada:

Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC
75 Courtneypark Drive West, Unit 3
Mississauga, ON
L5W 0E3

Call:

USA: 1-800-637-6837

Canada: 1-800-461-2325

Mon. - Fri., 7:00 am - 9:00 pm Eastern
Sat., 9:00 am - 6:00 pm Eastern

Email:

USA: Go to **www.landroverusa.com** and carry out the following steps:

1. Select **United States**.
2. Select **Contact Us**.
3. Select **Email Land Rover**.
4. Complete the Customer Service form, and return it to JLRNA.

Canada: Go to **www.landrover.ca** and carry out the following steps:

1. Select the desired language.
2. Select **Contact Us**.
3. Select **Click here** to open the online form.
4. Complete the Customer Service form, and return it to JLRC.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TIRE WARRANTY

Tires are warranted by the individual tire manufacturer indicated by the name brand of the tire (Bridgestone, Continental, Dunlop, Michelin or Pirelli). Refer to the tire manufacturer's warranty pamphlet supplied with your owner information package. Your JLR retailer/authorized repairer can provide tire information and will assist you in most instances. In the event your JLR retailer/authorized repairer is unable to supply the information and assistance you require, please contact the tire manufacturer directly at the appropriate number listed below:

- For Bridgestone tires:
  - **USA**: 1-800-356-4644
  - **Canada**: 1-800-267-1318
- For Continental tires:
  - **USA**: 1-800-847-3349
  - **Canada**: 1-855-453-1962
- For Dunlop tires:
  - **USA**: 1-800-321-2136
  - **Canada**: 1-800-387-3288
- For Michelin tires:
  - **USA**: 1-800-847-3429
  - **Canada**: 1-888-871-4444
- For Pirelli tires:
  - **USA**: 1-800-747-3554
  - **Canada (English)**: 1-800-747-3554
  - **Canada (French)**: 1-800-363-0583

Additional information on the care and service of automobile tires may be obtained by writing to:

Rubber Manufacturers Association

1400 K Street N.W., Suite 900

Washington, DC 20005

SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES

Jaguar Land Rover North America LLC (JLRNA) is the sole authorized distributor of Land Rover vehicles in the United States, Puerto Rico, and Guam and cover only vehicles originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for the United States, Puerto Rico, and Guam

Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) is the sole authorized distributor of Land Rover vehicles in Canada, and cover only vehicles originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for Canada.

Land Rover warranties are in favor of the original purchaser and each subsequent owner during the respective warranty periods.

Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) will not cover the costs to modify the vehicle to meet legal requirements in another country. If you need to make modifications to your Land Rover vehicle in order to meet another country's legal requirements, JLR encourages you to have these modifications performed at a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Passport to Service, the warranties and benefits (including, but not limited to, the Roadside Assistance Program and service adjustments) detailed in this booklet are applicable to vehicles sold only in the United States, Puerto Rico, Guam, and Canada, and that have only been operated in the United States, Puerto Rico, Guam, and Canada, subject to all applicable exclusions or limitations. The Passport to Service (i.e., warranties and Roadside Assistance) will be voided and you will not be able to receive any warranty repairs or benefits contained in this booklet if your vehicle is exported to another country. This excludes any outstanding Recall Campaign. However, these vehicles which are then subsequently exported may be eligible for Regional Warranty.

A summary of Land Rover warranty is as follows.

New vehicle limited warranty

Description	Warranty
Bumper to bumper	**US**: 4 years/50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) **Canada**: 4 years/80 000 kilometres (whichever occurs first)
12V Battery	**US**: 4 years/50,000 miles (whichever occurs first) **Canada**: 4 years/80 000 kilometres (whichever occurs first)
Wear parts and service adjustments	**US**: 1 year/12,500 miles (whichever occurs first) **Canada**: 1 year/20 000 kilometres (whichever occurs first)
Corrosion	**US**: 6 years/unlimited mileage **Canada**: 6 years/unlimited distance

Note: *Some US states have mandated alternate coverage time periods for parts of your vehicle, for example, seat belts.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Emission control system warranties

Federal (US and Canada)

Description	Warranty	Notes
Emission design and defect warranty	2 years/24,000 miles (40,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first.	Extended to the warranty limits under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Bumper-to-Bumper coverage.
Emission design and defect warranty - Certain emissions-related parts	8 years/80,000 miles (130,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first.	For a list of specific components, see **422, EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE**.
Emission performance warranty	2 years/24,000 miles (40,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first.	-
Emission performance warranty - Certain emissions-related parts	8 years/80,000 miles, (130,000 kilometres) whichever occurs first.	For a list of specific components, see **422, EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE**.

California[1]

Description	Warranty	Notes
Emission defect warranty - Short-term	3 years/50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.	Extended to the warranty limits under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Bumper-to-Bumper coverage.
Emission defect warranty - Long term	7 years/70,000 miles, whichever occurs first.	For a list of specific components, see **425, CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES**.
Emission performance warranty	3 years/50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2024

Description	Warranty	Notes
Extended emission defect and performance warranty. - All emission parts, except high voltage battery.	15 years/150 000 miles, whichever occurs first.	Extended Emission Defect and Performance Warranty is applicable to Plug-in Hybrid Electric vehicles registered in California, Connecticut,, Colorado, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, Oregon, Rhode Island, or Vermont.
Extended emission defect and performance warranty. - High voltage battery	10 years/150 000 miles, whichever occurs first	

[1] California Emission Control System Warranties are also applicable to vehicles registered in certain other US states. Specific states and vehicle applicability are specified in the section California Emission Control System Warranties.

VEHICLE WARRANTIES

NEW VEHICLE LIMITED WARRANTY

All vehicles originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, the United States, Puerto Rico, Guam, and Canada.

Warranty limitations

This New Vehicle Limited Warranty is the only express warranty applicable to your vehicle. Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) neither assume, nor authorizes anyone to assume for it any other obligation or liability in connection with this warranty.

Limitation of remedies

Under the warranty, it is agreed that the sole exclusive remedy against JLR, and their retailer/authorized repairers shall be for the repair or replacement of defective parts as provided herein. The sole purpose of this exclusive remedy shall be to provide for the free repair and replacement of defective parts in the manner prescribed in this warranty. This exclusive remedy shall not be deemed to have failed its essential purpose so long as JLR, through their authorized retailers, are willing and able to repair or replace defective parts in the prescribed manner.

IMPLIED WARRANTIES - CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES

UNDER THE LAW, THE OWNER MAY BE ENTITLED TO THE BENEFIT OF CERTAIN IMPLIED WARRANTIES:

- AN IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY (THAT YOUR CAR IS REASONABLY FIT FOR THE GENERAL PURPOSE FOR WHICH IT WAS SOLD) OR,

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- AN IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. (THAT YOUR CAR IS SUITABLE FOR YOUR SPECIAL PURPOSES).

THESE IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE LIMITED, TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, TO THE TIME PERIOD COVERED BY THE WRITTEN WARRANTIES, OR TO THE APPLICABLE TIME PERIOD PROVIDED BY STATE LAW (USA ONLY) OR PROVINCIAL LAW (CANADA ONLY), WHICHEVER PERIOD IS SHORTER.

JLR DOES NOT ACCEPT RESPONSIBILITY UNDER ANY OF THE WARRANTIES IN THE PASSPORT TO SERVICE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR COMMERCIAL LOSS TO THE OWNER, OR ANY INCIDENTAL EXPENSES, LOSS OF TIME, OR INCONVENIENCE.

SOME STATES (USA ONLY) OR PROVINCES (CANADA ONLY) DO NOT PERMIT A LIMITATION ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY WILL LAST, OR ON THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO THE OWNER. THIS WARRANTY GIVES OWNERS SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS, AND THEY MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS THAT VARY FROM STATE TO STATE (USA ONLY), OR PROVINCE TO PROVINCE (CANADA ONLY).

Canada only: The information regarding limitations on incidental and consequential damages under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty also applies to the Emission Control System warranties.

Warranty statement

JLR warrants that during the warranty period, if a Land Rover vehicle is properly operated and maintained, repairs required to correct defects in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship will be performed without charge upon presentment for service at a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer; any component covered by this warranty found to be defective in materials or workmanship will be repaired or replaced, without charge with a new or re-manufactured part distributed by JLR at its sole option.

The warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of the first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first. For further information detailing your warranty period, please refer to the relevant topic. See **412, SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES**.

Canada only: Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) and your Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer are not responsible for any time that you lose, for any inconvenience you might be caused, for the loss of transportation, or for any other incidental or consequential damages you may have.

Warranty coverage

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty covers any factory-supplied component of the Land Rover vehicle that is defective during the basic warranty period, with the exception of tires and items such as:

- Lubricants
- Normal maintenance items
- Regularly scheduled maintenance, parts and labor

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Wear parts, except as listed below

The warranty includes any part scheduled for routine replacement during the warranty period if it is defective. If a part fails at the same time it is due for replacement it is not covered by the warranty.

Wear parts

Wear parts are warranted for one (1) year or until the vehicle has been driven 12,500 miles (20,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first. Wear parts include the following:

- Brake pads - defect only.

  Note: *Brake pads are covered for defects in material and workmanship only. Normal wear is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.*

- Windshield wiper blades.

Brake discs (rotors)

Brake discs are covered for defects in material and workmanship only. Normal wear is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Vehicle Startup Battery (12 volt)

The vehicle startup battery is warranted 100% for parts and labor for:

- **US**: Four (4) years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.
- **Canada**: Four (4) years or 80,000 kilometres, whichever occurs first.

Service adjustments

Any adjustment necessary to correct a defect in materials or workmanship will be performed without charge for one (1) year or until the vehicle has been driven 12,500 miles (20, 000 kilometres), whichever occurs first. The term 'adjustment' refers to minor repairs or adjustment not usually associated with the replacement of parts.

What is not covered

Damage caused by accident; alteration or misuse of the vehicle.

Examples are:

- Damage caused by collision, fire, flood, theft, freezing, vandalism, riot, explosion, or objects striking the vehicle
- Damage caused by negligence, misuse of the vehicle, improper repair, lack of or improper maintenance, overloading, racing, or using the vehicle as a stationary power source
- Modification, alteration, or conversion of the vehicle, and/or installation of non-approved accessories or components, that alter the original engineering and/or operating specifications or which result in damage to the original components
- Damage caused by tampering with the vehicle, tampering with the emissions systems or with other parts that affect these systems
- Damage caused by contaminated or improper fuel or fluids
- Damage caused by application of improper chemicals
- Alteration or modification of the vehicle, including changes to the body, chassis, or components after the vehicle leaves the control of JLR
- Disconnection, replacement, or alteration of the odometer, or where the actual distance cannot be determined due to the odometer being inoperative for an extended period of time
- Unauthorized replacement of the speedometer

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

This warranty shall be null and void if the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) has been altered or cannot be read, if the odometer has been replaced or altered and the true mileage cannot be determined.

Damage caused by use and/or the environment

Surface corrosion and deterioration of paint, trim, and appearance items that result from use and/or exposure to the elements are not covered.

Examples are:

- Stone chips and scratches
- Dings or dents
- Road salt
- Tree sap
- Bird droppings
- Lightning
- Hail damage
- Windstorm damage
- Earthquake damage
- Water or flood damage

Damage caused by improper maintenance

Damage caused by failure to maintain the vehicle, improperly maintaining the vehicle, or using the wrong fuel, oil, lubricants, or fluids is not correct. See **338, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** for correct fluid levels, and the Maintenance Schedule in this handbook for proper ways to maintain your vehicle.

Examples are:

- Oil changes
- Engine tune-up
- Wiper blades
- Oils, lubricants and other fluids
- Oil/air filters
- Brake linings/pads
- Cleaning and polishing

Other items and conditions not covered by this warranty

- Parts and accessories on your vehicle that are not JLR-approved.
- Vehicles that have been, or are reported as, dismantled, junked, rebuilt, reconstructed, salvaged, totaled, stolen, or exposed to fire or flood.
- Service adjustments, alignments and wear parts after one (1) year or 12,500 miles (20,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first.
- Painting the entire car solely for paint color matching. JLR reserves the right to determine whether painting the repaired or replaced panel to match the original finish is practical. JLR will not under any circumstances pay for painting the entire car solely for paint color matching.
- Normal noises or vibration. Your vehicle is a mechanical device, and all mechanical devices make some sort of noise and/or vibration. These noises and vibrations can differ from vehicle to vehicle, and JLR recognizes those noises as normal and characteristic of the product. Normal noise and/or vibration, as well as deterioration caused by normal wear and tear, each as determined by JLR or its representative, are not covered by our New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Extra warranty adjustment

Sometimes JLR may offer a special adjustment program to pay all or part of the cost of certain repairs beyond the terms of the warranty. Check with your Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer, or contact the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center to determine whether any adjustment program is applicable to your vehicle. See **437, CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**.

Please have available the following information:

- The model and the model year of your Land Rover vehicle
- The 17-digit Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) – located on a plate at the bottom left corner of the windshield; also shown on your vehicle's registration and insurance cards

Note: *JLR reserves the right to make modifications in vehicles manufactured and/or sold by them at any time without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar modifications in vehicles previously manufactured and/or sold by them.*

CORROSION PROTECTION LIMITED WARRANTY

Applicability: Vehicles originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, the United States, Puerto Rico, and Canada.

Warranty statement

JLR warrant that if any corrosion perforation occurs on the body of a Land Rover vehicle within six (6) years, unlimited mileage/distance, from the date of first retail sale or the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first, the panels affected by corrosion perforation will be repaired or replaced at a Land Rover retailer/ authorized repairer retailer at no charge to the owner.

Warranty coverage

This warranty applies only to corrosion perforation of painted body panels or the body shell. Corrosion perforation means the corroding-through of the vehicle body from the inside to the outside.

Any part or component bolted or attached to the body, such as the suspension or exhaust systems, is not covered by the warranty because it is not part of the 'body'. These components are covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Sheet metal damage repairs

Any automotive body shop that is repairing sheet metal damage should be instructed to apply proper anti-corrosive materials to bring those repaired areas into conformity with the original protection provided by the manufacturer. Damage caused by a failure to do so could void the Corrosion Warranty on any panels affected by the damage.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Aftermarket corrosion-proofing

Land Rover vehicles are protected internally with a wax-injection process. The use of aftermarket applications that contain solvents could compromise this factory coating. Claims for future corrosion perforation repairs could be denied because the factory coating had been rendered ineffectual.

Aluminum repairs

Land Rover vehicles employ full aluminum body panels and monocoque framework. All collision repairs must be performed by an authorized Jaguar Land Rover Aluminum Repair Center for the Corrosion Warranty to be applicable. Contact your local Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer for details, or to contact the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center, dial:

- **USA**: 1-800-637-6837
- **Canada**: 1-800-461-2325

Canada only: All collision repairs must be performed by an authorized Jaguar Land Rover Aluminum Repair Center for the Corrosion Warranty to be applicable.

FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES - USA ONLY

EMISSION DESIGN AND DEFECT WARRANTY

Applicability: All vehicles, certified in accordance with the Federal Clean Air Act, which are originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, the United States and Puerto Rico.

Warranty statement

Under the Federal Emission Design and Defect Warranty, Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) must provide coverage for two (2) years or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first. JLRNA has voluntarily extended this warranty to the warranty limits under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Bumper-to-Bumper coverage. See **412, SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES**.

The warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of the first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first, and continues for the time/distance stated above.

Items that require scheduled replacement are warranted up to the replacement interval as specified in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

JLRNA warrants that Land Rover vehicles are designed, built, and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in factory-supplied materials and workmanship which could cause the vehicle to fail applicable regulations. You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustments needed to correct emissions-related defects of the parts listed in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** section, shown later in this section of the Owner's Handbook, Labor and diagnostic costs are included.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2024

In addition, components with the suffix 1 ([1]) in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** lists are covered for eight (8) years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

EMISSION PERFORMANCE WARRANTY

Applicability: All vehicles, certified in accordance with the Federal Clean Air Act, which are originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, the United States and Puerto Rico.

Warranty Statement

The Federal Emission Performance Warranty is in effect for two (2) years or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first, beginning on the date of the first retail sale or the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first.

Under the Federal Emission Performance Warranty, JLRNA will repair, replace, or adjust, with no charge for labor, diagnosis or parts, any emission control device or system, if all of the following apply:

- Your vehicle is maintained and operated in accordance with the written instructions for proper maintenance and use listed in the Owner's Manual and this Passport to Service, and:
- Your vehicle fails to conform to the applicable emission standards as judged by an EPA-approved emission test and:
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction (including the denial of the right to use the vehicle) under local, State, or Federal law, and:
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

In addition, components with the suffix 1 ([1]) in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** lists are covered for eight (8) years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES - CANADA ONLY

EMISSION DESIGN AND DEFECT WARRANTY

Applicability: All vehicles, certified in accordance with Environment and Climate Change Canada, which are originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, Canada.

Warranty statement

Under the Federal Emission Design and Defect Warranty, Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) must provide coverage for two (2) years or 40, 000 kilometres, whichever occurs first. JLRC has voluntarily extended this warranty to the warranty limits under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Bumper-to-Bumper coverage. See **412, SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES**.

The warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of the first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first, and continues for the time/distance stated above.

Items that require scheduled replacement are warranted up to the replacement interval as specified in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

JLRC warrants that Land Rover vehicles are designed, built, and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with the Environment and Climate Change Canada emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in factory-supplied materials and workmanship which could cause the vehicle to fail applicable regulations. You will not be charged for repair, replacement, or adjustments needed to correct emissions-related defects of the parts listed in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** section, shown later in this section of the Owner's Handbook, Labor and diagnostic costs are included.

In addition, components with the suffix 1 ([1]) in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** lists are covered for eight (8) years or 130,000 kilometres, whichever occurs first.

EMISSION PERFORMANCE WARRANTY

Applicability: All vehicles, certified in accordance with Environment and Climate Change Canada, which are originally specified and built by Jaguar Land Rover Limited for, and registered in, Canada.

Warranty Statement

The Federal Emission Performance Warranty is in effect for two (2) years or 40, 000 kilometres, whichever occurs first, beginning on the date of the first retail sale or the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first.

Under the Federal Emission Performance Warranty, JLRC will repair, replace, or adjust, with no charge for labor, diagnosis or parts, any emission control device or system, if all of the following apply:

- Your vehicle is maintained and operated in accordance with the written instructions for proper maintenance and use listed in the Owner's Manual and this Passport to Service, and:
- Your vehicle fails to conform to the applicable emission standards as judged by an Environment and Climate Change Canada-approved emission test, and:
- You are subject to a penalty or sanction (including the denial of the right to use the vehicle) under local, State, provincial or Federal law, and:
- Your vehicle has not been tampered with, misused, or abused.

In addition, components with the suffix 1 ([1]) in the **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE** lists are covered for eight (8) years or 130, 000 kilometres, whichever occurs first.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE

The following is a list of the parts that are covered under the Federal Emission Control System Warranties. Your vehicle may not be equipped with certain components appearing on the list.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Air induction system

- Intake manifold
- Supercharger assembly
- Supercharger bypass actuator
- Supercharger electric bypass shut-off valve
- Supercharger intercooler
- Supercharger intercooler pump
- Supercharger intercooler radiator
- Turbocharger assembly
- Turbocharger intercooler

Exhaust system (including diesel Selective Catalyst Reduction (SCR) system)

- Catalytic converter[1], [3]
- EGR cooler and valve housing assembly
- Exhaust manifold
- Exhaust pipe (manifold to catalytic converter)
- SCR catalyst[1]
- SCR heater control unit
- SCR injector
- SCR oxidation catalyst[1]
- SCR particulate filter[5]
- SCR pump
- SCR tank
- SCR tank filler hose
- SCR tank interior module

Ignition system

- Glow plug
- Glow plug control module
- Ignition coil
- Spark plug

Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) system

- Oil filler cap
- Oil separator
- Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve

Powertrain control system

- Engine/powertrain control module[1], [2]
- Engine/powertrain control module direct input and direct output devices
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)[1], [4]
- Transmission Control Module (TCM)[1], [2], [8]
- Variable valve lift unit
- Variable valve timing solenoid
- Variable valve timing unit

Evaporative control system

- Fuel filler cap
- Fuel tank
- Fuel tank filler pipe/hose assembly
- Fuel tank leak detection assembly
- Fuel vapor purge valve
- Fuel vapor storage canister

Fuel delivery system

- Fuel injector
- Fuel injector supply manifold
- Fuel pump control module
- High pressure fuel pump assembly
- In-tank fuel pump assembly
- In-tank fuel sender and float(s) assembly
- Throttle body assembly

Braking control system

- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) control module[2], [6]

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) system

- 48 volt battery assembly
- 48 volt cables
- 48 volt junction box
- Battery Energy Control Module (BECM)[1], [2],[7]
- Belt Integrated Starter Generator (BISG) [1], [2]
- DC/DC converter
- DC/DC converter fan

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) system

- Automatic Temperature Control Module (ATCM)
- Auxiliary battery (12 volt)
- Battery Charger Control Module (BCCM)
- Battery Energy Control Module (BECM)[1], [2], [7]
- Brake Booster Module (BBM)
- Charge port and wire harness assembly
- Cooling fan(s)
- Electric Air Conditioning (A/C) compressor
- Electric Power Inverter Converter (EPIC)[1], [2]
- Electric Power Inverter Converter (EPIC) coolant pump
- High voltage battery assembly
- High voltage battery coolant expansion tank
- High voltage battery coolant pump
- High voltage battery cooler
- High voltage battery heater
- High voltage battery isolation valve
- High voltage battery radiator
- High voltage cables
- High voltage junction box
- High voltage manual service disconnect
- Motor generator and transmission assembly
- Motor generator coolant pump

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Miscellaneous items

- Thermostat
- Adaptors, belts, boots, brackets, bushings, clamps, clips, connectors, couplings, covers, ducting, fasteners, filters, flanges, gaskets, grommets, hoses, insulators, labels, pipes, seals, shields, sleeves, spacers, straps, tubing and wiring used with the systems or parts listed above.

[1] Parts covered for eight (8) years or 80, 000 miles (130, 000 kilometres), whichever occurs first.

[2] Includes hardware, software, and/or calibration.

[3] Includes the downpipe where integral to the catalytic converter assembly.

[4] Includes the instrument panel where the MIL is not a separately serviceable part.

[5] Covered for eight (8) years or 80,000 miles (130,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first, where the SCR particulate filter is integral to the SCR catalyst and/or the SCR oxidation catalyst.

[6] Covered for eight (8) years or 80,00 miles (130,000 kilometres), whichever occurs first, only for models with gasoline engines, or for PHEV models not covered under the Extended PHEV Warranty. Includes Hydraulic Control Unit (HCU) where Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) Control Module is not a separately serviceable part.

[7] Includes high voltage battery where Battery Energy Control Module (BECM) is not a separately serviceable part.

[8] Includes the transmission control valve assembly where the Transmission Control Module (TCM) is not a separately serviceable part.

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES

YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board and Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, manufactured and equipped to meet the state's stringent anti-smog standards. JLRNA must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed in this section, provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel injection system, the ignition system, the catalytic converter, and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, JLRNA will repair your vehicle at no cost to you. Repairs include diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage

This warranty is applicable to all vehicles that are registered in the following states:

- California
- Connecticut
- Delaware
- Maine
- Maryland
- Massachusetts
- New Jersey
- New York

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- Oregon
- Pennsylvania
- Rhode Island
- Vermont
- Washington

The warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first.

For three (3) years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first)

- If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by JLRNA to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.
- If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by JLRNA. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY. JLRNA has voluntarily extended your short term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY to the limits under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Bumper-to-Bumper coverage. See **412, SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES**.
  Parts covered under this DEFECTS WARRANTY are listed in the topic **EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE**. See **422, EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE**.
  An emission-related warranted part is any part on the vehicle, or any part installed during a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle that is subject to California emission standards.

For seven (7) years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first)

If a part listed on the seven (7) years or 70,000 miles parts lists (see below) is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by JLRNA. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

For eight (8) years or 80,000 miles (whichever occurs first)

If a part listed under **FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES - USA ONLY** with the suffix 1 (1) is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by JLRNA for a warranty period of eight (8) years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first. See **420, FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES - USA ONLY**.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage - Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs)

This warranty is only applicable to Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles registered in:

- California
- Connecticut
- Colorado
- Maine
- Maryland
- Massachusetts
- New Jersey
- New York
- Oregon
- Rhode Island
- Vermont

The warranty period for the vehicle begins on the date of first retail sale, or on the date of entry into demonstrator or company service, whichever occurs first.

PHEVs only - For fifteen (15) years or 150,000 miles (whichever occurs first):[1]

- If your vehicle fails a smog check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by JLRNA to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your emission control system PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.
- If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by JLRNA. This is your emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY. Parts covered under this DEFECTS WARRANTY are listed in the topic EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES COVERAGE. See **420, FEDERAL EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTIES - USA ONLY**.

An emission-related warranted part is any part on the vehicle, or any part installed during a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle that is subject to California emission standards.

[1] Except the high voltage battery, which is covered for (10) years or 150,000 miles (whichever occurs first).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LAND ROVER DISCOVERY

Part name	2.0L	3.0L
Coolant temperature sensor	-	✓
Fuel injector	-	✓
Fuel injector supply manifold	✓	✓
Fuel tank	✓	✓
Fuel vapor storage canister	✓	✓

Part name	2.0L	3.0L
High pressure fuel pump assembly	✓	✓
Intake manifold	✓	✓
In-tank fuel pump assembly	✓	✓
In-tank fuel sender and float(s) assembly	✓	✓
Knock sensor	✓	✓
MHEV 48 volt battery	-	✓
MHEV 48 volt cables	-	✓
MHEV 48 volt junction box	-	✓
MHEV DC/DC converter	-	✓
MHEV Supercharger electric bypass shut-off valve	-	
Oil separator	-	✓
Oxygen sensor (middle)	✓	✓
Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve	-	✓
Supercharger assembly		✓
Supercharger bypass actuator		✓
Supercharger intercooler	-	✓
Supercharger intercooler pump	-	✓
Thermostat	-	✓
Throttle body assembly	✓	✓
Turbocharger assembly	✓	✓
Turbocharger intercooler	✓	✓
Turbocharger intercooler pump	-	✓
Variable valve lift unit	✓	✓
Variable valve timing unit	✓	✓

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Note: *Miscellaneous Items listed under* ***EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE*** *receive 7 years/70,000 miles (whichever occurs first) warranty coverage whenever their repair or replacement is associated with the specific parts and models eligible for receiving repair as shown in the table above. See* ***422, EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY COVERAGE****.*

Owner's warranty responsibilities

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in this publication. JLRNA recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance of your vehicle, but JLRNA cannot deny warranty coverage solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer as soon as a problem exists.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that JLRNA may deny your warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities or if you want to report what you believe to be violations of the terms of this warranty you should contact the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center as outlined in the topic **JAGUAR LAND ROVER CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP CENTER**. See **437, CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**.

Alternatively, contact the California Air Resources Board at:

State of California Air Resources Board

Mobile Source Operations Division

9528 Telstar Avenue

El Monte, CA 91731

California maintenance schedules

There are maintenance schedules and parts replacement intervals for California specification vehicles that are considered the minimum requirement. Any part scheduled for replacement at a scheduled maintenance interval is covered only up to that scheduled maintenance interval. The service and replacement intervals for these items are indicated in the maintenance schedules in the Owner's Handbook and Passport to Service maintenance section.

GUIDELINES APPLICABLE TO WARRANTIES

US MILITARY SALES OVERSEAS DELIVERY VEHICLES WARRANTY PERIOD (U.S. only)

Overseas delivery vehicles obtained through the U.S. Military Sales Overseas Delivery Program that have been manufactured to U.S. specifications are entitled to all applicable Land Rover warranties as detailed in this handbook. Warranty coverage begins on the retail delivery date.

MILITARY SALES OVERSEAS DELIVERY VEHICLES WARRANTY PERIOD (Canada only)

Overseas delivery vehicles obtained through the Military Sales Overseas Delivery Program that have been manufactured to Canada specifications are entitled to all applicable Land Rover warranties as detailed in this handbook. Warranty coverage begins on the retail delivery.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Passport to service

OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Note: *All warranties except for the corrosion protection limited warranty.*

It is the owner's responsibility to follow the recommended Land Rover maintenance schedule. Land Rover vehicles with 2.0L and 3.0L gasoline engines should have their first scheduled maintenance at 21,000 miles (34,000 kilometres) or 24 months from the date of delivery, whichever occurs first. Land Rover vehicles with 5.0L gasoline and 3.0L diesel engines should have their first scheduled maintenance at 16,000 miles (26,000 kilometres) or 12 months from the date of delivery, whichever occurs first. Subsequent maintenance must be carried out at intervals not to exceed the recommended distance or months, whichever occurs first.

Should the vehicle have a high proportion of short journeys or operate in severe conditions, Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) recommends that the maintenance procedures be performed at intervals not to exceed six (6) months.

It is perfectly normal for the vehicle to consume some engine oil during normal use. It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that the engine oil is maintained at the proper level between the scheduled maintenance intervals. Additionally, more frequent checks of under hood fluids and tire pressures can help minimize your chance of being inconvenienced while on the road, and may extend the life of certain wear and tear components. Land Rover retailer/authorized repairers may offer supplemental maintenance services as a convenience to those owners who do not wish to perform these services themselves.

The owner must maintain a record of when and where each scheduled maintenance service was performed. JLR may request proof that the required scheduled maintenance service has been performed at the correct time.

Scheduled maintenance may be performed by any service agency that is in the business of servicing this type of vehicle. The vehicle owner may also perform the maintenance; however, he may be required to show that the proper parts were used and that he was able to perform the maintenance correctly. Improper maintenance performed by anyone other than a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer that results in repair costs during the warranty period are the responsibility of the vehicle owner.

The instructions in this publication specify that certain service parts are to be replaced at recommended intervals. These replacement parts are not covered by any vehicle emission warranty at any time unless the service part is shown to be defective during the warranty period.

It is the owner's responsibility to use only fuel which is specified in the Owner's Handbook. The use of leaded or alternative fuels could adversely affect the emission control system, causing the vehicle to fail an emission test, and may cause other vehicle running concerns. Subsequent repairs are the responsibility of the owner. Consult a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer as to when alternative fuel blends may be used, and the limitations involved.

All receipts covering maintenance work should be transferred to the new owner if the vehicle is sold.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

WHO MAY PERFORM WARRANTY WORK

In order to have work carried out under warranty, you must adhere to the following guidelines:

New vehicle limited warranty

Only a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer may perform repairs, adjustment and replacement of parts under the Land Rover New Vehicle Limited Warranty. In an emergency situation, when no Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer is available and it is not possible to get the vehicle to such a retailer, necessary repairs effected by any available service establishment may be covered by the warranty.

The owner is entitled to reimbursement for emergency repairs to items covered under this warranty, but the reimbursement is not to exceed the manufacturer's suggested retail price for all warranted parts replaced, labor charges based on the manufacturer's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair and the geographically appropriate hourly labor rate. Replaced parts and paid invoices must be presented at a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer as a condition for reimbursement for emergency repairs not performed at a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer.

Corrosion protection limited warranty

Only a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer may perform repairs and replacement of parts under the Land Rover Corrosion Protection Limited Warranty.

Emission control systems warranties

Repair to, or replacement of, any emission control system part found to be defective and covered by a Land Rover warranty will be performed by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer at his place of business at no charge to the owner for labor (including diagnosis) and parts.

The owner may elect to have maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control system performed by any automobile repair establishment or individual. The owner may elect to use parts other than Land Rover-approved service or remanufactured parts without invalidating this warranty; however, the cost of such service and parts will not be covered under the warranty.

While it is preferable that emission control system maintenance and repair work be performed by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer, the validity of Land Rover emission warranties does not depend on it. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual, using a certified part. While JLR recommends using approved parts, the validity of the warranty does not depend on the use of any particular brand of replacement parts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

REPLACEMENT EMISSION PARTS

The Land Rover emission control system was designed, built, tested and certified using genuine Land Rover parts, and the vehicle is certified by the manufacturer as being in conformity with Environmental Protection Agency and/or California Air Resources Board, and Environment and Climate Change Canada emission control regulations. It is recommended that any replacement parts used for maintenance, repair, or replacement be JLR-approved service or re-manufactured parts.

The use of replacement parts that are not of equivalent quality may impair the effectiveness of the emission control system. An owner using such parts should make sure that they are warranted by the manufacturer to be equivalent to genuine Land Rover parts in performance and durability.

The use of non-Land Rover-approved parts does not automatically invalidate the warranty. However, such parts are not covered under the warranty unless the non-Land Rover part is damaged by a Land Rover-approved service or re-manufactured part.

CONDITIONS FOR ACCEPTANCE OF EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY LIABILITY

JLR will not deny warranty liability resulting from:

- Properly installed, certified parts used in maintenance or repairs.
- Any cause attributable to the manufacturer.
- Warranty or pre-delivery work performed by the selling retailer/ authorized repairer (or by any other authorized service facility).

Nor will JLR deny such coverage because of work performed in an emergency situation to rectify an unsafe condition (including an unsafe driveability condition) attributable to the manufacturer if the owner has taken timely steps to put the vehicle back in proper operating condition.

JLR will not reject any claim because of the use of an uncertified or unapproved part, or for noncompliance with any maintenance instruction, unless this action has caused the vehicle to fail to comply with emission standards.

WARRANTY COVERAGE FOR ALTERED OR CONVERTED VEHICLES

All Land Rover vehicles incorporating alterations or conversions outside of Land Rover authorized programs will continue to carry the JLR warranty only on those areas of the vehicle that are not affected by the alteration or conversion.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

A Word from Your Retailer/Authorized Repairer About the Emission Control Equipment on Your New Vehicle (U.S. only)

1. Based upon written notification furnished by the manufacturer, we have knowledge that this vehicle is covered by an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Certificate of Conformity.
2. We have made a visual inspection limited to those emission control devices or portions thereof which are visible without removal or adjustment of any component or system of the vehicle, whether emissions-related or otherwise. Based on such visual inspection, there are no apparent deficiencies in the installation of emission control devices by the manufacturer. ('Emissions control device' is limited to all devices installed on a vehicle for the sole or primary purpose of controlling vehicle emissions which were not in general use prior to 1968.)
3. We have performed all emission control system preparation required by the manufacturer prior to the sale of the vehicle as set forth in the current pre-delivery service manual provided by the manufacturer.
4. Except as may be provided in Paragraph 5 below, if this vehicle fails an EPA-approved emission test prior to the expiration of three (3) months or 4,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the date or mileage at the time of delivery to the ultimate purchaser, and the vehicle has been maintained and used in accordance with the written instructions for proper maintenance and use, then the vehicle manufacturer shall remedy the nonconformity free of charge to the vehicle owner under the terms of the manufacturer's emission performance warranty.
5. If the vehicle with which this statement is delivered was placed in service as a demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, the manufacturer's emission performance warranty period commenced on the date the vehicle was first placed in service. Demonstrator vehicles or company cars will be identified as such on page ii of this booklet, where the date of entry into service is recorded.

Note: *The retailer/authorized repairer makes no representation or warranty that the emission control system or any part thereof is without defect nor that the system will perform properly. The manufacturer's emission performance warranty referred to above furnished with this vehicle is solely that of the manufacturer.*

This statement is required by section 207 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7541) and the EPA regulations issued thereunder.

OBTAINING WARRANTY REPAIRS

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HOW TO OBTAIN WARRANTY REPAIRS

Refer to the following guidelines in order to obtain a warranty repair:

New vehicle limited warranty, and corrosion protection limited warranty

To obtain repairs, replacements, service adjustments or wear parts replacement under your limited warranty, you must present your vehicle to a Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) retailer/authorized repairer (unless it is an 'emergency repair' as defined in the topic **New vehicle limited warranty**), within the applicable warranty period and request the warranty service you would like to receive. When making warranty repairs, the retailer/authorized repairer will use approved Land Rover parts, re-manufactured parts approved by JLR or other parts authorized by JLR.

Federal emission control system warranties

A warranty claim made under either the Emission Design and Defect Warranty or the Emission Performance Warranty may be submitted by bringing the Land Rover vehicle to any a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or to any facility authorized by JLR to perform such work or service. If the emission warranty claim is accepted, it will be the obligation of JLR to make all adjustments, repairs or replacement needed to ensure that the vehicle complies with applicable Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or Environment and Climate Change Canada emission standards, and that the vehicle will continue to comply and operate safely throughout the warranty period (provided the Land Rover vehicle is properly maintained and operated).

The warranty work required will be performed at the expense of JLR only if the repairs are performed by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or by any facility authorized by JLR to perform such work or service.

Most Land Rover retailer/authorized repairers will be able to inform owners promptly as to whether a claim under either vehicle emission warranty is covered. If the retailer/authorized repairer informs the owner that an emission warranty claim is not covered, the claim will be sent to JLR for formal determination.

JLR must render a final decision within 30 days of the date the vehicle was presented to a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or facility for emission related repairs or within the time period set by local, provincial, state or federal law for vehicle repairs to be completed without incurring further penalties or sanctions, whichever period is shorter. However, this time period may be extended if the owner requests a delay, or if an event occurs that is not attributable to JLR, or to the authorized repair facility.

If JLR agrees that the claim is not valid, a written explanation of the reasons why the claim is being denied will be provided.

If, under the Emission Performance Warranty only, a final determination is not received during the required time period, and the failure is not attributable to the owner/operator or to events that are beyond the control of the repair facility and JLR. JLR will be responsible for repairing the Land Rover vehicle's emission control system free of charge.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Similarly, if, under the Emission Performance Warranty only, the authorized repair facility is unable (for reasons not attributable to the owner/operator or to events that are beyond the control of the repair facility and JLR) to repair the Land Rover vehicle within the required time period, the owner shall be entitled to have the warranty remedy performed at the expense of JLR by any repair facility of the owner's choosing.

If the Land Rover vehicle must be tested, or other procedures must be performed to determine that the emission claim is valid, JLR must pay those expenses. However, if it is determined that there is reason to reject the claim, these expenses are the responsibility of the vehicle owner.

Further information concerning the vehicle emission control system warranties may be obtained by contacting the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center. See **437, CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**.

Information may also be obtained and violations of warranty terms may be reported by contacting:

USA: Environmental Protection Agency (The EPA)

Canada: Environment and Climate Change Canada

California emission control system warranties

A warranty claim made under either the Emission Defect Warranty or the Emission Performance Warranty may be submitted by bringing the Land Rover vehicle to any Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or to any facility authorized by Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) to perform such work or service. If the emission warranty claim is accepted, it will be the obligation of JLRNA to make all adjustments, repairs or replacements needed to ensure that the vehicle complies with applicable California Air Resources Board (CARB) and Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) emission standards, and that the vehicle will continue to comply and operate safely throughout the warranty period (provided the Land Rover vehicle is properly maintained and operated).

The warranty work required will be performed at the expense of JLRNA only if the repairs are performed by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or by any facility authorized by JLRNA to perform such work or service.

California smog check test

If a Land Rover vehicle fails a smog check test, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. The warranty work required will be performed at the expense of JLRNA only if the repairs are performed by a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or by another facility authorized by JLRNA to perform such work.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Most Land Rover retailer/authorized repairers will be able to inform owners promptly as to whether a claim under either vehicle emission warranty is covered.

If the retailer/authorized repairer informs the owner that an emission warranty claim is not covered, the claim can be sent to JLRNA for a final determination. JLRNA must render a final decision within 30 days of the date the vehicle was presented to a Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer or facility for emission related repair, or within the time period set by local, state or federal law for vehicle repairs to be completed without incurring further penalties or sanctions, whichever period is shorter. However, this time period may be extended if the owner requests a delay, or if an event occurs that is not attributable to JLRNA or to the authorized repair facility.

If JLRNA agrees that the claim is not valid, a written explanation of the reasons why the claim is being denied will be provided.

If, under the Emission Performance Warranty only, a final determination is not received during the required time period, and the failure is not attributable to the owner/operator or to events that are beyond the control of the repair facility and JLRNA, JLRNA will be responsible for repairing the Land Rover vehicle's emission control system free of charge.

Similarly, if, under the Emission Performance Warranty only, the authorized repair facility is unable (for reasons not attributable to the owner / operator or to events that are beyond the control of the repair facility and JLRNA) to repair the Land Rover vehicle within the required time period, the owner shall be entitled to have the warranty remedy performed at the expense of JLRNA by any repair facility of the owner's choosing.

If the Land Rover vehicle must be tested, or other procedures must be performed to determine that the emission claim is valid, JLRNA must pay those expenses. However, if it is determined that there is reason to reject the claim, these expenses are the responsibility of the vehicle owner.

Further information concerning the vehicle emission warranties may be obtained by contacting the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center. See **437, CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**.

Information may also be obtained and violations of warranty terms may be reported by contacting the EPA and/or CARB at the following addresses:

Director, Certification and Compliance Division (6405-J)

Environmental Protection Agency

1200 Pennsylvania Avenue N.W.

Washington, DC 20460

Or:

State of California Air Resources Board

Mobile Source Operations Division

9528 Telstar Avenue

El Monte, CA 91731

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE

JAGUAR LAND ROVER CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP CENTER

If you are dissatisfied with warranty repairs performed on your vehicle, the following steps should be taken to address your concerns:

- Discuss your concern with the retailer/authorized repairer's Service Manager and, if necessary, the owner or General Manager/Center Manager of the Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer.
- If the retailer/authorized repairer cannot resolve the concern to your satisfaction, you may contact the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center using one of the following options:

Write to:

USA:

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, New Jersey 07495

Canada:

Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC

Attention: Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center

75 Courtneypark Drive West, Unit 3

Mississauga, ON

L5W 0E3

Call:

USA: 1-800-637-6837

Canada: 1-800-461-2325

Mon. – Fri., 7:00 am – 9:00 pm Eastern

Sat., 9:00 am – 6:00 pm Eastern

Email:

USA: Go to **www.landroverusa.com** then:

- Click on **Contact Us** at the bottom of the Home page.
- Click on **Email**.
- Complete and return the customer service form.

Canada: Go to **www.landrover.ca** then:

- Select the desired language
- Click on **Contact Us**
- Click on **Click here for the Online form**.

When contacting JLR by telephone, a Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center Representative will answer your call and attempt to resolve your concern.

In order to expedite resolution of your concern, please provide the Jaguar Land Rover Customer Relationship Center Representative with the following information:

- The model and model year of your Land Rover vehicle.
- The 17-digit Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), located on a plate at the bottom left corner of the windshield. The VIN is also shown on your vehicle's registration and insurance cards.
- Approximate mileage/odometer reading.
- The servicing retailer/authorized repairer's name and address.
- Brief details of the concern.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

State sponsored alternate dispute resolution programs

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) participates in state sponsored alternate dispute resolution programs where they are available and required by law. The alternate dispute resolution programs are operated by state agencies. The state agency responsible for administering the program in your state should be contacted for further information.

Province-sponsored alternative dispute resolution programs (Canada only)

Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) participates in province-sponsored alternative dispute resolution programs where they are available and required by law. These alternatives dispute resolution mechanisms are essentially third party panels.

Independent alternative dispute resolution programs

JLRNA participates in two independent alternative dispute resolution programs.

AUTOCAP® (Automotive Consumer Action Program) and BBB AUTO LINE® are national alternative dispute resolution programs, sponsored by the National Automobile Dealers Association and the Better Business Bureau, respectively. Consumers may contact AUTOCAP® through the state's department of motor vehicles or BBB AUTO LINE® through the Better Business Bureau. For details on BBB AUTO LINE®, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

State replacement/refund statutes ('Lemon Law' rights)

Lemon laws permit owners to obtain a replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price under certain circumstances.

The provisions of the laws vary from state to state. To the extent allowed by state law, it is required that you first provide JLRNA with written notification of any defects or non-conformities covered by state law. In some states, JLRNA may have the right to a final attempt to correct the warranty non-conformities before you pursue the remedies provided by the laws.

Your written notification should be sent by certified mail to the address shown in the topic **JAGUAR LAND ROVER CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIP CENTER** above.

Refer to the Dispute Resolution supplement for information regarding you rights under your state's Lemon Laws. See **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact BBB AUTO LINE® directly for assistance at 800-955-5100, option #1 or online at **www.bbb.org**.

LAND ROVER ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

LAND ROVER ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM

As part of Jaguar Land Rover (JLR)'s commitment to a pleasurable driving experience, the Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program is furnished at no additional cost to you for the term of your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program is only available to vehicles with the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. See **412, SUMMARY OF WARRANTIES**.

If your New Vehicle Limited Warranty is canceled or voided for any reason (including, but not limited to, modification or alteration to the vehicle, or if the vehicle's title is reported as dismantled, fire, flood, junk, rebuilt, reconstructed, salvaged, totaled, or stolen) your Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program privileges and services detailed herein are also canceled and voided.

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program is only available to vehicles with the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The benefits detailed here are available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year, through our toll-free telephone number. For Roadside Assistance dial:

- **USA**: 1-800-637-6837
- **Canada**: 1-800-461-2325

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE PROGRAM BENEFITS

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance Program offers the following benefits:

24-hour emergency towing

In the event of a warranty-related disablement involving your Land Rover vehicle that renders the vehicle inoperative, Land Rover Roadside Assistance will arrange to transport your vehicle to the nearest Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer. This service will be provided throughout the U.S., Canada and Puerto Rico at no cost to you. Your vehicle must be accessible to our dispatched transport facility (as determined by our facility) to receive this service.

24-hour roadside assistance

Should you accidentally run out of fuel, require a battery jump, or need help in changing a flat tire, Land Rover Roadside Assistance will dispatch assistance to deliver a small quantity of gas, change a flat tire with your inflated spare, or arrange a battery jump to allow you to proceed to your destination.

Trip interruption benefits

Trip interruption benefits are provided in the event of a warranty-related disablement that occurs more than 50 miles (80 kilometres) from your primary residence. Reasonable reimbursement for meals, lodging and alternate transportation expenses are included unless you have already reached your final destination.

Note: *Reimbursement for meals and lodging is not extended if you have already reached your final destination.*

Original receipts must be provided for your reimbursement to be processed.

Items such as entertainment, non-essential goods and services, rental vehicle drop-off fees, expenses and claims paid by your insurance company or other provider, and insurance deductibles are not eligible for reimbursement.

Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer locator service

Land Rover Roadside Assistance will provide owners with the location and phone number of the nearest Land Rover retailer/authorized repairer. When traveling, this will enable you to locate Land Rover authorized parts and service via a simple toll-free call from anywhere in the United States or Canada.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Using Land Rover Roadside Assistance

If your Land Rover vehicle becomes disabled while in operation, proceed as follows:

- To call the 24-hour toll-free Roadside Assistance Line dial:
  - **USA**: 1-800-637-6837
  - **Canada**: 1-800-461-2325
- Provide the Land Rover Roadside Assistance representative with the following information:
  - Your name.
  - The 17-digit Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The VIN appears on your insurance card, and on the plate located at the bottom left of the vehicle windshield.
  - The current mileage/odometer reading of your Land Rover vehicle.
  - The vehicle location.
  - A telephone number where you can be reached.
  - A brief description of the problem.

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance representative will work with you to find the best solution to the problem. If it is safe to do so, it is recommended that you remain with the vehicle until assistance arrives.

Exceptions

The Land Rover Roadside Assistance program does NOT cover the following:

- Land Rover rental fleet vehicles
- Disablement caused by vandalism
- Disablements caused by accidents

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

MAINTENANCE SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

Climatic and operating conditions affect maintenance requirements to a large extent. Therefore, we recommend that you contact a Jaguar Land Rover (JLR) retailer/authorized repairer about the determination of maintenance intervals.

Vehicles operating under arduous conditions, e.g., frequent short trips, off-road use, trailer towing and frequent starts below freezing, will require more frequent servicing. Under these circumstances, the maintenance intervals should be cut in half.

Performance of recommended maintenance is not required to retain eligibility for the emission warranty or manufacturer recalls.

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Routine services must be carried out throughout the life of the vehicle. All vehicles have a service interval indicator in the instrument panel. When a service is required, **SERVICE** is displayed in the instrument panel when the engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

SERVICE is displayed in the instrument panel. The instrument panel also displays when the next service is due, based on actual time or distance traveled (whichever occurs first).

On completion of a service, the instrument panel countdown feature will be reset.

Service schedules for arduous operating conditions (routine stop and go driving, extreme temperatures, dusty conditions, off-road driving, and/or frequent trailer towing) are not displayed in the instrument panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LAND ROVER DISCOVERY 2.0L

Interval: Miles x 1,000	21	42	63	84	105
Interval: Kilometres x 1,000	34	68	102	136	170
Interval: Years	2	4	6	8	10
Check for and complete all open Recalls and Service Actions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Perform vehicle inspection checks	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace engine oil and filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace engine air cleaner element				✓	
Replace interior air filter element	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace brake fluid		✓		✓	✓
Replace spark plugs			✓		
Replace all flexible brake hoses			✓		
Replace front accessory drive belt					✓
Replace front accessory drive belt on MHEV only			✓		
Replace transmission oil and filter					✓
Replace transfer case oil			✓		
Replace front differential oil					✓
Replace rear non-locking differential oil (if fitted)					✓
Replace rear locking differential oil (if fitted)			✓		
Replace engine coolant					✓
Perform comprehensive road test; check operation of all vehicle features	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Reset Engine Oil Level and Service Interval Indicators	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Fault lamp(s) illuminated? If 'yes', use Jaguar Land Rover-approved diagnostic tool for diagnosis/repair	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Report any unusual features of vehicle condition and additional work required	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Endorse service record	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

LAND ROVER DISCOVERY 3.0L

Interval: Miles x 1,000	21	42	63	84	105
Interval: Kilometres x 1,000	34	68	102	136	170
Interval: Years	2	4	6	8	10
Check for and complete all open Recalls and Service Actions	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Perform vehicle inspection checks	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace engine oil and filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace engine air cleaner element		✓			
Replace interior air filter element	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Replace brake fluid	✓			✓	✓
Replace spark plugs			✓		
Replace front accessory drive belt					✓
Replace front accessory drive belt on MHEV only			✓		
Replace all flexible brake hoses			✓		
Replace transmission oil and filter					✓
Replace transfer case oil			✓		
Replace front differential oil					✓
Replace rear non-locking differential oil (if fitted)					✓
Replace rear locking differential oil (if fitted)			✓		
Replace engine coolant					✓
Perform comprehensive road test; check operation of all vehicle features	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Reset Engine Oil Level and Service Interval Indicators	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Fault lamp(s) illuminated? If 'yes', use Jaguar Land Rover-approved diagnostic tool for diagnosis/repair	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Report any unusual features of vehicle condition and additional work required	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Endorse service record	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

HAZARDOUS WASTE MANAGEMENT

Certain components of this vehicle such as air bag modules, seat belt pre-tensioners, etc., may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See **www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate**.

For engine oil: See **326, USED ENGINE OIL**.

For used batteries: See **351, REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY** and **24, SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

NOTICE TO ALL OWNERS - USA ONLY

Some states require that specific written notification be provided to new owners regarding their rights upon purchase or lease of a new motor vehicle. All of those statements are contained in this Dispute Resolution Supplement and are listed alphabetically by state.

To the extent allowed by state law, it is required that you provide Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) with written notification of any defect or nonconformity covered by state laws prior to resorting to a legal remedy. This includes resorting to arbitration under either a state-run arbitration program or an informal dispute resolution program. Even if your state's law does not require such a written notice, it may be helpful in attempting to resolve any concerns with your vehicle. Your written notification should be sent to the address on this page. In some states, JLRNA has the right to a final repair attempt to correct the warranty nonconformity before you pursue the remedies provided by law.

These basic requirements are also contained in this supplement. The contents of this supplement represent the best effort by JLRNA to provide the most current and accurate information. We recommend that you carefully review the information provided prior to resorting to a legal remedy.

In the event you have any questions regarding the information in this supplement, you may contact us at the address and telephone number provided below.

In order for us to be able to provide you with the greatest possible assistance, please have the following information available when you call:

- The last 8 digits of the 17-digit Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). These will tell us the year in which your vehicle was built and the exact build sequence.
- The current mileage on your vehicle.
- The name of the selling and servicing retailer(s).
- Daytime and evening phone numbers where we can contact you.

Your satisfaction is of paramount importance to us and we welcome the opportunity to answer any questions you may have regarding your vehicle. We can be reached at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

JLRNA is committed to being the best car company in the eyes of our customers. Together with our authorized retailers, we will do everything that we reasonably can to assure that your vehicle ownership experience is filled with many miles of driving pleasure.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Whenever you experience a problem or concern, please follow the procedure set forth below in the listed sequence to ensure the most efficient resolution. JLRNA retailer/authorized repairers are trained to help you. Generally, any problems can be solved most effectively by speaking with the retailer/authorized repairer personnel.

1. Speak with your service advisor. Your service advisor is likely to be the person most familiar with your vehicle and your situation.
2. Take your problem to the retailer/authorized repairer's Service Manager. If the problem is still not resolved to your satisfaction, then arrange to meet with the retailer/authorized repairer's General Manager or Center Manager.
3. If you are still not satisfied, contact our Customer Relationship Center using the details shown above.

We want to make your ownership experience a positive one. Be assured that if you take the time to contact us, we will take the time to investigate your complaint and do our very best to resolve whatever your complaints may be.

BBB AUTO LINE®

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) is committed to the resolution of customer matters that are brought to our attention. However, there may be instances where a mutually satisfactory resolution is difficult to achieve.

In the unlikely event that neither retailer/authorized repairer personnel nor our Customer Relationship Center are able to satisfy your concerns or otherwise resolve any complaints to your satisfaction, please note that JLRNA participates in the BBB AUTO LINE®. BBB AUTO LINE® is a dispute resolution program administered by the BBB National Programs through local Better Business Bureaus.

Some states' Lemon Laws require you to use the BBB AUTO LINE® arbitration program before filing a court action pursuant to that law. To determine whether your state's Lemon Law requires prior use of BBB AUTO LINE ®, please see the appropriate page in this supplement.

BBB AUTO LINE® is an out-of-court program administered by the BBB National Programs to settle disputes between consumers and automobile manufacturers. For your information, the following are answers to some of the most commonly asked questions about BBB AUTO LINE®.

You are free to contact BBB AUTO LINE® directly for more information. They can be reached at:

BBB AUTO LINE®, BBB National Programs, Inc.

3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600

Arlington, VA 22201-3843

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100, option #2.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Is BBB AUTO LINE® associated with Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC?

No. BBB AUTO LINE® is a program administered by the BBB National Programs, Inc., an independent organization providing arbitration and mediation services to the public for over 30 years.

How do I file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE®?

You may file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE® at **www.bbb.org** or you may call 1-800-955-5100, option #2 and provide the following information:

- Your name and address.
- The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) of your vehicle.
- The make, model, and year of your vehicle.
- The current mileage.
- The date of purchase or lease.
- A description of the problem with your vehicle.
- A summary of the repair history.
- The servicing retailer name.

After your claim is filed with BBB AUTO LINE® you will be sent a copy of the Customer Claim Form that summarizes the information you provided to them. You will also receive JLRNA's Program Summary, the brochure 'How BBB AUTO LINE® Works', and other information to explain how the program can assist you in resolving your dispute.

You will be asked to review the Customer Claim Form, correct any errors, add any missing information and return a signed copy to the BBB, as well as send to the BBB all relevant documents that support your claim.

When the BBB opens your case they will provide us at JLRNA a copy of your Customer Claim Form.

Will this cost me anything?

No. JLRNA has contracted with the BBB National Programs to provide this service without charge.

How does BBB AUTO LINE® work?

Once you contact BBB AUTO LINE®, BBB staff may try to help resolve your dispute through mediation. If mediation is not successful, or if you do not wish to participate in mediation, eligible customers may present their case to an arbitrator at an informal hearing, at which time each side will have the opportunity to present its side of the case. After the hearing, the arbitrator will make a decision regarding the remedies that you are seeking.

Are there limitations to my filing a claim?

Yes. Not all claims are eligible for arbitration. Eligibility is limited based upon the age and mileage of your vehicle. Additionally, JLRNA has pre-committed to arbitrate certain unresolved claims relating to our vehicles. For example, claims must allege a defect in the vehicle's material or workmanship, and/or an inability to repair the vehicle so that it conforms to the written warranty. All of JLRNA pre-commitment eligibility requirements are found in our Program Summaries, which you may obtain from BBB AUTO LINE®.

How long does the process take?

The arbitrator's decision will ordinarily be issued within 40 days from the time your complaint is filed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

What remedies can I get from BBB AUTO LINE®?

There are various remedies available to a consumer who seeks to arbitrate a claim through the BBB AUTO LINE® program. You may seek repairs, reimbursement for past repairs, and repurchase or replacement of your vehicle. Under some circumstances, you may also seek additional amounts. This is just a summary of the remedies you may seek; for a complete itemization, you may contact BBB AUTO LINE® directly or our offices for a copy of the Program Summary.

What if I don't like the BBB's decision?

You are free to reject the decision issued by the BBB arbitrator. If you reject the decision, you will be free to pursue further legal action at your own expense. If you accept the arbitrator's decision, JLRNA will be bound by the decision and will comply with the decision within a reasonable time not to exceed 30 days after we receive notice of your acceptance of the decision.

Again, we hope that you will find this program unnecessary after contacting us directly, but we do want you to be aware of this very important service.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATES OF ALABAMA, ARIZONA, MISSISSIPPI, MISSOURI, NEW MEXICO, NORTH CAROLINA, NORTH DAKOTA, OKLAHOMA, OREGON, SOUTH CAROLINA, SOUTH DAKOTA, TENNESSEE, WYOMING

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

The above states have enacted 'Lemon Laws' that define a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under these laws, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATES OF ALASKA, DELAWARE, MONTANA, NEBRASKA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regard to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

The above states have enacted 'Lemon Laws' that define a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under these laws, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing any other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF ARKANSAS

Please refer to the booklet prepared by the Consumer Protection Division of the Arkansas Office of the Attorney General explaining a consumer's rights and obligations under the Arkansas New Motor Vehicle Quality Assurance Act (the 'Act'). A copy of that booklet was provided to you at the time of your vehicle purchase in the State of Arkansas. If you need an additional copy or if you have any additional questions, please let us know.

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) can be reached at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

As detailed in the booklet referenced above, Arkansas has enacted a law that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify JLRNA in writing by certified mail or registered mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them. Written notice is required before you may be eligible for a refund or replacement of your vehicle under the provisions of the Arkansas New Motor Vehicle Quality Assurance Act. Written notice of a defect should be sent to the address above.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, a dispute settlement program administered by the BBB National Programs (3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600 Arlington, VA 22201-3843) through local Better Business Bureaus. BBB AUTO LINE® and JLRNA have been certified under the Arkansas New Motor Vehicle Quality Assurance Act. You must first use BBB AUTO LINE® before filing any court action under the Act.

To file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE®, you may visit **www.bbb.org** or call 1-800-955-5100, option #2. Your call will automatically be directed to the appropriate BBB AUTO LINE® office. There is no charge for this call.

In order to file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE®, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

Unless you would like to proceed directly to arbitration, BBB staff will try to achieve a resolution of your dispute by serving as an intermediary between you and JLRNA. If that does not successfully resolve your dispute, and your claim is eligible for arbitration, you may present your case to an arbitrator at an informal hearing. The arbitrator's decision should ordinarily be issued 40 days from the time your complaint is filed.

You are free to reject the decision issued by a BBB AUTO LINE® arbitrator. If you reject the decision, you will be free to pursue further legal action. The arbitrator's decision and any findings may be admissible in a civil action arising out of a vehicle warranty obligation and relating to a matter considered by the BBB AUTO LINE® program.

If you accept the arbitrator's decision, JLRNA will be bound by the decision, and will comply with the decision within a reasonable time not to exceed 30 days after you accept the decision.

Please call BBB AUTO LINE® for further details about your eligibility for this program.

For further information regarding your rights and obligations under the Arkansas Lemon Law, you may contact the Consumer Protection Division of the Office of the Arkansas Attorney General at 501-682-2341.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA

Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) participates in the BBB AUTO LINE®, a mediation/arbitration program administered by the BBB National Programs (3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600 Arlington, VA 22201-3843) through local Better Business Bureaus. BBB AUTO LINE® and JLRNA have been certified by the Arbitration Certification Program of the California Department of Consumer Affairs.

If you have a problem arising under a JLRNA written warranty, we encourage you to bring it to our attention. JLRNA can be reached at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

If we are unable to resolve your problem, you may file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE®. Claims must be filed with BBB AUTO LINE® within six (6) months after the expiration of the warranty.

To file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE®, you may visit **www.bbb.org** or call 1-800-955-5100, option #2. There is no charge for this call.

In order to file a claim with BBB AUTO LINE, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

BBB staff may try to help resolve your dispute through mediation. If mediation is not successful, or if you do not wish to participate in mediation, claims within the program's jurisdiction may be presented to an arbitrator at an informal hearing. The arbitrator's decision should ordinarily be issued within 40 days from the time your complaint is filed. There may be a delay of up to 30 days if the arbitrator requests an inspection/report by an impartial technical expert or further investigation and report by BBB AUTO LINE®.

You are required to use BBB AUTO LINE® before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22. You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE® before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by Title I of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. Sec. 2301, et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by Title I of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or California Civil Code Section 1793.22, resort to BBB AUTO LINE® is not required by those statutes.

The following remedies may be sought in BBB AUTO LINE®: repairs, reimbursement for money paid to repair a vehicle or other expenses incurred as result of a vehicle nonconformity repurchase or replacement of your vehicle and compensation for damages and remedies available under JLRNA's written warranty or applicable law.

You may reject the decision issued by a BBB AUTO LINE® arbitrator. If you reject the decision, you will be free to pursue further legal action. The arbitrator's decision and any findings will be admissible in a court action.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If you accept the arbitrator's decision, JLRNA will be bound by the decision, and will comply with the decision within a reasonable time not to exceed 30 days after we receive notice of your acceptance of the decision.

Please call BBB AUTO LINE® for further details about the program.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF COLORADO

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Colorado has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them. A notification form has been provided at the back of this Supplement for your use.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF CONNECTICUT

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Connecticut has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

If, within two years after the date of the delivery of your new vehicle, or 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first, there have been four (4) or more unsuccessful repair attempts to repair the same nonconformity, or the vehicle has been out of service for a total of thirty (30) or more calendar days, you may be entitled to a replacement vehicle or, upon return of your vehicle, a refund of the full purchase price less a reasonable allowance for your use of the vehicle.

You may be entitled to the same replacement vehicle or refund if within one year after delivery your new vehicle has been subject to repair two (2) unsuccessful times for a nonconformity which results in a condition which is likely to cause death or serious bodily injury if the vehicle is driven.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing. In our effort to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to address and correct any problems that you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, please see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is furnished to you in the form required by Connecticut state law:

SOMETIMES JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC OFFERS A SPECIAL ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM TO PAY ALL OR PART OF THE COST OF CERTAIN REPAIRS BEYOND THE TERMS OF THE WARRANTY. CHECK WITH YOUR RETAILER/AUTHORIZED REPAIRER TO DETERMINE WHETHER ANY ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM IS APPLICABLE TO YOUR MOTOR VEHICLE.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regard to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

The District of Columbia has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

We encourage you to report any nonconformity, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you are still dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by the law of the District of Columbia:

Notice to purchaser

IF, AFTER A REASONABLE NUMBER OF ATTEMPTS, THE MANUFACTURER, ITS AGENT, OR AUTHORIZED DEALER IS UNABLE TO REPAIR OR CORRECT ANY NONCONFORMITY, DEFECT, OR CONDITION WHICH RESULTS IN SIGNIFICANT IMPAIRMENT OF THE MOTOR VEHICLE, THE MANUFACTURER, AT THE OPTION OF THE CONSUMER, SHALL REPLACE THE MOTOR VEHICLE WITH A COMPARABLE MOTOR VEHICLE, OR ACCEPT THE RETURN OF THE MOTOR VEHICLE FROM THE CONSUMER AND REFUND TO THE CONSUMER THE FULL PURCHASE PRICE, INCLUDING ALL SALES TAX, LICENSE FEES, REGISTRATION FEES, AND ANY SIMILAR GOVERNMENTAL CHARGES. IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING YOUR RIGHTS, YOU MAY CONTACT THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AND REGULATORY AFFAIRS.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF FLORIDA

Please refer to the booklet 'Consumer Guide to the Florida Lemon Law' prepared by the Florida Department of Legal Affairs. A copy of that booklet was provided to you at the time of your vehicle purchase in the State of Florida. If you need an additional copy, or if you have any additional questions, please let us know. Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) can be reached at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Florida has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has a certain nonconformity that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

As detailed in the booklet referred to above, in order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify JLRNA in writing by certified, registered or express mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them. Please use the Motor Vehicle Defect Notification form found in the 'Consumer Guide to the Florida Lemon Law'.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing a Request for Arbitration with the Florida New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF GEORGIA

The following statement is provided to you in the form required by Georgia law.

The Georgia Lemon Law:

- The vehicle must be purchased, leased, or registered in Georgia.
- Covers new motor vehicles or demonstration vehicles, if titled as new.
- Covers new trucks up to 12,000 pounds gross vehicle weight rating and the self-propelled and chassis portion of new motor homes.
- Covers non-conformities first reported within the lemon law rights period, which is the first two years or 24,000 miles of operation of the vehicle, whichever occurs first.
- A vehicle may qualify under the lemon law after the manufacturer or its authorized dealer has been given a reasonable number of attempts to repair the same nonconformity within the lemon law rights period, but has not been able to repair the nonconformity.
- Under the lemon law, a reasonable number of attempts is deemed to be:
  - (**a**) one attempt, if the nonconformity is a serious safety defect;
  - (**b**) three attempts, if the nonconformity, although not a serious safety defect, substantially impairs the use, value, or safety of the vehicle; or,
  - (**c**) a cumulative total of 30 days during which the vehicle is out of service for repair of one or more non-conformities.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- After a reasonable number of attempts to repair a serious safety defect or any other nonconformity (**either a. or b. above**), the consumer must notify the manufacturer and provide the manufacturer with a final opportunity to repair the nonconformity.
- If the manufacturer fails to correct the nonconformity after the final repair attempt, or if the vehicle is out of service by reason of repair of one or more nonconformities for a cumulative total of 30 days, the consumer may be eligible for a refund for the purchase price of the vehicle or a replacement vehicle.
- It is **very important** to keep copies of all work orders, reports (such as vehicle inspection, diagnosis, or test drive reports) and written correspondence with the manufacturer. Remember, you are entitled to receive a fully itemized and legible statement or repair order each time you take your vehicle in for diagnosis or repair.
- To assert your rights under the law, other requirements may apply. For further information, contact the Governor's Office of Consumer Affairs.

Retailer responsibilities

The selling retailer MUST collect a $3.00 Warranty Rights Fee on every covered new vehicle sold. The selling retailer should provide the Owner's Manual produced by the manufacturer with each new vehicle sold. The manufacturer should include in the manual a list of manufacturer addresses and customer service phone numbers. The customer service representative listed will be authorized to direct any repair work that may need to be done to the new vehicle.

A consumer should document every repair attempt. After each repair attempt, the vehicle owner should obtain and keep a copy of the repair receipt, which should legibly state:

- A description of the problem or identification of the nonconformity;
- Any diagnosis made;
- A description of all work performed;
- A list of any parts and labor involved;
- A list of any parts and odometer reading when the vehicle was brought in for repair; and
- The date the vehicle was made available to the owner.

If you do not receive such repair receipt, contact the retailer; if you still can't get it, contact the Office of Consumer Affairs.

When it appears that a reasonable number of attempts regarding a nonconformity will be made without correcting the problem, you should contact the Office of Consumer Affairs for more specific information about your rights. If you choose to proceed under the Georgia Lemon Law, you may be waiving other legal rights. It is very important that you understand the waiver of these rights before beginning proceedings under the Georgia Lemon Law.

If you choose to proceed under the Georgia Lemon Law, you must notify the manufacturer, in writing, when a reasonable number of attempts have been made. Upon receipt of the notification, the manufacturer must be given one final opportunity to repair the nonconformity. If the manufacturer cannot repair the nonconformity, the manufacturer must, at the option of the consumer, either repurchase or replace the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

If a dispute arises over the repurchase or replacement of the vehicle, you may submit the dispute to the Office of Consumer Affairs for arbitration by Georgia New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Panel. Appeals may be made to a state operated arbitration panel, and then to Superior Court. You may request a Dispute Application by contacting:

Office of Consumer Affairs

ATTN: Georgia Lemon Law

2 Martin Luther King, Jr. Drive, Suite 356

Atlanta, Georgia 30334

404-651-9396 in Metro Atlanta, or

800-869-1123, statewide.

THE ABOVE IS ONLY A BRIEF SUMMARY OF YOUR RIGHTS AND REMEDIES AS A GEORGIA CONSUMER UNDER THE GEORGIA LEMON LAW. IF YOU THINK YOU MAY HAVE A NONCONFORMITY WHICH QUALIFIES FOR PROTECTION, YOU SHOULD CONTACT THE OFFICE OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS FOR MORE INFORMATION.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF HAWAII

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Hawaii has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Hawaii law:

Your rights under Hawaii's 'Lemon Law'

If you have serious and/or continuing warranty repair problems with your new motor vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

A vehicle may qualify as a 'lemon' when one or more substantial (serious safety or nonconforming) defects have been examined or repaired at least once or the motor vehicle has been out-of-service at least thirty (30) cumulative business days for repair during the Lemon Law rights period (i.e., whichever comes first – the expiration of the manufacturer's express warranty period, 24,000 miles or two (2) years after the original delivery of the motor vehicle).

In addition, at least one of the following must apply:

- The 'nonconforming defect' has been examined or repaired three or more times and the defect continues to exist; or
- A 'life-threatening safety defect' has been examined or repaired at least once and the defect continues to exist; or
- The vehicle has been out-of-service because of repair of one or more defects for thirty (30) or more cumulative business days.

AND:

You must give the manufacturer written notice of the defect and an opportunity to repair it. The manufacturer's address is as follows:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

555 MacArthur Boulevard

Mahwah, NJ 07430

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

If your vehicle qualifies as a 'lemon', the manufacturer may be required to repurchase or replace it.

If you believe you own a 'lemon', you may participate in the State Certified Arbitration Program (SCAP). For information and/or to initiate this proceeding, please contact:

Regulated Industries Complaints Office

235 S. Beretania Street, Ninth Floor

Honolulu, HI 96813

Telephone: 808-587-3222

If you decide to arbitrate through the SCAP, the arbitration must be initiated within one year after the expiration of the Lemon Law rights period. There is a $50.00 filing fee to process your case, which will be returned to you if you win your arbitration. The arbitration decision will be issued within forty-five (45) days after you initiate your complaint.

Whenever a vehicle is returned from diagnosis or repair under the manufacturer's warranty, the retailer must provide a legible itemized repair order. It is very important to keep copies of all repair orders.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF IDAHO

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

The state of Idaho has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program) before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by the state of Idaho:

IMPORTANT: IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER THE STATE'S LEMON LAW TO REPLACEMENT OF IT OR A REFUND OF ITS PURCHASE PRICE OR YOUR LEASE PAYMENTS. HOWEVER, TO BE ENTITLED TO REFUND OR REPLACEMENT, YOU MUST FIRST NOTIFY THE MANUFACTURER, ITS AGENT OR ITS AUTHORIZED RETAILER IN WRITING AND GIVE THEM AN OPPORTUNITY TO REPAIR THE VEHICLE.

YOU ALSO HAVE A RIGHT TO SUBMIT YOUR CASE TO THE CONSUMER ARBITRATION PROGRAM WHICH THE MANUFACTURER MUST OFFER IN THIS STATE.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF ILLINOIS

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Illinois has enacted a law that defines a consumer's rights in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired after a reasonable number of attempts. If, within one year after the date of the delivery of your new vehicle, or 12,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first, there have been four (4) or more unsuccessful attempts to repair the same nonconformity, or the vehicle has been out of service for a total of 30 or more business days, you may be entitled to a comparable replacement vehicle or, upon return of your vehicle, a refund of the full purchase price including all collateral charges, less a reasonable allowance for your use of the vehicle.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATES OF INDIANA, KENTUCKY

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

These states have enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under these laws, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of a claim under this law. We encourage you to report any nonconformity to us as well. In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing any other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF IOWA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Iowa has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing, by certified mail, registered mail or overnight service, of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Iowa law:

THE PURCHASER OR LESSEE OF THIS VEHICLE IS PROTECTED UNDER THE WARRANTY PROVISIONS OF IOWA CODE CHAPTER 322G, COMMONLY REFERRED TO AS THE 'LEMON LAW.' IF THIS VEHICLE FAILS TO CONFORM TO THE MANUFACTURER'S EXPRESS WARRANTY DURING THE TERM OF THE WARRANTY, THE FIRST 2 YEARS OF OWNERSHIP, OR THE FIRST 24,000 MILES, WHICHEVER EXPIRES FIRST, AND THE NONCONFORMITY SUBSTANTIALLY IMPAIRS THE VEHICLE, YOU MAY QUALIFY FOR A REFUND OR REPLACEMENT OF THIS VEHICLE. CONTACT THE MANUFACTURER OF THE VEHICLE IF YOU BELIEVE THE VEHICLE FAILS TO CONFORM TO THE MANUFACTURER'S EXPRESS WARRANTY. FOR FURTHER INFORMATION REGARDING YOUR RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS UNDER THE LEMON LAW, CONTACT THE CONSUMER PROTECTION DIVISION OF THE IOWA ATTORNEY GENERAL'S OFFICE AT:

CONSUMER PROTECTION DIVISION

HOOVER STATE OFFICE BUILDING

DES MOINES, IOWA 50319

TELEPHONE: 515-281-5926

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF KANSAS

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Kansas has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of a claim under this law. We encourage you to report any nonconformity to us as well. In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATES OF LOUISIANA, UTAH

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

These states have enacted 'Lemon Laws' that define a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts. However, we encourage you to report any problems that you are having with your vehicle. In order to promote customer satisfaction, Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) would like the opportunity to correct them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF MAINE

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Maine has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problem with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first EITHER:

- Use state-run arbitration through the Maine Lemon Law Arbitration Program, OR:
- Use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program) sponsored by JLRNA before filing other court action under the Lemon Law.

For more information about state-run arbitration, contact the Attorney General's Lemon Law Arbitration Program at the address and telephone number below. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number above.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Maine law:

Maine attorney general Lemon Law arbitration if you have a serious problem with this vehicle

The Maine Lemon Law (10 M.R.S.A. Sections 1161-1169) provides free Attorney General arbitration for consumer buyers or lessees whose motor vehicle (including motorcycles and motorized RVs) is seriously defective. Under the Maine Lemon Law, you may have a right to a refund or a replacement of the vehicle if the following applies:

- There is a defect or combination of defects which substantially impairs the use, safety or value of the vehicle; and
- This unrepaired defect was reported to the dealer or manufacturer:
  - during the manufacturer's express warranty; and
  - within the 3-year period following the delivery date of the vehicle to the original purchaser or lessee; and
  - during the first 18,000 miles of operation; and,
- The defect still exists or has recurred after:
  - 3 or more repair attempts for the same defect; or
  - 1 or more repair attempts for the serious failure of either the braking or steering system; or
  - being out of service for repairs for a cumulative total of 15 or more business days (for one or more defects); and
  - the manufacturer had been given in writing a 7-day Final Opportunity To Repair.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

For this vehicle you should notify the manufacturer or its retailer/authorized repairer of the defects and the right to make a final repair:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

The Attorney General's state-run arbitration is different from any manufacturer sponsored program to which you may also be entitled. Under the state Lemon Law program, you will receive a free hearing before a neutral state Arbitrator and a decision within 45 days of acceptance of your Lemon Law application. If your vehicle is declared a lemon, the manufacturer must refund your purchase price or replace the vehicle.

You must apply for state-run arbitration within 3 years after delivery to the original consumer and within the term of the manufacturer's warranty.

THIS SHEET PROVIDES ONLY A SUMMARY OF THE MAINE LEMON LAW.

To request arbitration or to get further information, contact:

Lemon Law Arbitration Program

Office of The Attorney General

Consumer Protection Division

6 State House Station

Augusta, ME 04333

Telephone: 207-626-8848 or 800-436-2131, option #3.

e-mail: lemon.law@maine.gov or **http://www.maine.gov/ag**.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF MARYLAND

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Maryland has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by the law of the state of Maryland:

Your rights under Maryland's Lemon Law

Maryland's Lemon Law: The Automobile Warranty Enforcement Law.

In Maryland, the Lemon Law provides protection if the new vehicle you buy turns out to be a problem. When a new car, light duty truck, motorcycle or multi-purpose vehicle has been 'repaired' for the same problem four or more times, or the vehicle has been out of service for at least 30 days for repairs, during the first 15 months or 15,000 miles of the warranty, you are entitled to a new vehicle or a refund for the vehicle you have bought. If the problem involves the steering or braking system, only one attempt to repair it is required.

How to pursue a claim

Your owner's manual will have the specifics on how to pursue a Lemon Law claim. Your new vehicle only qualifies under this process if the problem you have with it occurs during the first 15 months or 15,000 miles of the warranty. Before the time or mileage limit is up, you must report the problem in writing to the manufacturer by certified mail.

Request a return receipt so you have a record of the notification. After you notify the manufacturer of your problem, you must give the manufacturer the opportunity to fix it.

The manufacturer must fix your vehicle's problem or replace it. The manufacturer can also refund you the full purchase price for the vehicle, less a reasonable allowance for your use of the vehicle. If you are refunded for your vehicle, the manufacturer must notify you in writing that you are entitled to the recovery of the excise taxes you paid on the vehicle. The Maryland Motor Vehicle Administration will then be able to refund your excise taxes, calculated on the amount of the refund you received.

Need more information?

The Consumer Protection Division of the Maryland Attorney General's Office can give you more information on the Lemon Law, and assist you in resolving a Lemon Law problem.

Call our Hotline Number:

- In the Baltimore area: 410-528-8662 (9:00AM - 3:00PM, Monday through Friday).
- In the D.C. Metro area: 301-470-7534.
- TDD for hearing impaired persons: 410-576-6372.

Write to: 200 St. Paul Place, 16th Floor Baltimore, MD 21202.

Email: consumer@oag.state.md.us

Visit our website at: **www.oag.state.md.us/consumer**.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF MASSACHUSETTS

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Massachusetts has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts. We encourage you to report any problems that you are having with your vehicle. In order to promote customer satisfaction, Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) would like the opportunity to correct them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445 BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Massachusetts law:

Lemon Law information

IF YOU HAVE A SERIOUS PROBLEM WITH THIS VEHICLE

The Massachusetts 'Lemon Law', General Laws Chapter 90, Section 7N 1/2 provides protection for consumers who have serious problems with their new vehicle.

UNDER THE LEMON LAW, YOU HAVE A RIGHT TO A REFUND OR REPLACEMENT OF THE VEHICLE IF:

- There is a defect(s) which substantially impairs the use, safety or value of the vehicle; AND
- The defect(s) still exists or has recurred after either:
  - three or more repair attempts for the same defect(s)
  - being out of service by reason of repair for any combination of defects for a cumulative total of 15 or more business days, within one year or 15,000 miles (whichever comes first) after original delivery, AND
  - The manufacturer has been notified of the defect(s) and given one final repair attempt of no more than 7 business days.

IF THE MANUFACTURER DOES NOT REFUND OR REPLACE THE VEHICLE AFTER THESE STANDARDS HAVE BEEN MET, YOU HAVE A RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR CASE ARBITRATED BY A STATE-CERTIFIED ARBITRATOR.

This state-certified arbitration is different from any manufacturer-sponsored program to which you may also be entitled. Under the state program, you will be sent a decision within 45 days of when your request for arbitration is accepted.

Under the law, you must request state-run arbitration within 18 months of original delivery of the vehicle.

THIS SHEET PROVIDES ONLY A SUMMARY OF YOUR RIGHTS.

To request arbitration, or to get further information, contact:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Office of Consumer Affairs and Business Regulation

New Car Lemon Mediation and Arbitration Program

10 Park Plaza, Suite 5170

Boston, MA 02116

Telephone: 617-973-8700

Toll-free: 888-283-3757

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF MICHIGAN

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Michigan has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by return receipt mail service of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Michigan law:

IMPORTANT: IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER STATE LAW TO REPLACEMENT OF IT OR A REFUND OF ITS PURCHASE PRICE. TO OBTAIN REPLACEMENT OR REFUND YOU MUST FIRST REPORT THE DEFECT IN WRITING TO THE MANUFACTURER AND YOU MAY BE REQUIRED TO FIRST ARBITRATE THE DISPUTE. IN ORDER TO PROTECT YOUR RIGHTS UNDER THIS LAW, YOU SHOULD:

1. KEEP COPIES OF ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO AND FROM THE MANUFACTURER AND THE RETAILER.
2. KEEP COPIES OF WORK ORDERS FOR REPAIRS ON THE VEHICLE INCLUDING THE DATE(S) THE WORK WAS PERFORMED AND THE MILEAGE ON THE VEHICLE AT THE TIME OF REPAIR.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

3. FOLLOW ALL REQUIREMENTS OF THE WARRANTY, INCLUDING ANY REQUIREMENT THAT THE REPAIRS MUST BE DONE BY AN AUTHORIZED RETAILER SPECIFIED BY THE MANUFACTURER. IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING YOUR RIGHTS UNDER THIS LAW, CONSULT AN ATTORNEY OR OTHER QUALIFIED INDIVIDUAL.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF MINNESOTA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Minnesota has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Minnesota law:

IMPORTANT: IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER THE STATE'S LEMON LAW TO REPLACEMENT OF IT OR A REFUND OF ITS PURCHASE PRICE OR YOUR LEASE PAYMENTS. HOWEVER, TO BE ENTITLED TO REFUND OR REPLACEMENT, YOU MUST FIRST NOTIFY THE MANUFACTURER, ITS AGENT, OR ITS AUTHORIZED RETAILER OF THE PROBLEM IN WRITING AND GIVE THEM AN OPPORTUNITY TO REPAIR THE VEHICLE. YOU ALSO HAVE A RIGHT TO SUBMIT YOUR CASE TO THE CONSUMER ARBITRATION PROGRAM WHICH THE MANUFACTURER MUST OFFER IN MINNESOTA.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF NEVADA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

The above state has enacted 'Lemon Laws' that define a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under these laws, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle. In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

New Hampshire has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problem with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and seek a repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first EITHER:

1. Use state-run arbitration through the New Hampshire Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board, OR
2. Use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program) sponsored by JLRNA before filing other court action under the Lemon Law.

For more information about state-run arbitration, contact the Attorney General's Lemon Law Arbitration Program at the address and telephone number below.

For more information on how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

MANUFACTURERS ARE REQUIRED TO SUPPLY THIS NOTICE WITH DELIVERY OF A NEW MOTOR VEHICLE SOLD WITHIN THE STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE – RSA 357-D

Notice to consumer: State of New Hampshire motor vehicle arbitration board

The New Hampshire New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Law, RSA 357-D, applies to new motor vehicles sold or leased (for two or more years) and/or registered in the State of New Hampshire. A new motor vehicle is defined as a passenger vehicle, motorcycle or truck with a gross vehicle weight not exceeding 9,000 pounds.

If, during the express warranty period, you discover a defect which substantially impairs the use, market value or safety of this vehicle, and it has not been successfully repaired after three repair attempts by the manufacturer, its agent or an authorized retailer, or it has been out of service by reason of repair of one or more non-conformities, defects or conditions for a cumulative total of 30 business days, you may be entitled to apply for a comparable replacement or refund of purchase price plus incidental damages less a reasonable allowance for use.

In order for a repair attempt to qualify, you must obtain a written repair order. Neither the manufacturer nor any agent of the manufacturer (including the retailer's service) may refuse to provide you with a written repair order at your request.

The vehicle is deemed to be out of service if it is in for repair for a majority of the day.

You may not use the New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Law if you elect to use the manufacturer's dispute settlement mechanism.

You may not use the New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Law if you have stopped making payments on any lease or financing agreement because of the vehicle's condition.

The New Hampshire Motor Vehicle Arbitration Program includes other eligibility requirements which you must meet to qualify.

Forms for electing to proceed before the New Hampshire Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board should be included with your new vehicle on delivery.

For information as to your rights under the New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Law or for additional forms, contact the New Hampshire Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board, 23 Hazen Drive, Concord, NH 03305, telephone: 603-271-6383, or your retailer.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF NEW JERSEY

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

New Jersey has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by New Jersey law:

IMPORTANT: IF THE VEHICLE HAS A DEFECT THAT SUBSTANTIALLY IMPAIRS ITS USE, VALUE OR SAFETY, OR THAT IS LIKELY TO CAUSE DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY INJURY IF DRIVEN, AND WAS PURCHASED, LEASED OR REGISTERED IN NEW JERSEY, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER NEW JERSEY'S LEMON LAW TO A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OR YOUR LEASE PAYMENTS.

Here is a summary of your rights:

1. To qualify for relief under the New Jersey Lemon Law, you must give the manufacturer or its dealer the opportunity to repair or correct the defect in the vehicle within the Lemon Law's term of protection, which is the first 24,000 miles of operation or two years after the vehicle's original date of delivery, whichever is earlier.
2. If the manufacturer or its dealer is unable to repair or correct a defect within a reasonable time, you may be entitled to return the vehicle and receive a full refund minus a reasonable allowance for vehicle use.
3. It is presumed that the manufacturer or its dealer is unable to repair or correct the defect if substantially the same defect continues to exist after the manufacturer has received written notice of the defect by certified mail, return receipt requested, and has had a final opportunity to correct the defect or condition within 10 calendar days after receipt of the notice. This notice must be received by the manufacturer within the term of protection and may be given only after:
   - The manufacturer or its dealer has had two or more attempts to correct the defect.
   - The manufacturer or its dealer has had at least one attempt to correct the defect if the defect is one that is likely to cause death or serious bodily injury if the vehicle is driven; or:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- The vehicle has been out of service for repair for a cumulative total of 20 or more calendar days, or in the case of a motorhome, 45 or more days.

4. If substantially the same defect continues to exist after the manufacturer has had the final opportunity to repair or correct the defect, you may file an application for relief under New Jersey's Lemon Law.

FOR COMPLETE INFORMATION REGARDING YOUR RIGHTS AND REMEDIES UNDER THE RELEVANT LAW, INCLUDING THE MANUFACTURER'S ADDRESS TO GIVE NOTICE OF THE DEFECT, CONTACT THE NEW JERSEY DEPARTMENT OF LAW AND PUBLIC SAFETY, DIVISION OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS, LEMON LAW UNIT, AT POST OFFICE BOX 45026, NEWARK, NEW JERSEY 07101, TEL.NO. (973) 504-6226.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regard to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

New York has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

We encourage you to report any nonconformity, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you are dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing an action with the New York State Dispute Resolution Association, Inc. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by New York law:

New car Lemon Law bill of rights

IN ADDITION TO ANY WARRANTY OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER, YOUR NEW CAR, IF PURCHASED AND REGISTERED IN NEW YORK STATE, IS WARRANTED AGAINST ALL MATERIAL DEFECTS FOR EIGHTEEN THOUSAND MILES OR TWO YEARS, WHICHEVER COMES FIRST.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

YOU MUST REPORT ANY PROBLEMS TO THE MANUFACTURER, ITS AGENT, OR AUTHORIZED RETAILER.

UPON NOTIFICATION, THE PROBLEM MUST BE CORRECTED FREE OF CHARGE.

IF THE SAME PROBLEM CANNOT BE REPAIRED AFTER FOUR OR MORE ATTEMPTS; OR IF YOUR CAR IS OUT OF SERVICE TO REPAIR A PROBLEM FOR A TOTAL OF THIRTY DAYS DURING THE WARRANTY PERIOD; OR IF THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS AGENT REFUSES TO REPAIR A SUBSTANTIAL DEFECT OR CONDITION WITHIN TWENTY DAYS OF RECEIPT OF NOTICE SENT BY YOU TO THE MANUFACTURER BY CERTIFIED MAIL, RETURN RECEIPT REQUESTED; THEN YOU MAY BE ENTITLED TO EITHER A COMPARABLE CAR OR A REFUND OF YOUR PURCHASE PRICE, PLUS LICENSE AND REGISTRATION FEES, MINUS A MILEAGE ALLOWANCE ONLY IF THE VEHICLE HAS BEEN DRIVEN MORE THAN 12,000 MILES. SPECIAL NOTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS MAY APPLY TO MOTOR HOMES.

A MANUFACTURER MAY DENY LIABILITY IF THE PROBLEM IS CAUSED BY ABUSE, NEGLECT, OR UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION OF THE CAR.

A MANUFACTURER MAY REFUSE TO EXCHANGE A COMPARABLE CAR OR REFUND YOUR PURCHASE PRICE IF THE PROBLEM DOES NOT SUBSTANTIALLY IMPAIR THE VALUE OF YOUR CAR.

IF A MANUFACTURER HAS ESTABLISHED AN ARBITRATION PROCEDURE, THE MANUFACTURER MAY REFUSE TO EXCHANGE A COMPARABLE CAR OR REFUND YOUR PURCHASE PRICE UNTIL YOU FIRST RESORT TO THE PROCEDURE.

IF THE MANUFACTURER DOES NOT HAVE AN ARBITRATION PROCEDURE, YOU MAY RESORT TO ANY REMEDY BY LAW AND MAY BE ENTITLED TO YOUR ATTORNEY'S FEES IF YOU PREVAIL.

NO CONTRACT OR AGREEMENT CAN VOID ANY OF THESE RIGHTS. AS AN ALTERNATIVE TO THE ARBITRATION PROCEDURE MADE AVAILABLE THROUGH THE MANUFACTURER, YOU MAY INSTEAD CHOOSE TO SUBMIT YOUR CLAIM TO AN INDEPENDENT ARBITRATOR, APPROVED BY THE ATTORNEY GENERAL. YOU MAY HAVE TO PAY A FEE FOR SUCH AN ARBITRATION. CONTACT YOUR LOCAL CONSUMER OFFICE OR ATTORNEY GENERAL'S OFFICE TO FIND OUT HOW TO ARRANGE FOR INDEPENDENT ARBITRATION.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF OHIO

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regard to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Ohio has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

However, we encourage you to first report any non-conformities, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to address and correct any problems that you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you are dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing any other legal action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Ohio law:

IMPORTANT: IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER STATE LAW TO A REPLACEMENT OR TO COMPENSATION.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF PENNSYLVANIA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Pennsylvania has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

However, we encourage you to first report any non-conformities, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you are still dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program), before filing any court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Pennsylvania law.

Purchaser's rights under the Lemon Law

If the new motor vehicle you have purchased does not conform to the manufacturer's express warranty, the Pennsylvania Automobile Lemon Law provides that the manufacturer may have to replace it or pay you a refund, at your option.

If you discover a defect that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of this vehicle, contact the manufacturer or its authorized service and repair facility immediately.

Your Lemon Law rights only cover defects which occur within one (1) year after delivery, 12,000 miles of use, or the term of the express warranty, whichever comes first.

The law states that it is reasonable for the retailer, manufacturer, or its agents to make up to three (3) separate attempts to correct the same defect.

After three (3) unsuccessful repair attempts, or after a total of 30 days in which the vehicle is out of service for repair, you may be entitled to a comparable replacement vehicle or a refund of the purchase price less an allowance for your actual use. If a dispute arises concerning a defect, you must first resort to any informal dispute settlement procedure established by the manufacturer to assert your Lemon Law rights.

The manufacturer or dealer must provide you with an itemized statement of all repair work performed when your vehicle is returned from service. Keep those records for future reference.

For more information, contact the:

Office of the Attorney General

Bureau of Consumer Protection

Strawberry Square, 14th Floor

Harrisburg, PA 17120.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF RHODE ISLAND

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Rhode Island has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must provide Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) with an additional opportunity to cure any problem arising during the Lemon Law's term of protection. We encourage you to provide us notice, in writing, of any such nonconformity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, you must first use either BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program) or the state-sponsored arbitration procedure established by the Rhode Island Consumer's Council before filing any court action. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Rhode Island law.

Lemon Law information

IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER RHODE ISLAND LAW TO A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OR YOUR LEASE PAYMENTS. FOR COMPLETE INFORMATION REGARDING YOUR RIGHTS AND REMEDIES, CONTACT THE RHODE ISLAND CONSUMER'S COUNCIL AT 401-274-4400.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF TEXAS

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Texas has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing a request for arbitration with the Texas Department of Transportation. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Texas law.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Dispute resolution - USA

Notice to new motor vehicle owners

If you are unable to obtain the repair or correction of any defect in your new motor vehicle which is covered by the vehicle warranty, the Texas Motor Vehicle Commission may be able to assist you. Section 3.08(i) of the Texas Motor Vehicle Commission Code (Article 4413(36), Vernon's Texas Civil Statutes), provides as follows: 'The owner of a motor vehicle or the owner's designated agent may make a complaint concerning defects in a motor vehicle which are covered by the manufacturer's, converter's, or distributor's warranty agreement applicable to the vehicle. Any such complaint must be made in writing to the applicable retailer, manufacturer, converter, or distributor and must specify the defects in the vehicle which are covered by the warranty. The owner may also invoke the Commission's jurisdiction by sending the Commission a copy of the complaint. A hearing may be scheduled on all complaints arising under this subsection which are not privately resolved between the owner and the retailer, manufacturer, converter, or distributor.'

Complaints involving new motor vehicle warranty repair problems should be in writing, stating the details of the complaint and sent to:

Texas Department of Transportation
Motor Vehicle Division

Consumer Affairs Section

P.O. Box 2293 Austin, TX 78768-2293

800-622-8682

Texas Lemon Law - Notice to new motor vehicle owners

The Texas-Legislature enacted the 'lemon law' (Section 6.07, Art. 4413(36)) to aid owners of new motor vehicles regarding a manufacturer's, distributor's, or converter's warranty obligations.

Under the law, vehicle manufacturers, converters, and distributors are required to repair any defects that are covered by warranty. If the defects cannot be repaired, an owner may be entitled to a repurchase of the vehicle or a replacement if the following conditions are met:

If a new motor vehicle:

- Develops a defect or abnormal condition which is covered by a manufacturer's, converter's, or distributor's written warranty, and:
- The owner reports the defect or condition within the warranty term, and:
- The owner gives the retailer, manufacturer, distributor, or converter a 'REASONABLE NUMBER OF ATTEMPTS' to repair the defect or condition; the number of repair attempts required depends on the nature of the defect, and:
- The owner gives the manufacturer, distributor, or converter written notice of the defect and at least one opportunity AFTER the notice to repair, and:
- The defect or condition continues and it substantially impairs the vehicle's use or value or creates a serious safety hazard, and:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

- A written complaint with filing fee of $35.00 is filed with the Texas Department of Transportation, Motor Vehicle Division NOT LATER THAN SIX MONTHS AFTER the earliest of:
  - The expiration of the warranty term; or
  - 24 months after the delivery date of the vehicle; or
  - 24,000 miles after the delivery date of the vehicle.

To file a complaint or obtain additional information, call or write to:

Texas Department of Transportation
Motor Vehicle Division

Consumer Affairs Section

P.O. Box 2293

Austin, TX 78768-2293

800-622-8682

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF VERMONT

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Vermont has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

The following statement is furnished to you in the form required by Vermont state law. Additionally, you should have received a 'Demand for Arbitration' form and a self-addressed stamped envelope along with your other ownership materials.

Notice to consumer

STATE OF VERMONT MOTOR VEHICLE ARBITRATION BOARD

The Vermont Lemon Law applies to new motor vehicles sold or leased (for two or more years) and registered in the State of Vermont. A new motor vehicle is defined as a passenger vehicle or truck with a gross vehicle weight of 10,000 pounds or less.

If, during the express warranty period, you discover a defect which substantially impairs the use, market value or safety of this vehicle, and it has not been successfully repaired after three repair attempts by an authorized retailer, or it has been out of service for repair for a cumulative total of thirty (30) calendar days, you may be notified to apply for a comparable replacement or refund of purchase price less certain allowances.

In order for a repair attempt to qualify, you must obtain a written repair order.

The vehicle is deemed to be out of service if it is in for repair for a majority of the day.

You cannot use the Lemon Law if you elect to use the manufacturer's dispute settlement mechanism.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

You may not use the Lemon Law if you have stopped making payments on any financing agreement because of the vehicle's condition.

The Vermont Motor Vehicle Arbitration Program includes other eligibility requirements which you must meet to qualify.

Forms for the Vermont Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board should be included with your new vehicle on delivery.

For information as to your rights under the Lemon Law or forms, contact the Vermont Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board, 120 State Street, Montpelier, Vermont 05602, telephone (802) 828-2669 or your dealer.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF VIRGINIA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-452-4837.

Virginia has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Virginia law:

SOMETIMES JLRNA OFFERS A SPECIAL ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM TO PAY ALL OR PART OF THE COST OF CERTAIN REPAIRS BEYOND THE TERMS OF THE WARRANTY. CHECK WITH YOUR RETAILER TO DETERMINE WHETHER ANY ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM IS APPLICABLE TO YOUR MOTOR VEHICLE.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF WASHINGTON

Please refer to the 'Notice of Consumer Rights' prepared by the Washington Attorney General's Office. A copy of that notice was provided to you at the time of your purchase in the State of Washington.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

If you need an additional copy or if you have any additional questions please let us know. We can be reached at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

Washington has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

We encourage you to report any nonconformity, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing a Request for Arbitration with the Washington New Motor Vehicle Arbitration Board. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF WEST VIRGINIA

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837.

West Virginia has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to its express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

In order to exercise your rights under this law, you must first notify Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA) in writing by certified mail of any problems with your vehicle and provide us with an opportunity to repair them.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other court action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by West Virginia law:

IMPORTANT: IF THIS VEHICLE IS DEFECTIVE, YOU MAY BE ENTITLED UNDER STATE LAW TO A REPLACEMENT OR TO COMPENSATION. HOWEVER, TO BE ENTITLED TO A REPLACEMENT OR TO COMPENSATION, YOU MUST FIRST NOTIFY THE MANUFACTURER OF THE PROBLEM IN WRITING AND PROVIDE THE MANUFACTURER AN OPPORTUNITY TO REPAIR THE VEHICLE.

NOTICE TO OWNERS IN THE STATE OF WISCONSIN

If at any time during your vehicle ownership you have any questions or concerns with regards to your vehicle, please contact us at:

JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC

ATTN: Customer Relationship Center

100 Jaguar Land Rover Way

Mahwah, NJ 07495

Telephone: 1-800-637-6837

Wisconsin has enacted a 'Lemon Law' that defines a consumer's rights to have a vehicle repurchased or replaced in the event that your vehicle has certain non-conformities that cannot be repaired to conform to the express warranties after a reasonable number of attempts.

We encourage you to report any nonconformity, in writing, directly to Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC (JLRNA). In order to promote customer satisfaction, JLRNA would like the opportunity to correct any problems you may be experiencing with your vehicle.

If you still remain dissatisfied with your vehicle and wish to seek repurchase or replacement of your vehicle under your state's Lemon Law, be advised that JLRNA participates in BBB AUTO LINE®, an informal dispute resolution procedure (arbitration program). You are not required to use this program before filing other legal action under the Lemon Law. For more information about how BBB AUTO LINE® works, see **445, BBB AUTO LINE®**.

You may also contact us at the address or toll-free telephone number listed previously.

Additionally, the following statement is provided to you in the form required by Wisconsin state law:

SOMETIMES JAGUAR LAND ROVER NORTH AMERICA, LLC OFFERS A SPECIAL ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM TO PAY ALL OR PART OF THE COST OF CERTAIN REPAIRS BEYOND THE TERMS OF THE WARRANTY. CHECK WITH YOUR RETAILER TO DETERMINE WHETHER ANY ADJUSTMENT PROGRAM IS APPLICABLE TO YOUR MOTOR VEHICLE.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

MEDIATION / ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CAMVAP)

If efforts by Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC (JLRC) and your retailer/authorized repairer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern prove unsatisfactory, JLRC participates in an impartial third-party alternative dispute resolution program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative for resolving a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. The program is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators will conduct an informal hearing at a mutually convenient time and place. The arbitrators review the positions of both parties, make decisions and, where appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are just, fair and final, as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and JLRC.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian provinces and territories. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP provincial administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Type approval

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TYPE APPROVAL

The following information relates to Infotainment System Radio Type Approval Declarations.

The notices below apply to the following variants:

Product	Model name	FCC ID	IC ID
Infotainment	PIVI	BEJTM05GAJN	2703H-TM05GAJN
Infotainment	PIVI	BEJIGCJ1PHN	2703H-IGCJ1PHN
Telematics	-	BEJTM05GTJN	2703H-TM05GTJN
Telematics	-	BEJTA4HEBW	-
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	-	NF3-MRREVO14F	3887A-MRREVO14F
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	-	KOBT510A	3521A-T510A
Keyless or Passive Entry	-	KOBJLR09A	3521A_JLR09A
Collision Avoidance	-	L2C0038TR	3432A-0038TR

United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada

The device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. this device may not cause interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Jaguar Land Rover, may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Type approval

Product	Model name	FCC ID	IC ID
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM)	MBH	UR8303919	Not applicable
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM)	MBH2	UR8307735	Not applicable
Homelink	Homelink 5	NZLUAHL5B	4112A-UAHL5B

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by Jaguar Land Rover, may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

RADIOFREQUENCY RADIATION EXPOSURE INFORMATION

IC Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

NOTE: THE MANUFACTURER IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY RADIO OR TV INTERFERENCE CAUSED BY UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATIONS TO THIS EQUIPMENT. SUCH MODIFICATIONS COULD VOID THE USER'S AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THE EQUIPMENT.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Avis d'Industrie Canada sur l'exposition aux rayonnements

Cet appareil est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements d'Industrie Canada pour un environnement non contrôlé.

Il doit être installé de façon à garder une distance minimale de 20 centimètres entre la source de rayonnements et votre corps.

REMARQUE: LE FABRICANT N'EST PAS RESPONSABLE DES INTERFÉRENCES RADIOÉLECTRIQUES CAUSÉES PAR DES MODIFICATIONS NON AUTORISÉES APPORTÉES À CET APPAREIL. DE TELLES MODIFICATIONS POURRAIT ANNULER L'AUTORISATION ACCORDÉE A L'UTILISATEUR DE FAIRE FONCTIONNER L'APPAREIL.

E254598

JLR Wireless Charger - USA – FCC

FCC ID : BEJWC501M

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 4cm between the radiator and your body.

JLR Wireless Charger - CANADA – ISED

IC : 2703H-WC501M

This device complies with RSS-216 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

ISED RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with ISED RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment should be installed to operate with a minimum distance of 2cm between the radiator and the end-user's body.

IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED
Son fonctionnementestsoumis aux deux conditions suivantes:
Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interférences nuisibles, et

Cet appareil doit accepter toute interférence recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable.

Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement.

Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur.

Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 2cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

E258975

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

2-stage unlocking.....14
360° parking aid.....267
4x4i.....278
  4WD information wade sensing.....213
  ITL.....215
4x4i safety.....212

A

About this handbook.....2
ACC
  follow mode off.....183
  performance.....181
Access height (air suspension).....149
Accessories.....324
Active differential control.....159
Activity key
  unlocking.....15
Adaptive cruise control.....179
  adaptive cruise control gap change.....183
  follow mode performance.....183
  queue assist.....184
  stop and go.....184
  type approval.....185
Adaptive cruise control follow mode.....182
Adaptive cruise control on warning lamp.....87
Adaptive cruise control override.....181
Adaptive cruise control with steering assist active
  warning lamps.....88
Adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active
  warning lamps.....89
Adaptive dynamics.....152
Adaptive speed limiter
  warning lamps.....87
Adjusting the electric rear head restraints.....49
Adjusting the manual rear head restraints.....48
Advanced tow assist
  trailer reverse.....133
Advanced tow assist calibration.....131
Age degradation (tires).....371
Air bags
  curtain.....71
  curtain air bags.....71
  deployment.....66–67
  disability modifications.....69
  front.....70
  maintenance.....324
  obstructions.....66
  occupant sensing.....71
  safety.....66
  safety locations.....70
  service information.....68
  side air bags.....71
  warning lamp.....67, 85
Airbag safety labels.....61
Air conditioning
  air quality sensor.....258
  air vents.....261
  automatic recirculation.....257
  front.....253
Air conditioning (a/c)
  fluid top up.....322
Air suspension
  access height.....149
  auto access height.....149
  extended mode.....148
  locked access height.....150
  normal height.....148
  off-road height.....148
  rear height adjust.....150
  smart key operation.....151
Air suspension auto access height limitations.....150
Air suspension limitations.....152
Air suspension overview.....146
Air suspension safety.....146
Alarm.....323
  automatic relocking and arming.....29
  battery back-up sounder.....29
  deactivating.....30

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)
descent control mode.....200
full function mode.....201
All terrain progress control (ATPC)
overview
settings.....199
All wheel drive (AWD).....160
Alternative camera views.....276
AM/FM radio
radio data system.....238
AM/FM radio controls.....233
media.....233
Ambient temperature changes
tire pressure compensation.....370
Anchor points (luggage).....122
Android auto
incontrol.....288
Anti-lock braking system (ABS).....153
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....85
Anti-theft system.....323
Anti-trap protection
windows.....76
Apple CarPlay
incontrol.....288
Apps screen.....223
touchscreen.....223
Arduous driving conditions.....323
Armrest folding.....36
ATPC
using.....199
ATPC enabling.....200
ATPC not operating.....202
ATPC safety.....199
Audio
AM/FM radio
radio data system.....238
AM/FM radio controls.....237
changing portable media device.....252
HD radio controls.....240
licensing.....234–235
media controls.....230
portable media connections.....246
portable media controls.....249
portable media pairing.....251
portable media playing.....250
satellite radio controls.....242
satellite radio reception.....245
satellite subscription.....244
settings.....231
sound settings.....232
Audio settings.....231
Auto access height.....149
Auto lamps
wiper detection.....94
Automatic locking.....23, 29
Automatic speed limiter
warning lamps.....88
Automatic transmission.....142
gear shift warning lamp.....87
high and low range.....144
Auto program.....165
Auto start.....139
Auto stop.....139
Auto zoom (navigation).....300
Auxiliary device connection.....250
Auxiliary power sockets.....114
Avoiding tire flat spots.....370

B

Battery
boost starting.....351
care.....347
charging.....351
connecting jump leads.....348
disconnection.....352
effects of disconnection.....352
maintenance.....347
monitoring system.....352
removing.....351
replacing.....351
using a starting aid.....351
warning lamp.....83
warning symbols.....347
Battery back-up sounder.....29
Belts
seat.....56

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Blind
resetting the roof blind....329
Blinds
rear window....108
Blind spot monitor
closing vehicle sensing....193
closing vehicle sensing performance....193
Bluetooth
compatibility....283
general information....291
pairing
via the phone....283
phone
icons....285
safety....280
portable media
pairing....251
playing....250
Bluetooth phone
call volume....286
overview....281
steering wheel controls....286
Booster seats for larger children....39
Boost starting....
Brake assist....87
Brake hold....156
Brakes
ABS warning lamp....85
anti-lock braking system (ABS)....153
control with ABS....154
electronic brakeforce distribution...154
emergency brake assist....154
fluid check....343
fluid specification....344
fluid top up....344
handbrake....154
hill start assist....157
important information....153
parking brake warning lamp....84
steep slope control....154
warning lamp (amber)....85
warning lamp (red)....83
Brake temperature....168
Braking
AEB....188
engine stop on the move....140
Braking systems
AEB....189
aEBA....191
aEBA performance....191
AEB performance....190
collision avoidance....186
Bulbs
changing a bulb....328

C

Calibration
trailer....131
California proposition 65....2
California proposition 65 second warning....347
Camera features safety warnings....274
Camera features warnings....274
Cameras
hitch assist....130
reverse traffic detection....195
Camera system faults....279
Camera system troubleshooting....279
Camera views
advanced tow assist....134
tow assist....132
Capacities....404
Care points
driving aids....204
speed limiter....170
towing....127
Carpets and mats....335
Car-wash....332
Cell phone
call volume....286
icons....285
overview....281
steering wheel controls....286
Center seat back
folding....38
Changing a bulb....328

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Changing a fuse.....355
Changing a wheel.....390
recommended process.....392
safety warnings.....384
spare wheel.....387
temporary spare wheel.....390
tool kit.....386
Charging the vehicle battery.....351
Chassis number.....402
Check engine warning lamp.....85
Child information safety.....60
Child restraint information.....62
Child safety
booster seats.....59
check list.....59
larger children on booster seats.....59
LATCH installation.....63
lock and window inhibitor.....61
positioning.....59
tether straps.....64
Child seats
introduction.....58
overview.....58
Cleaning
after off-road driving.....333
air bag covers.....335
alloy wheels.....333
automatic car wash.....332
carpets and mats.....335
engine compartment.....333
exterior.....331
interior.....334
leather.....334
park assist sensors.....332
parking aids sensors.....332
seat belts.....335
sensors and cameras.....332
under body.....332
using a car-wash.....332
washer jets.....336
wipers.....336
Cleaning the wiper blades.....336
Clear sight ground view.....278
Climate
function features.....255
temperature differentiation.....265
Climate and comfort settings.....257
Climate control
air vents.....261
automatic recirculation.....257
climate seats.....264
front.....253
heated seats.....263
rear.....260
seat comfort.....263
Climate settings.....257
Clock
setting the time and date
general settings.....227
Closing the hood.....326
Collision avoidance
AEB.....188–189
aEBA.....191
aEBA performance.....191
AEB performance.....190
blind spot assist.....194
blind spot assist performance.....195
blind spot monitor.....191
blind spot monitor performance.....192
closing vehicle sensing.....193
closing vehicle sensing
performance.....193
forward alert.....187
forward alert sensitivity.....187
rear protection monitor.....197
rear protection monitor
performance.....198
reverse traffic detection.....195
Comfort program.....162
Commandshift.....142
Commute feature.....304
Compensor regulatory text.....117
Condensation (headlamps).....94
Conformity declarations.....482–483
Connected navigation.....302
Connected services.....302

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Connecting jump leads.....348
Connectivity
  mobile data connectivity.....314
  overview.....314
  status icons.....316
  wi-Fi connectivity.....315
Connectivity information.....316
Connectivity reset.....316
Controls
  adaptive speed limiter.....172
  speed limiter.....171
Controls cleaning.....334
Convenience mode.....17
Coolant
  checking the level.....341
  specification.....342
  top up.....342
Courtesy delay.....93
Covers
  under hood.....327
Creating a hotspot.....315
Critical warning messages.....84
Cruise control.....175
  adaptive.....176
  adaptive cruise control.....
  adaptive cruise control gap change.....183
  stop and go.....184
  warning lamp.....87
Cruise control safety.....178
Curtain air bags.....71

D

Data recording.....400
Daytime running lamps.....92
DCM performance.....208
Declaration of conformity.....289
Declarations of conformity.....482–483
Departure warning
  emergency assist.....206
Descent control limitations.....168
Descent control mode
  ATPC operation.....200
  steep descent driving.....200
Descent driving
  HDC operation.....167
Destination entry.....295
Device charger
  wireless.....115
Differential control.....159–160
Differentiation
  climate temperature.....265
Dimensions.....406
Dipped beam.....88
Direction indicators.....91
Disability modifications
  air bags.....69
Display
  instrument panel.....75
Displays.....336
Display settings
  touch screen.....225
Door mirrors.....102
Door to door routing.....303
Door transceiver
  assistance.....107
  erase all programming.....106
  frequency regulations.....107
  programming.....104
  programming a single button.....106
  programming the garage door opener.....105
Drive assist.....278
Drive away locking.....23
Driver condition monitor
  warning lamps.....86, 89
Driver drowsiness performance.....208
Driver exit
  deactivating intelligent stop/start.....140
Driver fatigue monitoring.....207
Driver modes
  comfort program.....162
Driver side bar icons.....219
  touchscreen home.....219
Drivetrain information.....211
Driving
  activating intelligent stop/start.....139

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

active differential....159
adaptive cruise control....179
adaptive cruise control gap change....183
after a collision....400
arduous conditions....323
before starting....400
brake control with ABS....154
brakes important information....153
breaking-in....322
daily checks....323
deactivating intelligent stop/start....140
DSC active warning lamp....86
electronic brake force distribution....154
emergency brake assist....154
follow mode....182
gear shift warning lamp....87
hill start assist....157
lane departure warning lamp (green)....88
lane departure warning lamp (red)....84
low oil pressure....84
overriding ACC....184
queue assist (adaptive cruise control)....184
rain sensor....99
sitting correctly....35
steep slope control with ABS....154
switching follow mode off....183
using cruise control....175
weekly checks....323
Driving aids
collision avoidance....186
forward alert....187
traffic sign recognition....208
Driving aids safety....204
Driving assist....204
Driving behaviour....207
Driving downhill
HDC....167
Driving programs
auto....165
description applicability....161
grass gravel snow....162
mud/ruts....163
override options....165
rock crawl....164
sand....163
wade....164
Driving terrain conditions
program choice....161
Driving through water limitations....213
Drowsiness monitoring....207
DSC overview....158
DSC safety....158
Dynamic stability control (DSC)
DSC active warning lamp....86
DSC off warning lamp....86
switching off....158
switching on....159

E

Eco program
fuel saving....163
Effects of battery disconnection....352
Electric parking brake....154
Electric rear seats....40
Electric seats....32
head restraints....48
position memory....36
restricted front seat travel....35
Electric second row seats
reclining....41
Electric third row seats
reclining....42
Electric windows
operation....108
Electronic air suspension....146
normal height....148
Electronic air suspension auto access height limitations....150
Electronic brake force distribution....154
Electronic data....400
Emergency brake assist....154, 191
Emergency brake assist performance....191
Emergency braking....189

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Emergency braking performance.....190
Emergency call.....312
Emergency key blade.....11
Emergency key locking.....30
Engine
  antifreeze level.....341
  coolant level.....341
  engine compartment
    poisonous fluids.....325
  fuel types.....318
  oil level.....338
  specifications.....403
  switching off.....136
Engine compartment cleaning.....333
Engine pre-heater
  antifreeze.....138
  cold starting.....138
  connecting to mains supply.....138
Engine starting.....136
  failure to start.....138
Engine starting safety.....136
Engine stop on the move.....140
Engine temperature warning lamp.....84
Entering a destination.....215
Entering the vehicle
  activity key.....15
  entry and exit mode.....47, 51
  keyless entry.....15
  passive entry.....15
  smart key.....11
  unlocking mode.....14
  unlocking the steering column.....52
Ethanol.....319
Event data recording.....400
Executive class rear seats
  remote seats.....45
Exit detection.....28
Exiting the vehicle
  arming the alarm.....30
  closing mislock.....27
  door locks and handles.....28
  emergency locking.....30
  interior locks.....28
  keyless locking.....26
  lock confirmation.....27
  single locking.....26
Extended mode (air suspension).....148
Exterior cleaning.....331
Exterior lamps
  bulb changing.....328
Exterior lights
  overview.....90
Exterior mirrors
  electric.....102
  manual.....102
  mirror dip when reversing.....103
External temperature
  warning lamp.....86

F

Fatigue monitoring.....207
Favorite locations.....298
Features
  features climate.....255
Fuel locations.....338
Fuel spots.....370
Fluids
  air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....322
  brake
    check.....343
    specification.....344
    top up.....344
  capacities.....404
  coolant
    specification.....342
    top up.....342
  engine oil
    check.....338
  filler locations.....338
  oil
    top up.....341
  specifications.....403
  washer fluid.....345
    check.....344
    specification.....345

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Fog lamps
warning lamps
front....87
rear....86
Folding all rear seats....43
Folding the electric rear head restraints....49
Folding the manual rear head restraints....48
Following another vehicle....182
Follow mode
gap change....183
gap changing....183
on....87
Follow mode off....183
Follow mode override....181
Forward alert sensitivity....187
Frequency spectrum regulation statement
BSM....192
Front air bags....70
Front climate control
automatic recirculation....25
Front exterior light....88
Front towing eye....396
Fuel and refueling....321
ethanol....319
filler flap....321
fuel filler flap....320
fuel types....318
methanol....319
MTBE (Methyl tertiary butyl ether)...320
octane rating....318
reformulated gasoline....320
running out....320
safety precautions....318
tank capacity....321
Fuel can....320
Fuel filler flap....320
Fuel saving
eco program....163
Fuel system....328
Full function mode
ATPC operation....201
low speed driving....201
Function
climate features....255
Fuses
changing....355
engine compartment fuse box....356
loadspace fuse box....361
locations....354
luggage compartment....361
passenger compartment fuse box...358

G

Garage door opener....104
assistance....107
erase all programming....106
frequency regulations....107
programming....104–105
programming a single button....106
Garage door transceiver....104
Gasoline
fuel types....318
Gearbox
automatic....142
gear shift warning lamp....87
high and low range....144
limp home mode....145
Genre icons
audio
media....233
Gesture tailgate....21
Gradient release control
ascent brake release....168
Grass gravel snow....162

H

Handbook symbols....3
Handbrake....154
Hands free tailgate opening....21
HDC
switching on and off....167
Headlamps....91
auto high beam assist warning lamp....89
bulb changing....328

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

condensation....94
courtesy delay....93
daytime running lamps....92
high beam assist....93
high beam assist warning lamp....89
high beam warning lamp....89
washers....100
Headlight....88
washers....100
Head restraint adjustment
rear....48–49
Head restraint overview....47
Head restraints
electric seats....48
front seats....47
removing....49
Head restraint warnings....47
Head up display....79
Head-up display configuration....79
Head-up display limitations....80
Heated steering wheel....52
Heating and ventilation
air quality sensor....258
air vents....21
automatic recirculation....
climate seats....264
front....253
heated seats....263
rear....260
Height
normal setting....148
High beam assist....93
Hill brake....87
Hill descent control
brake release control....168
brake temperature....168
warning lamp....88
Hill descent control (HDC)
switching on and off....167
Hill start assist....157
Hitch assist
cameras....130
Homelink....104
assistance....107
erase all programming....106
frequency regulations....107
programming....104
programming a single button....106
programming the garage door opener....105
Home screen....219–220
touchscreen home....219–220
Hood
closing....326
opening....326

I

Ignition
rolling restart....137
switching on....137
Important points
engine starting....136
InControl
android auto....288
apple CarPlay....288
online media....231
overview....308
safety warnings....308
InControl overview....231
InControl protect account....309
InControl remote account....309
InControl remote smartphone app....310
InControl smartphone apps....310
InControl warnings....308
Indicator lamps....81
Information
4X4i....211
child safety....60
terrain response....214
Information messages....77, 86
Infotainment....231, 233
connecting a media device....248
licensing....235
media controls....230
portable media
changing....252
connecting multiple devices....250

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

connections....246
controls....249
pairing....251
playing....250
radio controls....237
satellite radio....242
reception....245
subscription....244
settings....231
sound settings....232
touchscreen....217, 223
touch screen
care....222
home menu....218
operating....222
Instrument panel....336
fuel gauge....75
head up display....79
head-up display configuration....79
information panel....75
lamp test....83
speedometer....75
standard....74
tachometer....75
temperature gauge....75
tire pressure check....380
trip computer....78
virtual....74
configuration....74
warning lamps....82
warning messages....77
Instrument panel menu
navigation information....301
Intelligent stop/start....139
activating....139
deactivating....140
Intelligent stop/start inhibit lamp....89
Intelligent stop/start warning lamp....87, 89
Interior cleaning....334
air bag covers....335
carpets and mats....335
Interior lamps....95
bulb changing....328
intensity....96
interior mood lighting....96
stealth mode....96
types....95
Interior locking....28
Introduction
air suspension....146
instrument panel....74
In-vehicle hotspot....315

J

Jump starting
connecting a starting aid....351
connecting jump leads....348

K

Keyless entry....15
Keyless locking....26
Keyless start backup....137
Key transmitters....17
Kick gesture tailgate opening....21

L

Label locations....402
Labels
warning safety....61
Lamps....91
auto lamps wiper detection....94
bulb changing....328
condensation....94
test....83
TPMS warning lamp....86
warning lamps....82
Lane departure emergency assist....206
Lane departure warning lamp (green)...88
Lane departure warning lamp (red)....84
Lane drifting....204
Lane keeping
emergency assist....206
Languages and keyboard settings....226
LATCH Installation....63
Leather cleaning....334
Licensing
audio/video....234

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Lighting
interior lamps intensity....96
interior lamps locations....95
interior mood lighting....96
stealth mode....96
Limitations
adaptive cruise control....181
adaptive speed limiter....174
advanced tow assist....134
AEB....190
aEBA....191
air suspension....152
ATPC....202
auto access height....150
blind spot assist....195
blind spot monitor....192
closing vehicle sensing....193
cruise control....177
driver condition monitor....208
emergency lane keeping....207
follow mode....183
HDC....168
lane keep assist....206
ITL....215
rear protection monitor....193
speed limiter....172
terrain response....165
tow assist....132
traffic sign recognition....209
tSA....131
wade sensing....213
Limiter performance....172
adaptive speed limiter....174
Limiting vehicle speed....171
Limp home mode....145
Live apps....313
LKA performance....206
Load carrying
luggage divider....124
powered inner tailgate....120
securing a load....118
Load securing....122
Loadspace cover....118
Locations
air bag safety....70
Locked access height....150
Locking
automatic relocking....29
confirmation....27
door locks and handles....28
drive away....23
emergency locking....30
in an emergency....30
keyless....26
mislock....27
single....26
transmitter effects on medical devices....17
with the emergency key....30
Locking the vehicle
smart key....11
Low beam....89
Low fuel warning lamp....86
Low oil pressure warning lamp....84
Low range transmission warning lamp....88
Low traction launch warning lamp....89
LTL....215
LTL limitations....215
Lubricants specifications....403
Luggage
loadspace area....118
Luggage compartment
anchor points....122
divider and rails....124
loadspace cover....118
Luggage compartment hatch....126

M

Maintenance
after off-road driving....333
air conditioning (a/c)....322
arduous driving conditions....323
brake fluid level....343
breaking-in....322
bulb changing....328

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

capacities....404
changing a fuse....355
cleaning
alloy wheels....333
exterior....331
interior....334
leather....334
seat belts....335
sensors and cameras....332
the engine compartment....333
under body....332
closing the hood....326
daily checks....323
engine compartment fuse box....356
engine coolant level....341
engine oil level....338
fuel system....328
fuse box (passenger compartment)....358
jump starting....351
label locations....402
loadspace fuse box....360
lubricants and fluid specifications....403
oil top up....341
paintwork repair....337
smart key battery....24
using a starting aid....351
washer fluid level....344
weekly checks....323
Manual seats....32
head restraints....47
Map
auto zoom....300
split screen....297
updates....301
Massage seats....264
Master PIN....227
Media....231
AM/FM radio
radio data system....238
genre icons....233
HD radio controls....240
online media....231
portable media
connecting a media device....248
radio controls....237
safety....229
Media controls....230
Media shortcut icons
touchscreen home....221
Memory seats....36
Menu operation
instrument panel....76
Menu options
instrument panel....77
Message centre operation....76
Message centre options....77
Methanol....319
Minor paintwork repairs....337
Mirrors
blind spot assist....194
blind spot assist performance....195
blind spot monitor....191
blind spot monitor performance....192
dip when reversing....103
exterior mirrors....102
rear protection monitor....197
Monitor
blind spot....191
clear exit....28
rear protection....197
seat belts....56
Monitoring driver behaviour....207
Mud/ruts....163
My commute....304

N

Navigation
adjusting the volume....300
alerts....298
destination entry....295
edit route....298
favorite locations....298
fuel prices service....303
instrument panel view....301
map
auto zoom....300

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

split screen.....297
updates.....301
notifications.....298
online routing.....303
operating.....294
real time traffic flow.....302
safety cameras.....304
satellite view.....303
Navigation commute.....304
Navigation feature settings.....299
Navigation introduction.....292
Navigation panes.....293
Navigation pro services.....302
Navigation safety warnings.....292
Navigation settings menu.....299
Navigation shortcut.....293
Navigation shortcut icons
touchscreen home.....221
Navigation system.....292
Navigation system features.....292
Navigation system limitations.....292
Navigation system performance.....292
Navigation touchscreen home tiles.....293
Navigation troubleshooting.....292
Navigation voice.....301
Navigation voice commands.....301
Navigation voicetags.....301
Navigation warnings.....292
Notifications settings.....227
system settings.....227

O

Obstructing an air bag.....66
Occupant safety
air bag safety.....66
child seat safety.....58
child seat tether straps.....64
cleaning seat belts.....335
seat belt checks.....55
seat belt locking.....56
seat belt pre-tensioners.....57
seat belt reminder warning.....56
seat belt safety.....53
seat belts warning lamp.....84
Octane rating.....318
Off-road camera system overview.....274
Off-road driving
auto program.....165
cleaning after.....333
comfort program.....162
grass gravel snow.....162
ITL.....215
mud/ruts.....163
override options.....165
recovery.....398
rock crawl.....164
sand program.....163
wading.....164
Off-road driving information.....214
Off-road driving limitations.....165, 215
Off-road height.....148
Off-road information.....210–211
Oil
engine oil specification.....341
poisonous fluids.....325
top up.....341
used engine oil.....326
Online features.....313
Online live apps.....313
Online media
audio.....231
Online pack.....231
On-road camera system overview.....274
Opening the hood.....326
Operation
adaptive cruise control.....180
instrument panel menu.....76
seat belts.....54
smart key.....11
Optimized assistance.....312
Optimized breakdown assistance.....312
Options
instrument panel menu.....77
Over the air
software updates.....316
Overview
4X4i.....210

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

air suspension....146
camera system....274
child seats....58
DSC....158
exterior lights....90
head restraints....47
InControl mobile technology....308
indicator lamps....81
instrument panel....74
warning lamps....81

P

Paintwork
repair....337
Pairing
via the phone....283
Panoramic roof blind
resetting the roof blind....329
Park assist
cleaning sensors and cameras....332
limitations....271
options....269
selecting....269
troubleshooting....272
using....270
warning lamps....89
Parking aid
limitations....268
selecting....268
Parking aids
adjusting the volume....268
cleaning sensors and cameras....332
system fault....269
Parking brake....154
warning lamp....84
Parking features
park assist....269
limitations....271
selecting....269
troubleshooting....272
using....270
select parking aid....268
Parking features safety warnings....266
Parking features warnings....266
Parts....324
Passenger compartment fuse box....358
Passenger side bar icons....220
touchscreen home....220
Passive entry....15
Performance
adaptive cruise control....181
adaptive speed limiter....174
blind spot monitor....192
closing vehicle sensing....193
cruise control....177
driver condition monitor....208
emergency lane keeping....207
follow mode....183
lane keep assist....206
rear protection monitor....198
speed limiter....172
traffic sign recognition....209
Performance limitations
air suspension....152
HDC....168
Phone
Bluetooth compatibility....283
call volume....286
compatibility list....283
contacts....286
icons....285
managing two calls....284
merge calls....284
overview....281
pairing via the phone....283
receiving text messages....287
steering wheel controls....286
Phone booster regulations....117
Phone charger....115
Phone safety....280
Phone shortcut icons
touchscreen home....221
Phone signal amplifier legal notice....117
PIN number
master PIN....227
Portable media
Bluetooth wireless technology....291

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

changing device....252
connecting a media device....248
connecting multiple devices....250
connections....246
controls....249
pairing....251
playing....250
safety....246
Powered inner tailgate....120
Powered tailgate....19
opening height....21
resetting the memory....21
Power sockets....114
Pregnancy
using seat belts....55
Pressure compensation
ambient temperature changes....370
Profiles
terrain response....164
Profiles settings....226
system settings....226
Progress control enabling....200
Progress control limitations....202
Progress control safety....199
Progress control warning lamp....87
Proposition 65 second warning....347
Protect....310
Pulling away
brake hold....156
Push button start backup....137

Q

Queue assist
adaptive cruise control....184
stop and go....184

R

Radio
satellite radio controls....242
satellite radio reception....245
Radio controls....233
Radio frequency ID (RFID)....110
Radio frequency regulations....409
Radio frequency statement
BSM....192
Radio reception
satellite radio....245
Rain sensor....99
Raising all rear seats....43
Rear camera....276
hitch assist....130
Rear fog lamps warning lamp....86
Rear head restraints
electric....49
manual....48
Rear height adjust (air suspension)....150
Rear seat hatch....126
Rear seats
executive class
remote seats....45
intelligent seat fold....43
restricted travel....44
Rear seat screens
rear climate....260
Rear seat switches....40
Rear suspension height adjust using the smart key....151
Rear towing eye....396
Rear traffic monitor....195
Rear window blind....108
Receiving text messages
phone....287
Recording
event data....400
service data....400
Recovery
off-road....398
towing on four wheels....398–399
transporting....398
Reformulated gasoline....320
Refueling
ethanol....319
fuel filler flap....320
fuels....318
methanol....319
MTBE....320

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

octane rating....318
reformulated gasoline....320
running out of fuel....320
safety precautions....318
Regulation statement
BSM....192
Reminder (seat belt)....56
Remote....310
Remote and protect....310
Remote and protect account....309
Remote control
care....24
single locking....26
smart key battery....24
system transmitters....408
Remote tracking....313
Removing a rear head restraint....49
Removing the spare wheel....387
Removing the vehicle battery....351
Repairing paintwork damage....337
Replacement tires....369
Reporting safety defects....
Resetting the windows....
Restarting the engine while moving....137
Restraint safety information....62
Restricted front seat travel....35
Restricted seat travel
obstructions....44
Reverse parking aid....267
Reverse parking aid
adjusting the volume....268
parking aid system fault....269
Reverse trailer....132
Reversing
parking aid limitations....268
Road sign recognition....208
Rock crawl....164
Roll back....87
Rolling restart....137
Rolling roads....325
Roof blind
operation....109
Route....295
favorite locations....298
Route planner....303
Route planning web portal....303
Running-in....322
Running out of fuel....320

S

Safety....266, 274, 292
adaptive cruise control....178
AEB....188
air bag locations....70
air bags....66
air suspension....146
ATPC....199
child information....60
child safety locks....61
cleaning seat belts....335
collision avoidance....186
cruise control....175
driving aids....204
DSC....158
fuel and refueling....318
media....229
portable media....246
seat belt checks....55
seat belt locking mechanism....56
seat belt pre-tensioners....57
seat belt reminder warning....56
seat belts....53, 58
seat belts warning lamp....84
seats for larger children....59
sitting correctly....35
speed limiter....170
starting....136
tire care....365
tire degradation....371
tire load limit....377
tire pressures....367
tire temperature....376
tire tread wear....375–376
touchscreen....216
towing....127
traction devices....373
used engine oil....326

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

use seat belts during pregnancy.....55
using the phone.....280
wade sensing.....212
warning labels.....61
winter tires.....371
Safety camera alert
adjusting the volume.....300
Safety defect reporting.....8
Safety in the garage.....325
Sand program.....163
Satellite navigation
destination entry.....295
edit route.....298
favorite locations.....298
fuel prices service.....303
instrument panel view.....301
map
auto zoom.....300
split screen.....297
updates.....301
online routing.....303
operating.....294
real time traffic flow.....302
safety cameras.....304
satellite view.....303
Satellite radio
controls.....242
reception.....245
subscription.....244
Screen wash
check.....344
topping up.....345
Seat
monitor.....56
Seat belts.....335
checks.....55
locking mechanism.....56
operation.....54
pre-tensioners.....57
reminder warning.....56
safety.....53, 58
use during pregnancy.....55
warning lamp.....84
Seats
center seat back folding.....38
child restraint check list.....59
child seat positioning.....59
child seat tether straps.....64
cleaning seat belts.....335
climate seats.....264
comfort and adjustment.....263
electric front.....32
electric front head restraints.....48
executive class rear
remote seats.....45
folding armrest.....36
front head restraints.....47
heated.....263
LATCH installation.....63
manual front.....32
position memory.....36
rear seat restricted movement.....44
reclining second row seats.....41
reclining third row seats.....42
remote seats
settings.....264
removing a rear head restraint.....49
restricted front seat travel.....35
seat belts warning lamp.....84
seat massage.....264
sitting correctly.....35
third row adjustments.....38
Securing luggage.....118, 122
Security
alarm.....323
automatic relocking and arming.....29
battery back-up sounder.....29
closing mislock.....27
deactivating the alarm.....30
lock confirmation.....27
locking with the emergency key.....30
single locking.....26
Selecting
park aid.....268
Sensing
clear exit detection.....28

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Sensitivity
forward alert....187
Sequential shift....142
Service position
wipers service position....328
Servicing
air bags....68
data recording....400
Setting a terrain response profile....164
Settings....299
customisable....228
general....227
system....225
system settings....226–227
Setting the heating and ventilation....257
Set-up
virtual instrument panel....74
Side lamps warning lamp....88
Sidewall information (tires)....364
Sign recognition....208
Silencing the alarm....30
Sitting correctly....
Smart key
battery changing....24
care....24
single locking....26
suspension height adjustment....151
transmitters....408
Smartphone app....310
Snow chains....373
Software
updates....316
Solar attenuating glass....110
SOS call....312
SOS emergency....312
Sound settings....232
Spare wheel....387, 390
using wheel chocks....390
Specifications
capacities....404
dimensions....406
engine....403
ethanol....319
fluids....403
fuel tank capacity....321
label locations....402
lubricants....403
methanol....319
MTBE....320
updates....403
weight....405
Speed-dependent wipers....99
Speed limiter
adaptive speed limiter....172
automatic speed limiter....170
overview....170
Speedometer....74
standard....74
virtual....74
Speed ratings for tires....365
Split screen map....297
SRS
air bag warning lamp....85
Stability assist limitations....131
Stability control
active differential....159
all wheel drive (AWD)....160
awd....160
DSC
switching on....159
switching off....158
Stability control overview....158
Stability control safety....158
Standard instrument panel
fuel gauge....75
speedometer....75
tachometer....75
temperature gauge....75
Starting after a collision....400
Starting the engine....136, 139
engine pre-heater....138
failure to start....138
push button start backup....137
Status icons
touch screen....219
Stealth mode....96

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

Steering correction.....204
Steering wheel
adjusting.....51
AUTO position.....51
heated.....52
Stolen vehicle tracking.....313
Stop/start
activating.....139
deactivating.....140
Stop on the move.....140
Stopping the engine.....139
Storage compartments.....111
cup holders.....111
front cubby box.....111
rear armrest.....111
Storage compartments areas
glove box.....111
Subscription
satellite radio.....244
Sun blind.....108
Sunroof
anti-trap protection.....109
reset.....329
Sunroof blind reset.....329
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)
air bag deployment.....67
air bags maintenance.....324
air bag warning lamp.....67, 85
curtain air bags.....71
front air bags.....70
obstructing an air bag.....66
occupant sensing.....71
side air bags.....71
Surround camera.....132–133
Surround cameras.....276
Suspension.....146
access height.....149
adaptive dynamics.....152
electronic air suspension.....146
extended mode.....148
height adjustment.....146
locked access height.....150
off-road height.....148
rear height adjust.....150
Switch cleaning.....334
Switching off the engine.....136
Switching on the ignition.....137
System limitations
cameras.....279

T

Tailgate
gesture.....21
opening and closing.....17, 19
powered inner tailgate.....120
powered opening height.....21
resetting the powered tailgate memory.....21
Tailgate hands free opening.....21
Technical specifications
capacities.....404
dimensions.....406
engine.....403
radio frequency regulations.....409
updates.....403
weights.....405
Telephone
Bluetooth compatibility.....283
Bluetooth wireless technology.....291
call volume.....286
contacts.....286
icons.....285
managing two calls.....284
merge calls.....284
overview.....281
pairing
via the phone.....283
steering wheel controls.....286
Telephone safety.....280
Temperature
climate differentiation.....265
Terrain response.....162
description applicability.....161
wade.....164
Terrain response information.....214
Terrain response profiles.....164

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Terrain response program
description applicability.....161
Third row seats
manual adjustment.....38
Time and date
general settings.....227
Tinted front screen.....110
Tire grading system.....375
Tire pressure
safety warnings.....366
Tire pressure compensation.....370
Tire pressure monitoring system
(TPMS).....379
full size replacements.....381
type approval information.....382
valves.....369
warning lamp.....86
Tire pressures.....381
Tires
age degradation.....371
care.....365
changing.....380
degradation.....371
flat spots.....370
full size replacements.....381
glossary of terms.....376
grading system.....375
important information.....389
information label.....368
load limit.....377
off-road tires.....373
pressure check.....380
pressure check safety warnings.....366
pressure compensation.....370
pressures.....367
replacements.....369
replacing.....369
speed ratings.....365
temperature resistance.....376
temporary use spare.....382
tire pressure monitoring system
(TPMS).....379
TPMS
warning lamp.....86
traction devices.....373
tread wear.....375–376
uniform tire quality grading.....375
use of spare tire.....389
valves.....369
vehicle loading.....381
winter tires.....371
Toll road payment.....110
Tool kit.....386
Topping up fluids
filler locations.....338
Touch screen.....336
Touchscreen
apps screen.....223
changing portable media device.....252
connecting multiple portable media
devices.....250
customisable settings.....228
display settings.....225
eco-data.....163
fuel economy facts.....163
general settings.....227
heated seats.....263
home menu.....218
languages and keyboard settings.....226
massage seats.....264
notifications settings.....227
operating.....222
portable media
controls.....249
portable media connections.....246
portable media pairing.....251
portable media playing.....250
profiles settings.....226
safety.....216
seat settings.....264
status icons.....219
system settings.....225
touch screen care.....222
valet mode.....223
deselecting.....224

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

welcome screen.....217
Touchscreen home
home screen.....219–220
media shortcut icons.....221
navigation shortcut icons.....221
phone shortcut icons.....221
Tow assist calibration.....131
Tow hitch receiver
towing.....129
Towing
a trailer.....129
calculating weight.....135
checks
breakaway cable.....135
lights.....135
nose weight limit.....135
tow ball.....135
essential checks.....135
hitch assist.....130
on four wheels.....398
stability assist.....131
tow assist.....132–133
tow hitch.....129
tow hitch receiver.....129
trailer electrical connections.....130
trailer sway.....131
weights.....128
Towing eyes
front.....396
rear.....396
Traction control
switching off.....158
switching on.....159
Traction devices.....373
Traffic detection
reverse.....195
Traffic sign recognition.....208
Trailer
electrical connections.....130
sway.....131
towing weights.....128
Trailer rear view.....132–133
Trailer reverse.....133
Trailer safety.....127
Trailer turn signals green warning lamp.....88
Transfer case
high and low range.....144
Transmission
automatic.....142
gear shift warning lamp.....87
limp home mode.....145
Transmitters
smart key.....408
Transporting the vehicle.....398
Tread wear.....375–376
TR info.....210
Trip computer.....78
TR limitations.....165
TSA limitations.....131
TSR performance.....209
Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode off.....87
Turn signals
warning lamp.....88
Type approval.....483
adaptive cruise control.....185
Type approvals.....289

U

Under body cleaning.....332
Under hood covers.....327
Uniform tire quality grading.....375
Unlocking.....28
activity key.....15
entry and exit mode.....37, 51
keyless entry.....15
multi point entry.....14
opening the tailgate.....17, 19
passive entry.....15
single point entry.....14
steering column.....52
transmitter effects on medical devices.....17
Updates
software.....316
specifications.....403

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

USB devices
connecting multiple devices.....250
Used engine oil.....326
Using ATPC.....200
Using cruise control.....175
Using seat belts.....54
Using the parking aid.....267
Using the spare tire
important information.....389
Using wheel chocks.....390

V

Valet mode.....223
deselecting.....224
Vehicle alarm.....323
Vehicle battery
battery monitoring system.....352
connecting jump leads.....348
effects of disconnection.....352
removing.....351
replacing.....351
warning symbols.....347
Vehicle battery care.....347
Vehicle cleaning
after driving off-road.....333
air bag covers.....335
alloy wheels.....333
automatic car wash.....332
carpets and mats.....335
engine compartment.....333
interior.....334
under body.....332
washer jets.....336
Vehicle data recording.....400
Vehicle loading tire pressures.....381
Vehicle recovery
front towing eye.....396
off-road.....398
rear towing eye.....396
towing on four wheels.....398–399
transporting the vehicle.....398
Vehicle stability.....7
Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....325
Vehicle tracker.....313
VIN number.....402
Virtual instrument panel
fuel gauge.....75
speedometer.....75
tachometer.....75
temperature gauge.....75
Virtual instrument panel
configuration.....74
Voice control.....305
settings
command list.....306
operating guide.....306
preferences.....306
voicetags.....306
voice training.....306
tutorial.....306
voicetags.....306

W

Wade aid.....210
Wade sensing
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....213
Wading limitations.....213
Warning lamps.....81–82, 86–87
ABS.....85
adaptive cruise control follow mode
on.....87
adaptive cruise control on.....87
adaptive cruise control with steering
assist active.....88
adaptive cruise control with steering
assist not active.....89
adaptive speed limiter.....87
air bags.....67, 85
auto high beam assist.....89
auto lights.....89
automatic speed limiter.....88
battery charge.....83
brake.....83, 85
check engine.....85
critical warning message.....84
cruise control.....87
driver condition monitor.....86, 89
DSC active.....86

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

Index

engine temperature....84
external temperature....86
gear shift warning lamp....87
HDC....88
headlamp high beam....89
high beam assist....89
intelligent stop/start (green)....87
intelligent stop/start (white)....89
lamp test....83
lane departure (green)....88
lane departure (red)....84
low fuel....86
low oil pressure....84
low range selected....88
low traction launch....89
park assist....89
parking brake....84
progress control system....87
rear fog lamps....86
seat belt....84
side lights....88
tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....86
trailer turn signals....88
turn signals....88
Warning messages....77
information panel....75
Warnings
adaptive cruise control....178
air suspension....146
driving aids....204
head restraints....47
media....229
portable media....246
speed limiter....170
touchscreen....216
Washer jets....336
Washers....97
fluid specification....345
fluid top up....345
headlamps....100
headlight....100
Washing
automatic car wash....332
Weights
gross vehicle weights....405
roof load....405
roof rack weight....405
tow ball/hitch....128
towing....128
vehicle weights....405
Welcome screen....217
touchscreen....217
Wheel changing
important information....389
recommended process....392
safety warnings....384
spare wheel....387
temporary spare wheel....390
tool kit....386
use of spare tire....389
Wheel locks use....390
Wheel nuts....390
Wheels and tires
age degradation....371
changing a tire....382
flat spots....370
full size replacements....381
load limit....377
off-road tires....373
replacements....369
temporary use spare....382
tire care....365
tire degradation....371
tire glossary of terms....376
tire grading system....375
tire markings....364
tire pressure compensation....370
tire pressure label....368
tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....379
tire pressures....367
tire speed ratings....365
tire temperature....376
tire tread wear....375–376

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

TPMS warning lamp.....86
traction devices.....373
uniform tire quality grading.....375
valves.....369
winter tires.....371
White auto stop/start lamp.....89
Wi-Fi connection icons.....316
Wi-Fi Hotspot.....315
Wi-Fi vehicle connections.....316
Windows
anti-trap protection.....109
operation.....108
reset.....329
resetting the roof blind.....329
solar attenuating.....110
sunroof blind reset.....329
sunroof reset.....329
Winter tires.....371
Wipers.....97
service position.....328
Wipers and washers.....97
drip wipe.....100
fluid level.....[illegible]
rain sensor.....99
speed-dependent mode.....99
winter park position.....100
Wireless technology
Bluetooth.....291

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021